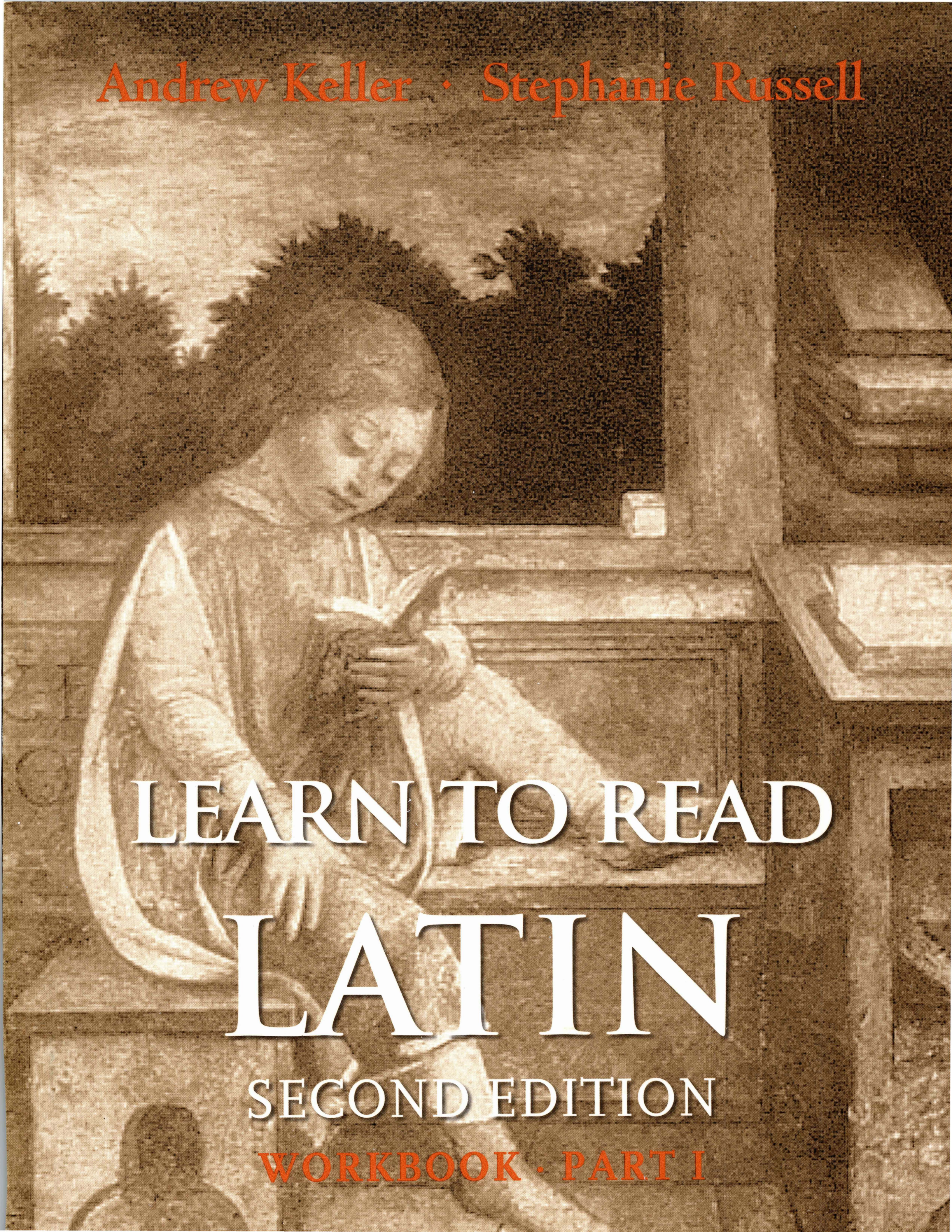
Andrew Keller · Stephanie Russell



LEARN TO READ LATIN

SECOND EDITION

WORKBOOK · PART I

LEARN TO READ LATIN

SECOND EDITION

WORKBOOK

PART I

Andrew Keller
Collegiate School
Stephanie Russell
Collegiate School

Yale UNIVERSITY PRESS New Haven & London

First edition published as one volume in 2004 and as two volumes in 2006.
Second edition published in 2015.

Copyright © 2004, 2006, 2015 by Yale University.
All rights reserved.
This book may not be reproduced, in whole or in part, including illustrations, in any form (beyond that copying permitted by Sections 107 and 108 of the U.S. Copyright Law and except by reviewers for the public press), without written permission from the publishers.

Yale University Press books may be purchased in quantity for educational, business, or promotional use. For information, please e-mail sales.press@yale.edu (U.S. office) or sales@yaleup.co.uk (U.K. office).

Editor: Tim Shea
Publishing Assistant: Ashley E. Lago
Production Editor: Ann-Marie Imbornoni
Production Controller: Aldo Cupo
Designed by James J. Johnson

Set in E & F Scala type by Integrated Publishing Solutions, Grand Rapids, Michigan.
Printed in the United States of America.

Learn to Read Latin 2nd ed. Workbook Part 1 ISBN: 978-0-300-19497-5
Learn to Read Latin 2nd ed. Workbook Part 2 ISBN: 978-0-300-19498-2
The second edition workbook is also available in one volume, ISBN: 978-0-300-19496-8

This paper meets the requirements of ANSI/NISO Z39.48-1992 (Permanence of Paper).

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

CONTENTS

Preface to Part I vii
Preface to the Second Edition of the Workbook viii
List of Abbreviations ix

Drill A. Pronunciation 1
Drill 1. The Latin Noun 7
Drill 2–3. The Five Declensions; First Declension 9
Drill 4. Second Declension 15
Exercises, CHAPTER I 23

Drill 5–6. The Finite Latin Verb; Indicative Mood 37
Drill 7–8. Principal Parts and the Four Conjugations 41
Drill 9. First- and Second-Conjugation Verbs 45
Drill 10. *sum* and *possum* 53
Drill 11. Distinguishing Transitive and Intransitive Verbs 57
Drill 12–15. Short Sentences and Syntax 61
Exercises, CHAPTER II 67

Drill 17–18. First-Second-Declension Adjectives; Noun-Adjective Agreement 83
Drill 19. Substantive Use of the Adjective 87
Drill 19–20. Predicate Adjective; Substantive Use of the Adjective 91
Drill 21. *eō* 93
Drill 22. The Passive Voice 97
Drill 23–24. Verb Morphology: The Passive Voice 101
Drill 25–29. Short Sentences and Syntax 107
Exercises, CHAPTER III 113

Drill 30. Third- and Fourth-Conjugation Verb Morphology 127
Drill 31–33. Synopsis II; Imperatives 143
Drill 34–37. Short Sentences and Syntax 149
Drill 38–39. Personal Pronouns and Possessive Adjectives 153
Exercises, CHAPTER IV 161

Drill 40–42. Verb Morphology: Perfect Active Indicative System 177
Drill 43. The Irregular Third-Conjugation Verb *ferō* 189
Drill 44–46. Reflexive Pronouns, Reflexive-Possessive Adjectives, and *ipse, ipsa, ipsum* 193
Drill 47. Adverbs I 201
Drill 48. Subordinate Clauses I 203
Drill 49. Conditional Sentences I 207
Exercises, CHAPTER V 211

Drill 50–52. The Perfect Passive System; Synopsis IV 227
Drill 53–54. Omission of *sum*; Perfect Passive Participle; Impersonal Passive 237
Drill 55. Third Declension 241
Drill 56. Third-Declension Adjectives 247
Drill 56–57. Third-Declension Adjectives; Adverbs II 249
Drill 58–62. Short Sentences and Syntax 253
Exercises, CHAPTER VI 257

Drill 64–69. Verb Morphology: Active and Passive Subjunctive 275
Drill 70. Three Independent Subjunctives 281
Drill 71. Conditional Sentences II 289
Drill 72–73. Short Sentences and Syntax 295
Exercises, CHAPTER VII 297

Drill 75–76. Deponent and Semideponent Verbs 315
Drill 77. Demonstrative Adjectives/Pronouns 323
Drill 78. The Relative Pronoun and the Relative Clause 329
Drill 79. Special Features of the Relative Pronoun 337
Drill 80–81. Interrogative Pronouns and Adjectives 339
Exercises, CHAPTER VIII 343

Drill 83. Quantitative Meter, Scansion 359

Summaries A1
Synopses A57
Morphology Appendix A67
Latin to English Vocabulary A87
English to Latin Vocabulary A93

PREFACE TO PART I

This workbook contains drills written to accompany the Introduction, Chapters 1–8, and the About Meter section of the textbook *Learn to Read Latin*. The drill numbers correspond to numbers of sections in the text in which morphology and syntax are presented. After most sections the student is referred to the appropriate drill for reinforcement of the forms and syntax just presented. In addition, this workbook contains exercise sentences for each chapter. These synthetic Latin sentences have been written to give substantial practice in the new vocabulary, morphology, and syntax of each chapter, while also reviewing material taught in earlier chapters. The exercise sentences may also be studied for patterns and effects of Latin prose word order.

Because the workbook pages are perforated, all drills and exercise sentences may be detached and used for homework assignments as well as for work in class.

At the back of the workbook are a vocabulary list and two or three summaries for each chapter. These summaries, which should be removed from the book and used for study as each chapter is presented, give compact summaries of all the morphology and syntax taught in each chapter.

Included with the summaries for several chapters are synopsis sheets to be used for reviewing verb morphology. The synopsis sheets provided should be torn out and used to make multiple copies for students.

PREFACE TO THE SECOND EDITION OF THE WORKBOOK

In response to requests from adopters and users of the first edition of *Learn to Read Latin,* we have added many new drills and practice sentences for use at intermediate points in each chapter. Drills and Exercise sentences have been revised to incorporate new vocabulary, to reflect the rearranged content in the revised textbook, and to remove infelicities. Blanks and lines have been added throughout to give students more room to provide answers. For easier access the Latin to English and English to Latin vocabularies have been moved to the very end of the workbook.

ABBREVIATIONS

*	indicates that a form is hypothetical
>	becomes
1-intr.	first conjugation intransitive verb
1-tr.	first conjugation transitive verb
abl.	ablative
acc.	accusative
act.	active
adj.	adjective
adv.	adverb
conj.	conjunction
d.a.	direct address
dat.	dative
demonstr.	demonstrative
d.o.	direct object
f.	feminine
fem.	feminine
frag.	fragment
fut.	future
gen.	genitive
imper.	imperative
imperf.	imperfect
indef.	indefinite
indic.	indicative
infin.	infinitive
interj.	interjection
interrog.	interrogative
intr.	intransitive
i.o.	indirect object
loc.	locative
m.	masculine
masc.	masculine
n.	neuter
neut.	neuter
nom.	nominative
pass.	passive
perf.	perfect
pl.	plural
pluperf.	pluperfect
prep.	preposition
pres.	present
prin.	principal
pron.	pronoun
rel.	relative
sing.	singular
subj.	subject
subjunc.	subjunctive
subst.	substantive
tr.	transitive
voc.	vocative

Drill A Pronunciation

A. 1. Pronounce each one-syllable word out loud.

2. Copy words of more than one syllable and divide each into syllables. Place an **x** above the syllable to be stressed. Then pronounce out loud.

Example: **salūtātiōnēs** **sa/lū/tā/ti/$\overset{\text{x}}{\text{ō}}$/nēs**

1. et
2. nōn
3. sīc
4. vel
5. heu
6. dē
7. cui
8. huic
9. tamen
10. quaeque
11. hōrum
12. optant
13. flūctus
14. gerunt
15. laudātur
16. habentur
17. miserae
18. quaesīvērunt

19. gladiōs
20. coeperant
21. obtineō
22. urbs
23. lībertās
24. servitūs
25. inquit
26. nautārum
27. poenās
28. patriam
29. saevae
30. īram
31. memorem
32. **I**ūnōnis[1]
33. **I**uppiter
34. senātūs
35. sententiā
36. ambulāvēre
37. aurēs
38. caecō

---

[1] All consonantal i's are boldfaced.

39. laudāta ____________________

40. perīculōsī ____________________

41. morientem ____________________

42. **i**aciet ____________________

43. **i**aciunt ____________________

44. deinde ____________________

45. gererentur ____________________

46. laetissimus ____________________

47. **i**ūra ____________________

48. **i**am

49. ambulāveris ____________________

50. convocāvērunt ____________________

51. istīus ____________________

52. essētis ____________________

53. cēpistī ____________________

54. cecidissent ____________________

55. sang**u**ine[2] ____________________

56. ang**u**ibus ____________________

57. cōns**u**ēscō ____________________

58. pers**u**ādēre ____________________

59. sumus ____________________

60. agunt ____________________

---

[2] All consonantal u's are boldfaced.

61. intellegit
____

62. quem

63. haec

64. aequora
____

65. magistrōs
____

66. pecūniōsum
____

67. cōnsiliō
____

68. verba
____

69. aquā
____

70. aqua
____

71. terruēre
____

72. audiendōrum
____

B. Pronounce these pairs of words, stressing the correct syllable and taking particular care to distinguish the sounds of the vowels and diphthongs.

1.	āra	ārā	11.	veniunt	venient
2.	venit	vēnit	12.	cīvēs	dīves
3.	dūcere	dūcēre	13.	miserās	mīserās
4.	audīs	audēs	14.	vidēre	vīdēre
5.	Claudius	Clōdius	15.	ēgēre	egēre
6.	cīvis	cīvīs	16.	capī	cēpī
7.	cadit	caedit	17.	cornū	cornua
8.	poena	poēta	18.	ducis	dūcis
9.	ageris	agēris	19.	sēnsimus	sentīmus
10.	putet	putētur	20.	coepisse	cēpisse

C. Read the following passages *out loud.*

1. Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō* I.1

Gallia est omnis dīvīsa in partēs trēs, quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquītānī, tertiam quī ipsōrum ling**u**ā Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur. Hī omnēs ling**u**ā, īnstitūtīs, lēgibus inter sē differunt. Gallōs ab Aquītānīs Garumna flūmen, ā Belgīs Matrona et Sēquana dīvidit. Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, proptereā quod ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt minimēque ad eōs mercātōrēs saepe commeant atque ea quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent important proximīque sunt Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Quā dē causā Helvētiī quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, quod ferē cōtīdiānīs proeliīs cum Germānīs contendunt, cum aut suīs fīnibus eōs prohibent aut ipsī in eōrum fīnibus bellum gerunt.

2. Cicero, *In Catilīnam I* 1–2

Quō ūsque tandem abūtēre, Catilīna, patientiā nostrā? Quam diū etiam furor iste tuus nōs ēlūdet? Quem ad fīnem sēsē effrēnāta **i**actābit audācia? Nihilne tē nocturnum praesidium Palātī, nihil urbis vigiliae, nihil timor populī, nihil concursus bonōrum omnium, nihil hic mūnītissimus habendī senātūs locus, nihil hōrum ōra voltūsque mōvērunt? Patēre tua cōnsilia nōn sentīs, cōnstrictam **i**am hōrum omnium scientiā tenērī con**i**ūrātiōnem tuam nōn vidēs? Quid proximā, quid superiōre nocte ēgeris, ubi fueris, quōs convocāveris, quid cōnsilī cēperis quem nostrum ignōrāre arbitrāris? ō tempora, ō mōrēs! Senātus haec intellegit, cōnsul videt; hic tamen vīvit. Vīvit? Immō vērō et**i**am in senātum venit, fit pūblicī cōnsilī particeps, notat et dēsignat oculīs ad caedem ūnum quemque nostrum. Nōs autem fortēs virī satis facere reī pūblicae vidēmur, sī istīus furōrem ac tēla vītēmus. Ad mortem tē, Catilīna, dūcī **i**ussū cōnsulis **i**am prīdem oportēbat, in tē cōnferrī pestem quam tū in nōs omnīs **i**am diū māchināris.

Drill 1 The Latin Noun

A. The three properties of the Latin noun are ________________, ________________, and ________________.

B. Recite from memory in order the names of the six cases of the noun in Latin.

C. Write next to each abbreviation the full name of each case *and* its basic function(s):

Nom. ____

Gen. ____

Dat. ____

Acc. ____

Abl. ____

Voc. ____

D. Fill in the blanks. Do *not* use abbreviations.

1. Latin uses the ____________________ case to express the subject of a sentence.

2. "From" indicates an idea of ____________________ and is expressed by the ____________________ case.

3. The genitive case is most often translated with the English preposition __________________.

4. In the sentence "He walks with a cane," the syntax of "with a cane" would be ____________________ of ____________________. The Latin preposition **cum**, "with," would/would not *(circle one)* be used.

5. "To" and "for" are English prepositions used to translate Latin nouns in the ____________________ case.

6. In the sentence "She is a dancer," the syntax of "dancer" in Latin would be ______________________________________, and the ____________________ case would be used for "dancer."

7. In the sentence "We took a trip with friends," the syntax of "(with) friends" in Latin would be ____________________ of ____________________. The Latin preposition **cum**, "with," would/would not *(circle one)* be used.

8. The *direct object* of a verb appears in Latin in the ____________________ case.

9. Five English prepositions that may be used when translating the Latin ablative case are: _____________, _____________, _____________, _____________, and _____________.

10. In the sentence "He showed the man a book," the Latin syntax of "man" would be ____________________ of ____________________. The Latin syntax of "book" would be ____________________, ____________________.

11. The vocative case is used to express ____________________.

12. In the sentence "The boy will become a man," the Latin syntax of "man" would be ______________________________________.

Drill 2–3 The Five Declensions; First Declension

A. Fill in the blanks. Do *not* use abbreviations.

1. There are ______________ families of nouns in Latin, and they are called

   ____.

2. A full vocabulary entry for a Latin noun contains four elements: ____________________,

   ____________________, ____________________, and ____________________.

3. The genitive singular form is important for two reasons:

   a. ____

   b. ____

4. When one generates a complete set of forms for a Latin noun, one is said to

   ____________________ that noun.

5. To find the stem of any Latin noun, ____

   ____.

B. Recite from memory the endings of the first declension. Be sure to go down the singular column and then down the plural.

C. On a separate sheet, decline fully the nouns **anima**, **poēta**, and **via**.

D. Write these forms in Latin.

Example: gen. pl. of *fīlia* **fīliārum**

1. acc. sing. of *nauta* ________
2. abl. sing. of *via* ________
3. acc. pl. of *agricola* ________
4. dat. sing. of *anima* ________
5. voc. sing. of *puella* ________
6. nom. pl. of *īnsula* ________
7. abl. pl. of *via* ________
8. gen. sing. of *patria* ________
9. acc. sing. of *pecūnia* ________
10. voc. pl. of *nauta* ________
11. dat. pl. of *patria* ________
12. gen. sing. of *fāma* ________
13. gen. pl. of *dea* ________
14. acc. sing. of *puella* ________
15. abl. sing. of *rēgīna* ________
16. nom. pl. of *poēta* ________
17. gen. sing. of *Italia* ________
18. dat. pl. of *agricola* ________
19. acc. pl. of *fēmina* ________
20. dat. sing. of *fīlia* ________
21. abl. sing. of *pecūnia* ________
22. abl. pl. of *īnsula* ________

E. Give case and number of each form and translate. Give all possibilities.[1]

Example: puellae (4)

gen. sing.: of the girl
dat. sing.: to/for the girl
nom. pl.: girls (subj./pred. nom.)
voc. pl.: girls (d.a.)

1. puellās ________
2. fēminārum ________

---

[1] The number of possibilities is given in parentheses when it is greater than one.

3. puella (2) ______________________________

____

4. fēminae (4) ______________________________

____

____

____

5. animam ______________________________

6. patriās ______________________________

7. animārum ______________________________

8. patriīs (2) ______________________________

____

9. īnsulā ______________________________

10. agricolīs (2) ______________________________

____

11. agricola (2) ______________________________

____

12. īnsulam ______________________________

F. Write in Latin.

1. of the women ____________________
2. to the poets ____________________
3. by rumor ____________________
4. of souls ____________________
5. for the queen ____________________
6. farmers (pred. nom.) ____________________
7. girls (d.a.) ____________________
8. of the country ____________________
9. goddesses (d.o.) ____________________
10. with money ____________________
11. islands (subj.) ____________________
12. for the girl ____________________
13. by the streets ____________________
14. sailors (d.o.) ____________________
15. of the soul ____________________
16. the country (subj.) ____________________
17. for a farmer ____________________
18. goddess (d.a.) ____________________
19. daughter (d.o.) ____________________
20. of Italy ____________________

G. Translate these prepositional phrases.

1. ē patriā ____________________
2. in poētam ____________________
3. ex Italiā ____________________
4. cum agricolīs ____________________
5. in viam ____________________
6. dē animā ____________________
7. in rēgīnam ____________________
8. ad Italiam ____________________

9. ad rēgīnam ______________________

10. ab īnsulā ______________________

11. dē fāmā ______________________

12. ad īnsulam ______________________

13. cum poētīs ______________________

14. in Italiā ______________________

15. ā patriā ______________________

16. cum fēminā ______________________

17. ab Italiā ______________________

18. in nautās ______________________

19. cum puellā ______________________

20. in patriā ______________________

21. ab Italiā cum nautīs ______________________

22. et dē pecūniā et dē fāmā ______________________

23. in patriā rēgīnae ______________________

24. ē fēminārum patriā ______________________

25. in viās cum agricolīs ______________________

26. cum poētīs Italiae ______________________

27. in patriam poētārum ______________________

28. in agricolae fīliam ______________________

29. dē nautā rēgīnāque ____________________

30. ex animā puellae ____________________

H. Give the full vocabulary entry for the following nouns.

Example: soul **anima, animae** *f.*

1. talk, rumor ____________________
2. woman ____________________
3. poet ____________________
4. island ____________________
5. daughter ____________________
6. goddess ____________________
7. street ____________________
8. Italy ____________________
9. money ____________________
10. queen ____________________
11. farmer ____________________
12. girl ____________________
13. sailor ____________________
14. country ____________________

Drill 4 Second Declension

A. Recite from memory the endings for masculine and feminine nouns of the second declension.
B. On a separate sheet decline fully the nouns **ager**, **fīlius**, and **dominus**.
C. Recite from memory the endings for neuter nouns of the second declension.
D. On a separate sheet decline fully the nouns **dōnum**, **cōnsilium**, and **verbum**.
E. Write these forms in Latin.

Example: abl. sing. of *aurum* **aurō**

1. voc. sing. of *dominus* ______________
2. acc. pl. of *ager* ______________
3. gen. pl. of *dōnum* ______________
4. dat. sing. of *servus* ______________
5. gen. sing. of *liber* ______________
6. voc. sing. of *vir* ______________
7. abl. pl. of *deus* ______________
8. acc. sing. of *puer* ______________
9. acc. sing. of *vir* ______________
10. nom. pl. of *cōnsilium* ______________
11. dat. pl. of *verbum* ______________
12. acc. pl. of *dominus* ______________
13. gen. sing. of *cōnsilium* (2) ______________ ______________
14. abl. sing. of *ferrum* ______________
15. voc. sing. of *fīlius* ______________
16. gen. pl. of *bellum* ______________
17. acc. pl. of *perīculum* ______________
18. dat. pl. of *deus* ______________
19. abl. pl. of *gladius* ______________
20. gen. pl. of *deus* (2) ______________ ______________

21. acc. sing. of *oppidum* ________________
22. acc. sing. of *factum* ________________
23. voc. pl. of *deus* ________________
24. abl. sing. of *aurum* ________________

F. Give case and number of each form and translate. Give all possibilities.

Example: gladiō (2)

dat. sing.: for a sword
abl. sing.: with a sword

1. fīlī (2) ________________________________
____

2. dominum ________________________________

3. fīliōs ________________________________

4. dominī (3) ________________________________
____
____

5. cōnsilia (3) ________________________________
____
____

6. dī (2) ________________________________
____

7. librōs ________________________________

8. agrum ________________________________

9. dōnō (2) ____________________

____

10. cōnsiliōrum ____________________

11. virīs (2) ____________________

____

12. verba (3) ____________________

____

____

13. servī (3) ____________________

____

____

14. ferrō (2) ____________________

____

15. servōrum ____________________

16. ferrum (3) ____________________

____

____

17. puer (2) ____________________

____

18. gladiīs (2) ____________________

____

19. agrōs ____________________

20. gladiī (3) ____________________

____

____

21. domine ____________________

22. cōnsilī ____________________

G. Write in Latin.

1. for the boy ____________________
2. plans (subj.) ____________________
3. iron (pred. nom.) ____________________
4. field (d.o.) ____________________
5. by gold ____________________
6. wars (subj.) ____________________
7. with the men ____________________
8. of a plan (2) ____________________

____

9. master (d.a.) ____________________
10. sons (d.o.) ____________________
11. gift (subj.) ____________________
12. by words ____________________
13. of books ____________________
14. danger (d.o.) ____________________
15. to boys ____________________
16. field (subj.) ____________________
17. with a gift ____________________
18. of a sword (3) ____________________

____

____

19. town (d.o.) ____________________
20. for slaves ____________________

21. of the gods (2) ____________________

____

22. gods (subj.) ____________________

H. Translate these prepositional phrases.

1. in bellō

____

2. cum dominō

____

3. in puerum

____

4. ab agrīs

____

5. ē perīculīs

____

6. ad servum

____

7. dē verbīs

____

8. in agrum

____

9. cum ferrō

____

10. in librō

____

11. in perīcula

____

12. ex agrō

____

13. in agrīs

____

14. dē factīs

____

15. ad bella

____

16. ex aurō

____

17. dē cōnsiliō ______________________________

18. ad puerōs ______________________________

19. ab oppidō ______________________________

20. dē librō ______________________________

21. ex oppidō ______________________________

22. cum gladiō ______________________________

23. in perīculō ______________________________

24. in agrīs ______________________________

25. cum fīliīs in agrōs ______________________________

26. librōs dē dīs ______________________________

27. cōnsilia deum ______________________________

28. ab agrō virī ______________________________

29. dē dominī verbīs ______________________________

30. ex librīs puerī ______________________________

31. ad oppidum; ab oppidō ______________________________

32. verba servī in dominōs ______________________________

I. Give the full vocabulary entry for the following nouns.

Example: plan **cōnsilium, cōnsiliī** *n.*

1. son ____
2. god ____
3. word ____
4. deed ____
5. field ____
6. gold ____
7. town ____
8. boy ____
9. slave ____
10. danger ____
11. iron; sword ____
12. man ____
13. sword ____
14. war ____
15. master ____
16. gift ____
17. book ____
18. advice ____

Exercises, CHAPTER I

A. Translate these phrases. Give all possibilities.

Example: nautae et agricolae **of the sailor and of the farmer**
to/for the sailor and to/for the farmer
the sailors and the farmers (subj./pred. nom.)
sailors and farmers (d.a.)

1. puellae puerōque
2. cōnsiliō deōrum
3. et librī et gladiī
4. dī deaeque
5. ad īnsulās cum nautīs
6. in oppidum; in oppidō
7. dōna fēminae
8. verba factaque
9. dē librīs poētārum
10. in viam; in viā
11. ex Italiā
12. ab agrō cum agricolā
13. cōnsilium dē bellō

14. ex patriā rēgīnae ____________________

15. fīliae virī ____________________

____

16. poētae nautaeque ____________________

____

17. vir et puer ____________________

18. ab īnsulā rēgīnae ____________________

19. viam ad oppidum ____________________

20. dē factīs deum ____________________

21. fēminam virumque ____________________

22. in agrōs patriae ____________________

23. ō fīlī; ō fīliī ____________________

24. librōs et gladiōs ____________________

25. fāma deae ____________________

26. ad bellum ____________________

27. ō dī deaeque ____________________

28. cum fēminīs īnsulārum ____________________

29. dē animā poētae ____________________

30. viās oppidōrum ____________________

31. pecūniam puerī ______

32. et ferrum et aurum ______

33. dīs īnsulae ______

34. cum nautīs ______

35. ō serve ______

36. verbō factōque ______

37. dōna deum ______

38. aurō ferrōque ______

B. Write these phrases in Latin.

1. farmers (d.o.) of Italy ______

2. toward the fields with the girl ______

3. of both sons and daughters ______

4. in the towns of the queen ______

5. for the slave and the master ______

6. the plans (subj.) of the boys ______

7. both gold (d.o.) and iron (d.o.) ______

8. with books concerning the soul ______

9. into the street with the women ______

10. for both men and boys ______

11. the deeds (subj.) of the gods ______________________________

12. to the island with the slave ______________________________

13. in the country of the sailors ______________________________

14. a book (subj.) about the dangers of war ______________________________

15. O men and women ______________________________

16. away from the town on the island ______________________________

17. the reputation (d.o.) of the girl ______________________________

18. toward Italy with the sailors ______________________________

19. by the plan of the goddess ______________________________

20. by means of words and deeds ______________________________

21. a man (d.o.) in the town ______________________________

22. son (d.a.) ______________________________

23. slave (d.a.) ______________________________

24. both on the island and in Italy ______________________________

25. money (d.o.) for the men ______________________________

26. out from the fields of the farmer ______________________________

27. about the reputation of the queen ______________________________

28. toward Italy with the boys ______________________________

29. men (d.a.) ______________________________

30. for the slaves of the country ________________________________

31. away from the fields of the farmers ________________________________

32. master (d.a.) ________________________________

33. for the women of the islands ________________________________

34. gifts (subj.) of gold ________________________________

35. husband and wife (subjs.) ________________________________

36. a boy (subj.) with the men ________________________________

37. a gift (d.o.) for the woman ________________________________

38. words (d.o.) against the queen ________________________________

39. with a boy and a girl ________________________________

40. daughters (d.a.) ________________________________

C. Write the syntax, case, and number above each italicized word. If a conjunction is italicized, label it as such. For each prepositional phrase, label the preposition and indicate the case and number of the noun that follows. Then write each italicized element in Latin.

Example:

Syntax:	subj., nom. sing.	conj.	subj., nom. sing.		d.o., acc. sing.	prep. + acc. sing.
Sentence:	*The master*	*and* (his)	*son*	sent	*gold*	*into Italy.*
Translation:	**Dominus**	**et**	**fīlius**		**aurum**	**in Italiam.**

1. Syntax: ________________________________

____

Sentence: *The women* were walking *with the men* *in the street.*

Translation: ________________________________

2. Syntax: ______________________________

____

Sentence: *The men* *on the island* are *sailors.*

Translation: ______________________________

3. Syntax: ______________________________

____

Sentence: *The gods* gave *advice* *to the men.*

Translation: ______________________________

4. Syntax: ______________________________

____

Sentence: *Both* *men* *and* *boys* are going *into war.*

Translation: ______________________________

5. Syntax: ______________________________

____

Sentence: *Slave,* run *away from the fields.*

Translation: ______________________________

6. Syntax: ______________________________

____

Sentence: *The queen* *of the island* gave *the women* *gold.*

Translation: ______________________________

7. Syntax: ______________________________

____

Sentence: *The farmer* walked *in the field* *with (his) sons.*

Translation: ______________________________

8. Syntax: ______________________________

____

Sentence: *The slave* was fighting *with a sword.*

Translation: ______________________________

9. Syntax: ______________________________

____

Sentence: I have written *a book* *about the soul.* *Son,* read it!

Translation: ______________________________

10. Syntax: ______________________________

____

Sentence: *The girls* fear *the dangers* *of war.*

Translation: ______________________________

11. Syntax: ______________________________

____

Sentence: *O gods* *and* *goddesses,* give *fame* *to the sailors* *on the islands.*

Translation: ______________________________

12. Syntax: ______________________________

____

Sentence: *To women* *and* *to girls* *the gifts* *of the gods* are dear.

Translation: ______________________________

13. Syntax: ______________________________

____

Sentence: *Daughter,* let us walk *toward the town.*

Translation: ______________________________

14. Syntax: ______________________________

____

Sentence: *The woman* is *the queen* *of the country.*

Translation: ______________________________

15. Syntax: ______________________________

____

Sentence: We saw *the streets* *in the country* *of the queen.*

Translation: ______________________________

16. Syntax: ______________________________

____

Sentence: *The sailors* walked *out from the field* *into the town.*

Translation: ______________________________

17. Syntax: ______________________________

____

Sentence: *The poets* bribed *the man* *both* *with money* *and* *with books.*

Translation: ______________________________

18. Syntax: ______________________________

____

Sentence: Many *poets* are *farmers.*

Translation: ______________________________

19. Syntax: ______________________________

____

Sentence: *The goddesses* sent *gifts* *into the homeland.*

Translation: ______________________________

20. Syntax: ______________________________

____

Sentence: *The girl* will become *a woman.*

Translation: ______________________________

21. Syntax: ______________________________

____

Sentence: *Boy,* show *the slaves* *the money* *of the masters.*

Translation: ______________________________

22. Syntax: ____________________

____

Sentence: *The woman* persuaded *the man* *with words.*

Translation: ____________________

23. Syntax: ____________________

____

Sentence: *The slave* became *a master.*

Translation: ____________________

24. Syntax: ____________________

____

Sentence: *The men* were making *plans* *about war* *in Italy.*

Translation: ____________________

25. Syntax: ____________________

____

Sentence: *To the women* *of the island* *the sailor* seemed friendly.

Translation: ____________________

26. Syntax: ____________________

____

Sentence: *Boys,* did you hear *the words* *of the women?*

Translation: ____________________

27. Syntax: ______________________________

____

Sentence: *The girls* were walking *in the street* *with the boys.*

Translation: ______________________________

28. Syntax: ______________________________

____

Sentence: *The homeland* *of the man* is *Italy.*

Translation: ______________________________

29. Syntax: ______________________________

____

Sentence: *The sailors* will sail *away from the islands.*

Translation: ______________________________

30. Syntax: ______________________________

____

Sentence: *A rumor* *about the queen* flew *into the towns* *of Italy.*

Translation: ______________________________

31. Syntax: ______________________________

____

Sentence: *Poets* desire *fame* *and* *money.*

Translation: ______________________________

32. Syntax: ______________________________

____

Sentence: I see *both* *a sailor* *and* *a farmer* *in the field.*

Translation: ______________________________

33. Syntax: ______________________________

____

Sentence: *The poet* teaches (his) *sons* *with a book.*

Translation: ______________________________

34. Syntax: ______________________________

____

Sentence: Did you show *the gifts* *of gold* *to the sons* *of the queen?*

Translation: ______________________________

35. Syntax: ______________________________

____

Sentence: *The man* was going *to Italy* *with (his) daughter.*

Translation: ______________________________

36. Syntax: ______________________________

____

Sentence: *The men* are fighting *with swords.*

Translation: ______________________________

37. Syntax: ______________________________

____

Sentence: *The fields* *of the farmers* are broad.

Translation: ______________________________

38. Syntax: ______________________________

____

Sentence: Were you walking, *son,* *in the street?*

Translation: ______________________________

39. Syntax: ______________________________

____

Sentence: *The queen* rules *the country* *by the sword.*

Translation: ______________________________

40. Syntax: ______________________________

____

Sentence: *To men* *the deeds* *of gods and goddesses* are terrifying.

Translation: ______________________________

Drill 5–6 The Finite Latin Verb; Indicative Mood

A. Fill in the blanks. Do not use abbreviations.

1. The five properties of the finite verb in Latin are: ________________, ________________, ________________, ________________, and ________________.

2. The two voices of the Latin verb are: ________________ and ________________.

3. The three moods of the Latin verb are: ________________, ________________, and ________________.

4. The six tenses of the indicative mood are: ________________, ________________, ________________, ________________, ________________, and ________________.

B. Give the time and aspect for each tense of the indicative mood. Give all possibilities.

Example: Present: ***present* time with *simple* or *progressive/repeated* aspect**

Imperfect: ________________ time with ________________ aspect

Future: ________________ time with ________________ OR ________________ aspect

Perfect: ________________ time with ________________ aspect

OR ________________ time with ________________ aspect

Pluperfect: ________________ time with ________________ aspect

Future Perfect: ________________ time with ________________ aspect

C. 1. Identify the time and aspect of the following English verb phrases.
2. Name the Latin tense of the indicative that would be used for each.

Example:	Time	Aspect	Tense Name
they were walking	**past**	**progressive**	**imperfect**

	Time	Aspect	Tense Name
1. I shall walk			
2. we walked (every day)			
3. she is walking			
4. he has walked			
5. you walked			
6. I shall have walked			
7. she walks			
8. they had walked			
9. you are walking			
10. he will have walked			
11. I wrote (often)			
12. they wrote			
13. he had written			
14. you were writing			
15. I am writing			
16. she used to write			

	Time	Aspect	Tense Name
17. he will write			
18. we have written			
19. they will have written			
20. you had written			

Drill 7–8 Principal Parts and the Four Conjugations

A. Fill in the blanks. Do not use abbreviations.

1. A vocabulary entry for a verb contains the four ________________________________

   and the English meaning(s).

2. Verbs in Latin are divided into ____________ families called ____________________.

3. The second principal part of every verb is the ________________________________

   and is translated with the English word ____________.

4. Verbs of the first conjugation are distinguished by ____________________________

   ____.

5. Verbs of the second conjugation are distinguished by __________________________

   ____.

6. To find the present stem of a verb ________________________________

   ____.

B. Give the principal parts of the Latin verbs with these English meanings. Do not use abbreviations. Include a blank for any missing principal parts.

Example: call **vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus**

1. wander ____
2. order ____
3. fear ____

4. owe; ought ________________________________

5. move ________________________________

6. work ________________________________

7. be; exist ________________________________

8. give, grant ________________________________

9. walk ________________________________

10. give; reward ________________________________

11. see ________________________________

12. be able ________________________________

13. love ________________________________

14. desire ________________________________

15. answer ________________________________

16. have ________________________________

17. think ________________________________

18. show ________________________________

C. Fill in the missing principal parts and meanings.

1	2	3	4	Meaning
mōnstrō				
				be
			vīsus	
		iussī		
	dēbēre			
		dedī		
				fear
possum				
			amātus	
	respondēre			

Drill 9 First- and Second-Conjugation Verbs

A. For each verb, give:
1. principal parts
2. present, imperfect, and future active indicative with English translations in the person and number indicated

Example: think, 3rd sing.	**cōgitō, cōgitāre, cōgitāvī, cōgitātus**	
Present	**cōgitat**	**he thinks**
Imperfect	**cōgitābat**	**he was thinking**
Future	**cōgitābit**	**he will think**

1. answer, 3rd pl.	__________	
Present	__________	__________
Imperfect	__________	__________
Future	__________	__________

2. give, grant, 2nd sing.	__________	
Present	__________	__________
Imperfect	__________	__________
Future	__________	__________

3. owe, ought, 2nd sing.	__________	
Present	__________	__________
Imperfect	__________	__________
Future	__________	__________

4. wander, 1st pl. ____________________

Present ____________ ____________

Imperfect ____________ ____________

Future ____________ ____________

5. order, 1st pl. ____________________

Present ____________ ____________

Imperfect ____________ ____________

Future ____________ ____________

6. work, 3rd sing. ____________________

Present ____________ ____________

Imperfect ____________ ____________

Future ____________ ____________

7. love, 3rd sing. ____________________

Present ____________ ____________

Imperfect ____________ ____________

Future ____________ ____________

8. have, 2nd pl. ____________________

Present ____________ ____________

Imperfect ____________ ____________

Future ____________ ____________

9. desire, 1st sing. ______________________

Present ______________ ______________

Imperfect ______________ ______________

Future ______________ ______________

10. see, 3rd pl. ______________________

Present ______________ ______________

Imperfect ______________ ______________

Future ______________ ______________

B. Identify each form (give person, number, tense, voice, mood) and translate.

Example: iubet **3rd sing. pres. act. indic.; he, she, it orders**

1. timeō ______________________
2. iubēbimus ______________________
3. dabit ______________________
4. errābant ______________________
5. movēbās ______________________
6. amābitis ______________________
7. vocābō ______________________
8. respondēmus ______________________
9. mōnstrātis ______________________
10. dōnābam ______________________

11. vidēmus __________

12. optābis __________

13. labōrābant __________

14. habēbunt __________

15. ambulās __________

16. damus __________

17. timēbunt __________

18. habēbātis __________

19. dēbeō __________

20. iubētis __________

C. Change singular forms to plural and plural forms to singular, keeping person the same.

Example: amāmus **amō**

1. vocābis __________

2. timēbant __________

3. vidēs __________

4. ambulāmus __________

5. dēbēbitis __________

6. dant __________

7. mōnstrābāmus __________

8. cōgitō ____________________

9. amant ____________________

10. iubēbit ____________________

11. dās ____________________

12. habēmus ____________________

13. movēbit ____________________

14. timēbātis ____________________

15. habēs ____________________

16. videō ____________________

17. dōnābam ____________________

18. dabat ____________________

19. errābō ____________________

20. movēmus ____________________

D. Name the tense and write in Latin.

		Tense	Form
Example:	they were working	**imperfect**	**labōrābant**

	Tense	Form
1. I shall answer	____________	____________
2. I have	____________	____________
3. she thinks	____________	____________

	Tense	Form
4. you will desire		
5. we used to desire		
6. they were granting		
7. you (pl.) are walking		
8. you (pl.) wander		
9. I saw (repeatedly)		
10. he will move		
11. they will order		
12. we were showing		
13. you owe		
14. she is rewarding		
15. you (pl.) were fearing		
16. we shall see		
17. we are calling		
18. I am calling		
19. she used to love		
20. you used to think		

E. Write these forms in Latin.

Example: 3rd pl. fut. act. indic. of *habeō* **habēbunt**

1. 1st sing. imperf. act. indic. of *vocō* ____________________
2. 2nd pl. pres. act. indic. of *cōgitō* ____________________
3. 3rd sing. imperf. act. indic. of *videō* ____________________
4. 2nd sing. fut. act. indic. of *dōnō* ____________________
5. 1st pl. pres. act. indic. of *ambulō* ____________________
6. 3rd pl. imperf. act. indic. of *respondeō* ____________________
7. 2nd sing. pres. act. indic. of *dō* ____________________
8. 3rd sing. fut. act. indic. of *labōrō* ____________________
9. 1st pl. imperf. act. indic. of *moveō* ____________________
10. 1st sing. pres. act. indic. of *errō* ____________________
11. 2nd pl. fut. act. indic. of *optō* ____________________
12. 3rd pl. pres. act. indic. of *timeō* ____________________
13. 2nd sing. imperf. act. indic. of *iubeō* ____________________
14. 1st pl. fut. act. indic. of *amō* ____________________
15. 3rd sing. pres. act. indic. of *moveō* ____________________
16. 3rd pl. imperf. act. indic. of *mōnstrō* ____________________
17. 1st sing. fut. act. indic. of *dōnō* ____________________

18. 2nd sing. pres. act. indic. of *dēbeō* ____________________

19. 3rd sing. imperf. act. indic. of *vocō* ____________________

20. 3rd pl. pres. act. indic. of *amō* ____________________

Drill 10 *sum* and *possum*

A. For each verb, give:
1. principal parts
2. present, imperfect, and future active indicative with English translations in the person and number indicated

Example: be, 1st pl. **sum, esse, fuī, futūrus**

Present **sumus** **we are**

Imperfect **erāmus** **we were**

Future **erimus** **we shall be**

1. exist, 2nd sing. ______________________________

Present ______________ ______________

Imperfect ______________ ______________

Future ______________ ______________

2. be able, 3rd pl. ______________________________

Present ______________ ______________

Imperfect ______________ ______________

Future ______________ ______________

3. be, 3rd sing. ______________________________

Present ______________ ______________

Imperfect ______________ ______________

Future ______________ ______________

4. can, 1st sing. ______________________________

   Present ______________ ______________

   Imperfect ______________ ______________

   Future ______________ ______________

5. be, 2nd pl. ______________________________

   Present ______________ ______________

   Imperfect ______________ ______________

   Future ______________ ______________

B. Identify each form (give person, number, tense, voice, mood) and translate.

Example: est **3rd sing. pres. act. indic.** **he, she, it is**

1. potes ______________________________

2. possumus ______________________________

3. erat ______________________________

4. poteram ______________________________

5. sunt ______________________________

6. sum ______________________________

7. poterō ______________________________

8. erāmus ______________________________

9. eritis ______________________________

10. poterunt ______________________________

11. es ____________________

12. estis ____________________

13. poterant ____________________

14. erātis ____________________

15. sumus ____________________

16. possum ____________________

17. possunt ____________________

18. poterās ____________________

19. erunt ____________________

20. poteris ____________________

C. Name the tense and write in Latin.

		Tense	Form
Example:	we were able	**imperfect**	**poterāmus**

	Tense	Form
1. you (pl.) will be	____________	____________
2. they used to be	____________	____________
3. I was able	____________	____________
4. she can	____________	____________
5. it used to exist	____________	____________
6. we are	____________	____________

	Tense	Form
7. you can		
8. he will be able		
9. there is		
10. I shall be		
11. we are able		
12. you (pl.) were being		
13. they will be		
14. he was able		
15. I am		
16. you will be able		
17. we shall be		
18. you are		
19. you (pl.) are able		
20. there were		

Drill 11 Distinguishing Transitive and Intransitive Verbs

A. Fill in the blanks. Do *not* use abbreviations.

1. A transitive verb is ______________________________

   ______________________________.

2. An intransitive verb is ______________________________

   ______________________________.

3. A copulative verb is transitive/intransitive *(circle one)*.

B. Identify each italicized verb as transitive or intransitive. Identify each transitive verb used absolutely. Identify each intransitive verb that is copulative or a verb expressing motion.

Examples: No man *is* an island. **intransitive; copulative**

Vergil *was writing.* **transitive; used absolutely**

1. The soldiers *were walking* on the beach. ______________________________

2. I *was wandering* in the woods. ______________________________

3. The teacher *pondered* the question. ______________________________

4. These children *love* their dog. ______________________________

5. He *seemed* strange. ______________________________

6. *Will* she *become* president? ______________________________

7. That day the sky *was* very blue. ______________________________

8. She *is* a doctor. ______________________________

9. The men *were fighting.* ______________________________

10. We *work* too much. ______________________________

11. You *knew* too much. ______________________________

12. They *feared.* ______________________________

13. Last night they *were drinking.* ______________________________

14. They *came* to dinner. ______________________________

15. Caesar *pointed out* the mistakes in Pompey's plan. ______________________________

C. Give the principal parts and the English meaning(s) of the following Latin verbs and state whether they are transitive or intransitive. If you are unsure about a verb, check the vocabulary notes.

1. mōnstrō ______________________________

2. videō ______________________________

3. sum ______________________________

4. possum ______________________________

5. habeō ______________________________

6. amō ______________________________

7. moveō ______________________________

8. respondeō ______________________________

9. errō ______________________________

10. ambulō ______________________________

11. labōrō ______________________________

12. optō ______________________________

Drill 12–15 Short Sentences and Syntax

Nominative, Subject
Predicate Nominative
Genitive of Possession
Dative of Reference
Dative of Indirect Object
Dative of the Possessor
Accusative, Direct Object
Ablative of Means
Ablative of Accompaniment
Complementary Infinitive
Object Infinitive

Translate these short sentences with some regard for good English usage, and from the list above **give the syntax** of the italicized words.

Example: Nautae cum *puellīs* ambulant. **The sailors are walking with the girls.**
puellīs: **Ablative of Accompaniment**

1. *Fēmina puellae pecūniam* dabat.

____

____

fēmina ______________________________

puellae ______________________________

pecūniam ______________________________

2. Fīlia *poētae* in viīs errābat.

____

____

poētae ______________________________

3. *Oppida* in īnsulā *vidēre* poteris.

____

____

oppida __________________________________

vidēre __________________________________

4. *Dōna dīs* cum *fēminīs* dōnābō.

____

____

dōna __________________________________

dīs __________________________________

fēminīs __________________________________

5. *Virō* erat *aurum.*

____

____

virō __________________________________

aurum __________________________________

6. Agricolae servōs *labōrāre* in agrīs iubent.

____

____

labōrāre __________________________________

7. Vir puerōs *verbō* movet.

____

____

verbō ____________________________________

8. Dē verbīs *virōrum cōgitāre* dēbēs.

____

____

virōrum ___________________________________

cōgitāre ___________________________________

9. *Servus ferrum* habet, sed aurum *habēre* optat.

____

____

servus ___________________________________

ferrum ___________________________________

habēre ___________________________________

10. Est *servō ferrum.*

____

____

servō ___________________________________

ferrum ___________________________________

11. Virī cum *fēminīs bellum* timent.

____

____

fēminīs ____________________________________

bellum ____________________________________

12. *Fīlius rēgīnae* erat *nauta*.

____

____

fīlius ____________________________________

rēgīnae ____________________________________

nauta ____________________________________

13. *Rēgīnam aurō* dōnābunt.

____

____

rēgīnam ____________________________________

aurō ____________________________________

14. *Puellīs* erunt librī.

____

____

puellīs ____________________________________

15. Vir *fīliō* timet.

____

____

fīliō ____________________________________

16. *Perīculum nautīs* mōnstrābimus.

____

____

perīculum ____________________________________

nautīs ____________________________________

17. *Gladiōs* ex agrō *movēre* puellam iubeō.

____

____

gladiōs ____________________________________

movēre ____________________________________

18. *Agricola* erit *puer*.

____

____

agricola ____________________________________

puer ____________________________________

19. Servus *dominō respondēre* nōn potest.

____

____

dominō ______________________________________

respondēre ___________________________________

20. *Virīs* erat *cōnsilium* dē bellō.

____

____

virīs ____

cōnsilium ____________________________________

Exercises, CHAPTER II

A. Translate these sentences.

1. Agricola fīliō aurum dabit.

   Aurum agricola fīliō dabit.

   Fīliō agricola aurum dabit.

2. Poēta fēminās verbīs dē animā movēbat.

   Verbīs dē animā poēta fēminās movēbat.

3. Virī arma rēgīnae nōn timent.

   Nōn timent virī arma rēgīnae.

4. Poēta animum fīlī verbīs dē vītā movet.

5. Cūr aurum virī puer optat? Nōn est pecūnia puerō.

6. Virī īnsulae deam dōnīs dōnābunt. Labōrant enim dē perīculō bellī.

7. Fēminīs erant cūrae dē bellō. Etenim cūrās fēminārum animō cōgitābam.

8. Facta nautārum cōgitāmus. Fāma enim erit nautīs.

9. Cūr ab Italiā vēla dabat? Nam Italia erat patria poētae.

10. Dōnum deae est sapientia.

11. Erat deus in oppidō, domine.

12. Est aurum in īnsulā, ō agricolae.

13. In viam ambulābitis.

Ex viā ambulābātis.

In viā ambulātis.

14. Ad oppidum errō. In oppidō erō.

Ab oppidō errābam.

Ex oppidō errābō.

15. Puella puerque poenās dare dēbent.

Puella et puer poenās dare nōn optant.

Et puella et puer poenās dabunt.

16. Vir studium agricolae habet et animum.

Virō erat et studium agricolae et animus.

17. Puerō est aurum, ferrum puellae.

Puer aurum habet, puella ferrum.

18. Deusne īram in agricolās īnsulae habet? Agricolās amat?

19. Fīliās nauta habēbat, sed nōn fīliōs. Namque nautam dī nōn amābant.

20. Nec virōs Italiae nec fēminās vidēre poteram.

21. Fīliae rēgīnae et nautās gladiīs et poētās librīs dōnāre poterunt.

22. Timēsne īram deōrum? Dī enim facta et virōrum et fēminārum vidēre possunt.

23. In agrīs cum servīs labōrābō. Nam dēbeō virō pecūniam nec vītam dēbēre optō.

24. Potesne, serve, in patriā labōrāre? Optāsne ā patriā vēla dare?

25. Amāsne, fīlī, puellam in īnsulā? Respondēbisne?

26. Puella cum fīliō rēgīnae in viā ambulāre optat. Cūr cum nautā ambulat?

27. Cūrās animī ex factīs mōnstrābās, ō puella.

28. Cūrae bellī virōs ā patriā vocant.

29. Agricola cum fīliō in agrō labōrāre nōn optābat.

30. Poēta dē deōrum factīs cōgitābat, sed nautae respondēre nōn poterat.

31. Cūr poenās timēbant fēminae? Īram dea fēminīs mōnstrābat.

32. Pecūniam dominō servus dēbet, sed nōn dabit.

33. Virī cum puerīs arma ex agrō movēre poterant.

34. Poēta verbīs animōs virōrum fēminārumque movēre potest.

35. Fīliamne, nōn fīlium, rēgīna in viīs oppidī ambulāre iubēbit? Respondēbitne fīlia rēgīnae?

36. Rēgīna nōn errābat. Etenim agricolās labōrāre in agrīs iubēbat.

37. In agrīs nōn labōrātis, ō puerī. Īram agricolae movēbitis et poenās dabitis.

38. Neque nautae bella timent nec fēminae.

Nautae nec bella timent nec arma.

Nautae nec bella nec arma timent.

39. Rēgīna et īram deum cōgitābat et sapientiam.

Rēgīna īram deum cōgitābat, poēta sapientiam.

Rēgīna īram deōrum, poētārum sapientiam cōgitābat.

40. Cūr poēta puerīs librum dē animō animāque mōnstrābat? Puerī sapientiam optābant.

41. Rēgīna virīs īnsulae gladiōs dat. Nam erit bellum in īnsulā.

42. Fēmina dē vītā virī timet. Namque ad bellum vēla dabit.

43. Librumne fēminae dabis, ō rēgīna?

Librōne fēminam dōnābis?

44. Servōs labōrāre in agrīs dominus iubēbat.

Dominus servōs in agrīs labōrāre nōn iubēbit.

45. Cūr puerīs arma nōn datis? Cōgitāre, ō virī, perīcula bellī dēbētis.

46. Cūr dē fāmā dominī cōgitant servī?

47. Potes dē cūrīs servōrum cōgitāre dēbēsque.

48. Cōnsiliane deum cōgitātis, ō poētae?

49. Arma virumque videō, sed neque arma vidēre nec virum potes.

50. Rēgīna bellum timet. Virōs in armīs esse iubet.

51. Dīs sunt animī?

Habentne dī animōs?

52. Nautae in īnsulā gladiōs, sed nōn librōs habēbant.

Nautae in īnsulā gladiōs, nōn librōs habēbant.

Nautīs in īnsulā erant gladiī, nōn librī.

53. Rēgīna arma nautīs dare, dōna dīs optat.

54. Servus dominum nec ferrō poterat movēre nec aurō.

55. Dōna, dī deaeque, vidētis fēminārum?

56. Agricola sum. Esne nauta?

Servī erāmus. Erāsne dominus?

57. Sunt et poētae in viā et agricolae.

58. Errat animus virī dē verbīs poētae.

59. Et verba poētae et dōna rēgīnae virōs in arma movēbunt.

60. Puella puerque dominō viam mōnstrāre nōn possunt.

61. Errābat Fāma ad oppida.

Erat fāma dē fīliā rēgīnae.

62. Rēgīna nōn dē pecūniā labōrat, sed dē fāmā.

63. Et puellae sapientiam optābunt. Nam dē viā errant.

64. Studium puerī ex factīs vidēbis.

65. Errāmus, sed viam ad oppidum mōnstrābis.

66. Poēta in Italiam errābit. Namque patriam amat et vidēre optat.

67. Dominus esse servus optābat, sed nōn poterat.

68. Nautae et virīs arma et fēminīs aurum et puerīs librōs dant.

69. Neque aurum optō nec dōna neque pecūniam, sed sapientiam.

70. Puellāsne dōnās dōnīs? Cūr, ō poēta, nōn puerōs?

71. Dominus servōs vocābat, sed servī dominō nōn respondēbant.

72. Vir fīlium puerum vocābat.

73. Fēminae patriam Italiam vocant.

74. Puerō dōna dabit, puellae librōs.

75. Et agricolārum animōs, ō poēta, movēre potes.

76. Fēminam ab oppidō ad agrum vocābimus; sapientiam enim et cōnsilium dē īrā rēgīnae agricolīs mōnstrāre poterit.

77. Dī puellae cōnsilium dabunt; etenim est dīs cūra dē fāmā.

78. Nautīs cōnsilia rēgīnae mōnstrāre dēbēbimus. Rēgīna enim servīs īnsulārum arma dare optat. Nautae vēla dare dēbēbunt.

B. Write in Latin with some attention to good Latin word order.

1. The daughter of the poet is giving gifts to the sons of the queen.

2. Why was the master showing the gold even to (his) slaves?

3. Will the women on the island be able to move the sailor with words? Will he set sail toward Italy?

4. The mind of a man can err, but the gods give wisdom to poets.

5. The queen was pondering the deeds of (her) daughter, but (she was pondering) the words of (her) son.

6. Women, were you ordering the boys in the street to respond to the words of the queen?

7. I shall order (my) sons and daughters both to think about the life of the soul and to fear the wrath of the gods.

8. The boys used to have gold, but the poets used to have books. (Write this sentence twice, first using **habeō**, then using a Dative of the Possessor.)

9. Farmers have anxieties about the dangers of war. (Write this sentence twice, first using **habeō**, then using a Dative of the Possessor.)

10. To the girls the queen was a goddess.

11. To the queen life was a gift of the gods.

12. The slaves with (their) sons were desiring to show (their) zeal to the master and (his) daughter.

13. The men of Italy will pay the penalty; for there is anger in the minds of the gods.

14. Why were you not working in the fields, son? You ought to ponder the wisdom of farmers.

15. There will not be sailors in the town; for they fear the dangers of war.

Drill 17–18 First-Second-Declension Adjectives; Noun-Adjective Agreement

A. On a separate sheet decline fully (singular and plural, all cases) these noun-adjective pairs.

1. small island	2. Roman poet
3. beautiful gift	4. many weapons (plural only)

B. Supply the correct form of the adjective **bonus**, **bona**, **bonum** to modify each noun.
Give all possibilities.

Example: poētārum **bonōrum**

1. animō (2) ______________________________

2. dī (2) ______________________________

3. vītam ______________________________

4. factum (3) ______________________________

5. nautae (4) ______________________________

6. dōnō (2) ______________________________

7. verba (3) ______________________________

8. agricolam ______________________________

9. viīs (2) ______________________________

10. cōnsiliō (2) ______________________________

11. liber (2) ______________________________

12. puerī (3) ________________

13. oppidōrum ________________

14. agricolae (4) ________________

15. gladium ________________

16. deās ________________

17. nauta (2) ________________

18. verbum (3) ________________

19. puellās ________________

20. fēminārum ________________

C. Translate these phrases. Give all possibilities.

Example: facta pulchra **beautiful deeds (subj., d.a., d.o.)**

1. in agrōs pulchrōs ________________

2. poētae magnō ________________

3. magnum gladium ________________

4. ab īnsulā parvā ________________

5. fīliō amīcō (2) ________________

6. multam pecūniam ________________

7. servīs miserīs (2) ________________

8. ō domine male ________________

9. dōna magna (3) ______________________________

10. nautae inimīcī (3) ______________________________

11. multās fīliās ______________________________

12. multā pecūniā ______________________________

13. agricolārum miserōrum ______________________________

14. puellae miserae (4) ______________________________

15. dominī inimīcī (3) ______________________________

16. puellam amīcam ______________________________

17. dē librō malō ______________________________

18. animum bonum ______________________________

19. dī magnī (2) ______________________________

20. oppidum Rōmānum (3) ______________________________

21. agricolae līberō ______________________________

22. dōnīs bonīs (2) ______________________________

23. male puer ______________________________

24. in magnō perīculō ______________________________

25. virī laetī (3) ______________________________

26. oppidīs līberīs (2) ______________________________

27. in parvō oppidō ______________________________

28. ad agrum laetum ____________________

29. agricolae līberī (3) ____________________

30. fēmina lībera (2) ____________________

31. factum malum (3) ____________________

32. deae pulchrae (4) ____________________

33. multō ferrō (2) ____________________

34. poētārum Rōmānōrum ____________________

35. ad oppida Rōmāna ____________________

36. dīs bonīs (2) ____________________

37. poēta magne ____________________

38. fāmam malam ____________________

39. ad multās terrās ____________________

40. dē cōnsiliīs bonīs ____________________

Drill 19 Substantive Use of the Adjective

1. Give the gender, number, and case of all substantives.
2. Translate each sentence.

Example: Bonī in agrīs labōrant. 1. **bonī: masculine plural nominative**
2. **Good men are working in the fields.**

1. Miserō pecūniam dabō.

2. Laetae in viā ambulant.

3. Poēta puellīs multa mōnstrābat.

4. Līberō erit multa pecūnia.

5. Līber nōn est servus.

6. Rēgīnae librum dē malīs bellī dōnō.

7. Magnum in oppidō parvō vidēbam.

8. Optāsne bona?

9. Amāsne malum?

10. Amīcō dōna dat.

11. Cum amīcīs ambulābimus.

12. Rōmānī ab Italiā vēla dabant.

13. Parvae erat magna anima.

____

____

14. Parvum habeō, sed multa optō.

____

____

15. Inimīcōs nōn amāmus.

____

____

16. Pulchra servō multa dabat.

____

____

17. Malus bonum optāre nōn poterit.

____

____

18. Malīs respondēbō.

____

____

19. Rōmānī magna optābant.

____

____

20. Pulchra in īnsulīs vidēbis.

Drill 19–20 Predicate Adjective; Substantive Use of the Adjective

A. Write in Latin these sentences containing predicate adjectives.

1. The gifts will be beautiful.

2. The reputation of the man was bad.

3. The war in the homeland will be great.

4. The poets of the island are friendly.

5. The soul of the man is not beautiful.

6. Was the queen great?

7. Were the farmers handsome?

8. Both the men and the boys are happy.

B. Translate these sentences containing substantives.

1. Servī dominō misera respondēbant.

2. Malum in viā vidēbam.

3. Pulchra multīs erat fēmina.

4. Pulchramne amās?

5. Bona puerīs multa dabit.

6. Līberīne sunt agricolae?

7. Poētae bonō multa et pulchra dōnābō.

8. Līberō est multa sapientia. Etenim pulchrum est sapientia.

Drill 21 *eō*

A. 1. Give the principal parts of **eō**.
2. Translate the following forms into English.
3. Change singulars to plurals, plurals to singulars in Latin.

Principal Parts: ______________________________

	Translation	Change of Number
1. eunt	____________	____________
2. ībunt	____________	____________
3. īs	____________	____________
4. ībant	____________	____________
5. ībās	____________	____________
6. īmus	____________	____________
7. ībimus	____________	____________
8. ībam	____________	____________

B. Write in Latin.

1. they were going ____________
2. I shall go ____________
3. they will go ____________
4. I was going ____________

5. they are going

____

6. I am going

____

7. you will go

____

8. he used to go

____

9. you (pl.) are going

____

10. to go

____

C. Translate these sentences.

1. Īsne cum bonīs in bellum?

____

2. Et servī et līberī in agrōs eunt.

____

3. Ībātisne cum fēminīs ē patriā?

____

4. Agricolās ad īnsulam cum nautīs īre iubeō.

____

5. Laeta cum miserō in oppidum ībit.

____

____

6. Ē perīculīs et dominus et servus ībant.

____

____

7. Viā ad oppidum eō cum fīliō.

8. Puella misera ē vītā it.

Drill 22 The Passive Voice

A. Change these English verb phrases from active to passive. Keep person, number, and tense (including aspect) the same.

Example: she was loving **she was being loved**

1. you (pl.) call ______________________

2. they will fear ______________________

3. he is ordering ______________________

4. I am choosing ______________________

5. they will point out ______________________

6. you were presenting ______________________

7. he considers ______________________

8. you (pl.) point out ______________________

9. we used to love ______________________

10. I shall see ______________________

11. you will reward ______________________

12. she moved (repeatedly) ______________________

13. we are seeing ______________________

14. you (pl.) will consider ______________________

15. he moves ______________________

16. they were ordering ______________________

17. you will desire ______________________________

18. she loves ______________________________

19. we used to fear ______________________________

20. I shall move ______________________________

B. Name the tense and voice that would be used in Latin for each of these English verb phrases.

Example: she was being feared **imperfect passive**

1. we were considering ______________________________

2. you (pl.) will be called ______________________________

3. he will be ______________________________

4. they are answering ______________________________

5. it was being shown ______________________________

6. you were seeing ______________________________

7. I am thinking ______________________________

8. she will be moved ______________________________

9. you (pl.) were walking ______________________________

10. I used to be loved ______________________________

11. it is seen ______________________________

12. we are called ______________________________

13. she is moving ______________________________

14. they will choose ______________________________

15. she is moved

16. you used to be feared

17. you order

18. it will be considered

19. we used to be

20. we were able

Drill 23–24 Verb Morphology: The Passive Voice

A. On a separate sheet provided, write a synopsis for each of the following verbs in the indicated person and number.

1. optō, 2nd sing.
2. iubeō, 1st pl.
3. moveō, 3rd pl.
4. mōnstrō, 3rd sing.
5. amō, 1st sing.
6. habeō, 2nd pl.

B. 1. Identify the tense and voice of these finite verb forms.
2. Translate.

		Tense and Voice	Translation
Example:	dōnat	**present active**	**he, she, it gives**

	Tense and Voice	Translation
1. dēbet	__________	__________
2. dēbētur	__________	__________
3. habēbāre	__________	__________
4. habēre	__________	__________
5. timēbō	__________	__________
6. timēbor	__________	__________
7. vocābimur	__________	__________
8. vocābāmur	__________	__________
9. vidēre	__________	__________
10. vidēbere	__________	__________

	Tense and Voice	Translation
11. iubēris		
12. iubēs		
13. movēbantur		
14. movēbuntur		
15. habēbāminī		
16. habētis		
17. iubēmus		
18. iubēmur		
19. amō		
20. amor		
21. optābō		
22. optābimur		
23. dat		
24. datur		
25. cōgitābat		
26. cōgitābit		
27. movēbās		
28. movēbāris		

	Tense and Voice	Translation
29. vocāminī		
30. vocāmur		
31. vidēbuntur		
32. vidēmur		
33. amābantur		
34. amantur		
35. timēbis		
36. timēris		
37. dōnor		
38. dōnābor		
39. dēbent		
40. dēbentur		

C. 1. Name the tense and voice that would be used in Latin for each of these English verb phrases.
2. Write in Latin.

		Tense and Voice	Translation
Example:	it is being answered	**present passive**	**respondētur**

	Tense and Voice	Translation
1. they will be called		
2. you are wandering		
3. we used to be considered		

	Tense and Voice	Translation
4. he has		
5. they were working		
6. I am loved		
7. we shall be able		
8. she is being ordered		
9. you (pl.) are desired		
10. he used to be seen		
11. you will be moved		
12. they were		
13. I shall be seen		
14. she is presenting		
15. you (pl.) were being ordered		
16. it will be thought		
17. they are thinking		
18. you are being moved		
19. we were being feared		
20. he will give		

D. 1. Translate each of the following verb forms.

2. Change voice in Latin, active to passive, passive to active.

		Translation	Voice Change
Example:	habēbat	**he, she, it used to have**	**habēbātur**

	Translation	Voice Change
1. vocor		
2. dōnābant		
3. cōgitātur		
4. vidēbās		
5. optābiminī		
6. movēmur		
7. amābis		
8. mōnstrābuntur		
9. habet		
10. iubēbāminī		
11. timēbam		
12. dantur		

E. Write these forms in Latin.

Example: 2nd sing. fut. pass. indic. of *amō* **amāberis/amābere**

1. 2nd pl. imperf. act. indic. of *errō* ____________________

2. 3rd sing. pres. pass. indic. of *optō* ____________________

3. 1st pl. fut. pass. indic. of *moveō* ______

4. 3rd pl. imperf. act. indic. of *ambulō* ______

5. 2nd sing. imperf. act. indic. of *sum* ______

6. 1st pl. pres. pass. indic. of *videō* ______

7. 3rd sing. imperf. act. indic. of *possum* ______

8. 1st sing. fut. pass. indic. of *iubeō* ______

9. 2nd pl. imperf. pass. indic. of *vocō* ______

10. 3rd pl. pres. act. indic. of *dō* ______

11. 2nd sing. fut. pass. indic. of *habeō* ______

12. 1st pl. pres. act. indic. of *labōrō* ______

13. 3rd sing. imperf. pass. indic. of *amō* ______

14. 3rd pl. fut. act. indic. of *sum* ______

15. 1st sing. pres. pass. indic. of *timeō* ______

16. 2nd pl. imperf. act. indic. of *dōnō* ______

17. 3rd sing. fut. pass. indic. of *cōgitō* ______

18. 2nd pl. pres. act. indic. of *possum* ______

19. 1st pl. imperf. pass. indic. of *optō* ______

20. 3rd pl. pres. pass. indic. of *mōnstrō* ______

Drill 25–29 Short Sentences and Syntax

Nominative, Subject
Predicate Nominative
Predicate Adjective (in the Nominative case)
Predicate Adjective (in the Accusative case)
Dative of Reference
Ablative of Manner
Ablative of Means
Ablative of Personal Agent
Subject Infinitive
Apposition

Translate these short sentences with some regard for good English usage, and from the list above **give the syntax** of the italicized words.

Examples: Bonae cum *cūrā* respondēbant.

The good women were responding with care/carefully.
cūrā: **Ablative of Manner**

Pecūniam puerīs, *amīcīs* poētārum, dabimus.

We shall give money to the boys, friends of the poets.
amīcīs: **Dative, in apposition to puerīs**

1. Rēgīna ā *bonō* amātur.

____

____

bonō ____________________

2. Puer *multīs bonus* vidētur, sed malus est.

____

____

multīs ____________________

bonus ____________________

3. *Bonus* ā *multīs* vidētur.

____

____

bonus ______________________________

multīs ______________________________

4. Magnō *studiō* verba poētārum cōgitābō.

____

____

studiō ______________________________

5. Sapientiam poētārum *animō* cōgitāre dēbēs.

____

____

animō ______________________________

6. *Bonum* est dīs dōna *dare.* Malum est poenās dare.

____

____

bonum ______________________________

dare ______________________________

7. Cūr servī ā *dominō* vocantur?

____

____

dominō ______________________________

8. *Magnum* erit perīculum bellī.

____

____

magnum ______________________________

9. Sapientia est *pulchrum*.

____

____

pulchrum ______________________________

10. Librōs habeō, *dōna* amīcīs sed nōn inimīcīs.

____

____

dōna ______________________________

11. *Misera*, ō fēmina, *amīcīs* vidēre.

____

____

misera ______________________________

amīcīs ______________________________

12. Puellam esse *bonam* iubēbō.

____

____

bonam ______________________________

13. *Agricolae amīcus* erat vir bonus.

____

____

agricolae ______________________________

amīcus ______________________________

14. *Pulchrum* est cūrās animae *cōgitāre.*

____

____

pulchrum ______________________________

cōgitāre ______________________________

15. Ē perīculō magnā cum *cūrā* ambulābāmus.

____

____

cūrā ______________________________

16. Poēta bona cōgitat *bonus*que habētur.

____

____

bonus ______________________________

17. Cūr librī ā *puellīs* cum *cūrā* movēbantur?

puellīs ______________________

cūrā ______________________

18. Servī sunt *dominīs inimīcī.*

dominīs ______________________

inimīcī ______________________

19. *Multae* sunt cūrae agricolārum.

multae ______________________

20. Malus *dominus* ā *servīs* habētur *agricola.*

dominus ______________________

servīs ______________________

agricola ______________________

21. *Puerīs bona* esse vidētur pecūnia, puellīs sapientia.

____

____

puerīs ____________________________________

bona ____________________________________

22. Magna bella timēmus, *poenās* deum.

____

____

poenās ____________________________________

Exercises, Chapter III

A. Translate these sentences.

1. Amīcōs amāmus.

   Ab amīcīs amāmur.

   Pulchrum est amīcōs amāre.

2. Puer laetus puellam miseram vocābat.

   Puer laetus ā puellā miserā vocābātur.

3. Multōs vidēbis.

   Ā multīs vidēbere.

   Bonus multīs vidēberis.

4. Et līberī et servī poētās bonōs propter studium mox laudābunt.

Poētae bonī propter studium ā līberīs servīsque mox laudābuntur.

5. Lūcius, vir bonus, magnum gladium tenet.

Magnus gladius ā Lūciō, virō bonō, tenētur.

6. Nunc ē forō ad agrōs laetōs eō.

In forum cum amīcō ībam.

Euntne agricolae ex agrīs?

7. Ad oppidum parvum cum amīcīs ībis. Nam misera erit vīta sine amīcīs.

8. Multa sunt studia vītae bonae. Dēbēs, amīce, dē bonīs vītae cum dīligentiā cōgitāre.

9. Rōmānī incolās Italiae ferrō superābant. Namque imperium multīs in terrīs tenēre optābant.

10. Miser est poēta Catullus; pulchram enim puellam amat, sed puella est Catullō inimīca.

11. Malum est sine cōnsiliō errāre, sed sine cōnsiliō atque armīs ex terrā errābimus.

12. Cūr timētis, ō fīliī? Semper bona ā dīs bonīs dantur. Multīs bonīs mox dōnābiminī.

13. Multa verba et bona et mala dē imperiō populī Rōmānī cōgitābāmus.

14. Incolae īnsulae bona vītae semper verbīs laetīs laudant. Namque rēgīna pulchra in īnsulā magnum imperium magnā dīligentiā tenet.

15. Malī bella et in bonōs movēbunt. Incolae sine armīs labōrābunt, sed bonum est prō patriā labōrāre.

16. Populō imperium in terrīs ā deā mōnstrābātur.

17. Cūr pugnābunt virī puerīque? Propter studium malōrum in prōvinciā erit magnum bellum. Etenim multī poenās dabunt.

18. Ītis in bellum cum gladiīs, ō Rōmānī. Vītam prō fāmā dabitis?

19. Vir fēminaque cum fīliō ē terrā sine morā ībunt. Līberum enim oppidum tenēre optant.

20. Dī multa bona incolīs oppidī dōnābunt. Ab incolīs enim magna facta deōrum cum dīligentiā laudantur.

21. Dōna pulchra, librī Catullī atque Horātī, fīliō poētae dabuntur.

22. In forum ībō cum fīliā parvā. Poterisne cum fīliō īre?

23. Pulcher es, Quinte, pulchramque animam habēs.

24. Multōs in bellō gladiō superābō. Etenim īram inimīcōrum movēbō.

25. Vir vītam dabit prō vītā fēminae.

26. Mala sunt facta sine cōnsiliō ac sapientiā, parve puer.

27. Librum magnum, dōnum poētae magnī, amīcō in parvō oppidō dōnābimus.

28. Oppida Italiae ā multīs servīs cum dominīs tenēbantur.

29. Cūr puerum laudātis? Puellam prō sapientiā laudāre dēbētis.

30. Amīcī nautīs nōn sunt incolae. Mox cum nautīs pugnābunt.

31. Multa pecūnia agricolīs ab incolīs malīs dēbētur, sed nihil dabitur.

32. Facta pulchra virōrum in bellō et puerīs et puellīs mōnstrābuntur.

33. Mox in forum, Horātī, ab inimīcīs vocāberis. Nam semper malīs est magna īra propter dīligentiam bonōrum.

34. Līberī prōvinciae propter dīligentiam in bellō ā Rōmānīs laudābantur.

35. Cūr multī ex oppidō ībunt nautae? Ā rēgīnā vēla dare sine morā iubentur.

36. Poēta bonus librō, mox aurō, ā rēgīnā dōnābitur.

37. Iubēbisne, Tiberī, servōs miserōs in agrōs īre sine morā?

38. Magna erat īra deī ac multa mala Rōmānīs dōnābantur.

39. Cum Rōmānīs in prōvinciā propter imperī odium pugnābimus. Etenim Rōmānōs magnō studiō superābimus.

40. Līberī cum servīs in terrā inimīcā tenēbantur propter bellum in prōvinciīs.

41. Rōmānī in multīs terrīs imperium tenēbant. Namque magnum erat imperium populī Rōmānī.

42. Cōnsilium bonum dās bonusque amīcus habēre. Cūr miser vidēris?

43. Nīl malum in animō laetō habeō. Etenim inimīcus esse nōn possum. Prō studiō et cūrā dē animā ā poētā bonō laudor; mox ā multīs laudābor.

44. Populus Rōmānus prō factīs ā multīs laudātur. Magna enim multīs videntur facta Rōmānōrum.

45. Malō nihil est bonum atque magnum semper est odium bonōrum. Mox poenās prō animō malō dabit.

46. Prō patriā ac fīliīs, ō incolae, cum Rōmānīs pugnābimus. Bonum est prō patriā pugnāre et pulchrum.

47. Parvī librī Catullī Horātiīque, poētārum magnōrum, semper laudābuntur.

48. Ītisne, amīcī, propter bellī perīculum ad parvam īnsulam? Nunc vēla datis?

49. Laetus multīs vidētur, miser amīcīs.

Amīcī bonīs vidēbāmur, inimīcī malīs.

50. Sapientia deōrum ab Horātiō poētā magnā cum cūrā cōgitātur. Namque est bonum sapientiam deōrum cōgitāre.

____

____

51. Amīcī virīs fēminīsque habentur dī magnī, sed īram atque odium deōrum semper timēbimus.

____

____

52. Ad forum ā rēgīnā vocābiminī, virī, atque ībitis sine morā.

____

____

53. Sine cūrīs in viīs cum bonīs amīcīs errābam.

____

____

54. Nunc et agricolae et incolae prōvinciae cum Rōmānīs pugnant. Poteruntne superāre?

____

____

55. Ad agrōs laetōs ambulābam; vocābar enim ab amīcīs.

____

____

56. Et in perīcula bellī prō amīcīs ībimus atque incolās prōvinciae ferrō superābimus.

____

____

57. Cūr ad forum īs? Nihil bonum vidēbis, Iūlia, nihil pulchrum.

58. Inimīcī populō Rōmānō habēbantur virī prōvinciae. Cūr multī ad prōvinciam ībant?

59. Rōmānī multīs bellum atque arma amāre vidēbantur.

60. Mox Marcus cum Publiō gladiō pugnābit. Nam semper Marcō erat magnum in Publium odium.

61. Rōmānī ē patriā in terram populī inimīcī cum armīs eunt.

62. Nōn propter pecūniam, virī prōvinciae, sed prō patriā cum malīs pugnāre dēbēmus.

63. Rēgīna magna nautās prō populō ad bellum vēla dare iubēbat. Cūr nautīs erat mora?

64. Horātius, poēta magnus et bonus, facta verbaque inimīcōrum sine odiō cōgitābat.

65. Bona līberīs videntur cōnsilia rēgīnae dē poenā servōrum.

66. Rēgīnae inimīcae nōn respondēbās ac magnam movēbās īram.

67. Miserum est pugnāre optāre neque arma habēre.

B. Write in Latin with some attention to good Latin word order.

1. Why were the happy sailors setting sail very enthusiastically away from the small island?

2. The little girl was going into the forum. For she was desiring to see (her) friends.

3. On account of (your) great diligence, Livia, you will be praised by the poets with beautiful words.

4. We shall not be conquered, Romans, by the evil inhabitants of the free towns.

5. Do (your) enemies have many swords? (Write this sentence twice, first using **habeō**, then using a Dative of the Possessor.)

6. The Romans used to have a great empire. (Write this sentence twice, first using **habeō**, then using a Dative of the Possessor.)

7. The farmers in Italy seem happy, but (their) slaves are wretched. For it is always a bad thing to possess slaves.

8. The wisdom of Horace, a good poet, used to seem great to many (people). Why are you not moved by (his) words, friend?

9. Beautiful gifts are always given by the gods in return for the beautiful deeds of men. For the gods desire men to be good.

10. I was going out from the forum toward the fields and (what's more) I was being seen by (my) enemies.

11. Now, Titus, we are going to the hostile town, but soon we shall fight with the inhabitants by means of words and weapons.

12. Nothing is praised by a good man without deliberation. For the gods give wisdom to good men.

Drill 30 Third- and Fourth-Conjugation Verb Morphology

A. Give the principal parts of the Latin verbs with these English meanings. Do not use abbreviations. Include a blank for any missing principal parts.

1. say, speak, tell ______________________________
2. make, do ______________________________
3. hear, listen (to) ______________________________
4. perceive, feel ______________________________
5. sing ______________________________
6. drive, do ______________________________
7. write ______________________________
8. rule ______________________________
9. take, capture ______________________________
10. put, place ______________________________
11. send ______________________________
12. lead; consider ______________________________
13. come ______________________________
14. manage, conduct ______________________________

B. Fill in the missing principal parts and meanings.

1	2	3	4	Meaning
canō				
			ductus	
				manage
	facere			
		vēnī		
audiō				
				say, tell
		ēgī		
			sēnsus	
	scrībere			

C. Identify each form (give person, number, tense, voice, mood) and translate.

Example: canet **3rd sing. fut. act. indic.; he will sing**

1. agēbam ____________________
2. dūcar ____________________
3. capis ____________________
4. faciēbāmus ____________________
5. veniētis ____________________
6. sentiō ____________________

7. dīcēmus ____________________

8. veniēbant ____________________

9. mittēminī ____________________

10. scrībit ____________________

11. scrībunt ____________________

12. gerēbantur ____________________

13. audītis ____________________

14. dūcēbās ____________________

15. sentiēs ____________________

16. canimus ____________________

17. pōnam ____________________

18. aguntur ____________________

19. regeris ____________________

20. venit ____________________

D. Change singular forms to plural and plural forms to singular.

Example: mittēmus **mittam**

1. dīcitur ____________________

2. agēs ____________________

3. faciēbātis ____________________

4. mittimus ______________________________

5. mittor ______________________________

6. audiēbāmur ______________________________

7. regis ______________________________

8. pōnēminī ______________________________

9. veniunt ______________________________

10. dūcō ______________________________

11. sentīmus ______________________________

12. gerēmus ______________________________

13. mittēbar ______________________________

14. audiēre ______________________________

15. canēbās ______________________________

16. faciam ______________________________

17. dīcuntur ______________________________

18. venīs ______________________________

19. scrībō ______________________________

20. agēbāmus ______________________________

E. 1. Identify the tense and voice of these finite verb forms.
2. Translate.

	Tense and Voice	Translation
1. sentiar		
2. sentiunt		
3. mittentur		
4. mittō		
5. pōnēbāre		
6. pōnit		
7. capiētis		
8. capiunt		
9. canēmus		
10. canitis		
11. agar		
12. agimus		
13. audīmur		
14. audiēbāris		
15. sentiēbāminī		
16. sentiet		
17. facit		

	Tense and Voice	Translation
18. faciēs		
19. scrībitur		
20. scrībētis		
21. venīs		
22. venit		
23. gerētis		
24. gerimus		
25. capiēbāmur		
26. capiēs		
27. dūceris		
28. dūcam		
29. dīcēbam		
30. dīcitis		
31. capit		
32. capiam		
33. regimus		
34. regēre		
35. audior		

	Tense and Voice	Translation
36. audīre		
37. scrībam		
38. scrībētur		
39. mittentur		
40. mittunt		

F. Write in Latin.

1. she was coming
2. they are hearing
3. I shall make
4. you (pl.) sing
5. we used to be heard
6. he will be sent
7. you will be perceived (2)
8. they are coming
9. we capture
10. it will be written
11. you (pl.) were being led
12. I shall put

13. they were hearing

14. you say

15. we shall drive

16. you are being managed (2)

17. they write

18. she used to rule

19. I am sending

20. you will be heard (2)

21. they will come

22. she was perceiving

23. you (pl.) were making

24. we shall be sent

25. I was being driven

26. I am writing

27. she says

28. they will capture

29. we used to sing

30. he conducts (2)

31. you capture

32. you were putting

33. I shall be captured

34. we are perceived

35. they are leading

36. you (pl.) will come

37. he was managing

38. I shall make

39. you will be ruled (2)

40. he was being heard

G. Translate these sentences that contain new third- and fourth-conjugation verbs.

1. Scrībitne poēta bona dē fīliō rēgīnae? Dīcetne pulchra dē rēgīnā?

2. Rōmānī bellum in prōvinciā cum studiō gerent.

3. Sapientiā dūcor, Marce, sed īrā regere. Etenim īram pōnere dēbēs.

4. Incolae oppidī ā malīs in perīculō pōnuntur.

5. In forum veniēs ac verba magnōrum audiēs.

____

____

6. Poēta agrōs laetōs verbīs pulchrīs canēbat. Audiēbant agricolae.

____

____

7. Pecūniam dominī capiam servīsque mittam.

____

____

8. Nauta bonus vītam miseram agit; nam ab īnsulā pulchrā mox mittētur.

____

____

9. Bella in multīs terrīs gerēbāmus atque incolās miserōs capiēbāmus.

____

____

10. Liber pulcher ā poētā bonō cum studiō scrībitur. Mox verba poētae canēmus.

____

____

11. In perīculum ā virīs agēminī, ō puerī, sed puellās ē perīculō dūcam.

____

____

12. Multa bona populō faciētis, ō Gracchī, ac laudābiminī.

H. 1. Identify the tense and voice of these finite verb forms.
2. Translate.

	Tense and Voice	Translation
1. dēbent		
2. agent		
3. vidēmur		
4. pōnēmur		
5. vocāris		
6. capiēris		
7. mōnstrō		
8. faciō		
9. iubēbō		
10. geram		
11. habēbant		
12. agēbant		
13. movēbāmur		
14. veniēbāmus		

	Tense and Voice	Translation
15. estis		
16. erātis		
17. respondēbunt		
18. audient		
19. capitur		
20. errat		
21. amābis		
22. canis		
23. superāminī		
24. faciētis		
25. eram		
26. erō		
27. errābant		
28. capiēbant		
29. errō		
30. scrībō		
31. potestis		
32. poteritis		

	Tense and Voice	Translation
33. dūcētur		
34. habētur		
35. timēs		
36. mittēs		
37. possunt		
38. pōnunt		
39. audīminī		
40. capiminī		
41. geritur		
42. datur		
43. scrībuntur		
44. scrībentur		
45. ībās		
46. īs		
47. īmus		
48. sumus		

I. Write these forms in Latin.

1. 3rd pl. imperf. act. indic. of *possum* ____________________

2. 2nd. sing. fut. pass. indic. of *laudō* ____________________

3. 1st pl. pres. act. indic. of *faciō* ____________________

4. 2nd pl. fut. act. indic. of *mittō* ____________________

5. 3rd sing. imperf. pass. indic. of *habeō* ____________________

6. 1st sing. pres. pass. indic. of *dūcō* ____________________

7. 2nd pl. imperf. pass. indic. of *regō* ____________________

8. 1st pl. fut. act. indic. of *sum* ____________________

9. 3rd sing. pres. pass. indic. of *superō* ____________________

10. 2nd sing. fut. pass. indic. of *teneō* ____________________

11. 3rd pl. pres. act. indic. of *sentiō* ____________________

12. 1st sing. imperf. act. indic. of *veniō* ____________________

13. 2nd sing. fut. act. indic. of *eō* ____________________

14. 1st pl. imperf. pass. indic. of *gerō* ____________________

15. 2nd pl. fut. pass. indic. of *agō* ____________________

16. 3rd sing. pres. pass. indic. of *dīcō* ____________________

17. 1st sing. imperf. act. indic. of *iubeō* ____________________

18. 3rd pl. pres. act. indic. of *amō* ____________________

19. 2nd sing. imperf. pass. indic. of *capiō* ______________________________

20. 3rd sing. fut. pass. indic. of *canō* ______________________________

21. 1st pl. pres. act. indic. of *pōnō* ______________________________

22. 2nd sing. fut. act. indic. of *faciō* ______________________________

23. 1st sing. pres. act. indic. of *audiō* ______________________________

24. 3rd pl. imperf. pass. indic. of *scrībō* ______________________________

Drill 31–33 Synopsis II; Imperatives

A. On a separate sheet provided, write a synopsis for each of the following verbs in the indicated person and number.

1. sing, 3rd pl.
2. hear, 1st pl.
3. capture, 2nd sing.
4. move, 1st sing.
5. put, 2nd pl.
6. perceive, 3rd sing.
7. show, 3rd sing.
8. love, 1st sing.
9. manage, 2nd pl.
10. be, 3rd pl. (no passive)
11. come, 1st pl. (no passive)
12. go, 2nd sing. (no passive)

B. Translate these short sentences with infinitives and imperatives.

1. Serve, fer dōna!

____

2. Virō respondē!

____

3. Age, cane, poēta. Audīte, puellae; nam poēta audīrī dēbet.

____

____

4. Ambulāte, ō puerī, in viam.

____

5. Catilīnam imperiō populī Rōmānī regī iubēbō. Imperiō populī regere, Catilīna.

____

____

6. Fēminīs mōnstrā librōs poētae.

7. Age, vir, dīc dē factīs deōrum.

8. Vidē nunc rēgīnam īnsulae.

9. Dōna dīs dā!

10. Bona age ac bonus habēre.

11. Marcus mittī ad Italiam dēbet. Marce, ī ad Italiam.

12. Cūr in viīs ambulās? Ambulā in agrīs.

13. Ferte arma, ō nautae, ad incolās.

14. Verbīsne poētae movērī potestis? Movēminī, ō Gracchī.

15. Dā pecūniam, ō domine.

16. Et puerō et puellae pecūniam dōnā.

17. Nautae in viā vidērī possunt. Vidēte nautās in viā.

18. Ad oppidum cum fīliō venīte.

19. Dūc in bellum, ō rēgīna, virōs fēmināsque!

20. Īte nunc, ō fīliī, ad bellum ac prō patriā pugnāte.

21. Audī, ō fīlī! Rēgīna īnsulam armīs tenērī iubet.

22. Fac arma ex ferrō, nōn ex aurō.

23. Cōnsilium cape, incola!

24. Agite, capite arma, ō nautae!

25. Audīte, servī, verba dominī!

26. Dūciminī, nautae, bonō cōnsiliō rēgīnae.

C. Write in Latin.

1. The evil men ought to be driven (out) from the land.

2. Come into the forum, Lucius; for Marcus is pleading the case of the wretched farmer.

3. Listen to the good advice of the poets, girls: fear the punishment of the gods.

4. Why were you writing a book about war? Tell, great poet.

5. The sailors ought to be sent to the island. Set sail, sailors.

6. It is good to be loved by the people.

Drill 34–37 Short Sentences and Syntax

Partitive Genitive
Subjective Genitive
Objective Genitive
Ablative of Respect

Translate these short sentences with some regard for good English usage, and from the list above **give the syntax** of the italicized words.

1. Cūr multae *fēminārum* ab īnsulā ībant?

____

____

fēminārum ______________________________

2. Erit bellum propter studium *aurī*.

____

____

aurī ______________________________

3. Virum *sententiīs* magnum audīre dēbēs.

____

____

sententiīs ______________________________

4. Magnum erat odium *populī* in rēgīnam.

____

____

populī ______________________________

5. Bonōs *nautārum* vēla dare iubēbō.

____

____

nautārum ______________________________

6. Rēgīna misera fīliōs *vītā* superābit.

____

____

vītā ______________________________

7. Fīliīs nihil *bonī* dare possum.

____

____

bonī ______________________________

8. Cōgitābāsne *rēgīnae* odium *bellī*?

____

____

rēgīnae ______________________________

bellī ______________________________

9. *Cōnsiliō* bonus ā populō habētur poēta.

____

____

cōnsiliō ______________________________

10. Sine cūrā *filiōrum* ex patriā ībat.

____

____

filiōrum ______________________________________

11. *Puellae* studiō *sapientiae* movēbere.

____

____

puellae ______________________________________

sapientiae ____________________________________

12. Cūr *fāmā* servus dominum superābat?

____

____

fāmā ____

Drill 38–39 Personal Pronouns and Possessive Adjectives

A. Write in Latin.

1. for you ______________________
2. us (d.o.) ______________________
3. of me ______________________
4. with you (pl.) ______________________
5. I ______________________
6. you (d.o.) ______________________
7. with me ______________________
8. of us (2) ______________________
9. you (subj.) ______________________
10. of you ______________________
11. for me ______________________
12. of you (pl.) (2) ______________________
13. we ______________________
14. with us ______________________
15. you (pl.) (subj.) ______________________
16. for you (pl.) ______________________
17. me (d.o.) ______________________
18. you (pl.) (d.o.) ______________________
19. for us ______________________
20. with you ______________________

B. 1. Translate these short sentences.
2. Identify each italicized word as a *personal pronoun,* a *possessive adjective,* or a *demonstrative adjective.*

Example: Fīlia *mea tē* amat. Amāsne *eam*?

1. **My daughter loves you. Do you love her?**
2. mea: **poss. adj.**; tē: **pers. pron.**; eam: **pers. pron.**

1. Servī *nostrī* ā *nōbīs* laudābuntur.

____

____

2. Gladium *eī* dare optō, sed tū *eum* habēs.

3. Amīcus *tuus mē* amat, sed *eum* nōn amō.

4. *Eōs* inimīcōs timēmus. Possunt enim *nōs* superāre.

5. Cōgitāsne verba *eius*? Respondē *mihi*.

6. Cūr fīlia *meī* amīcī ad *mē* ambulat?

7. *Eī* fēminae erat magna cūra *meī* ac *meōrum*.

8. *Id eās*, nōn *nōs*, movēbit.

9. *Tibi* est multa sapientia. *Tēcum* ambulāre optō.

10. Gladiōsne vidēs, *mī* Spurī? Fīliī *nostrī ea* arma tenēbunt.

11. *Nostrī* cum *vestrīs* pugnābant.

12. Erant multī *vestrum* in forō.

13. *Eīs* erat odium *nostrī*.

14. Rēgīna *vestra nōs* pugnāre iubet. Propter *id* bellum labōrābunt multī.

15. Magna est *mea* cūra *tuī*.

16. *Iī nōbīs*cum ad oppidum ībunt.

17. *Tū* sapientiam *eius* virī laudāre dēbēs.

18. Cōnsiliane *eōrum* vidēbantur *vōbīs* bona?

19. *Ego tuum* librum optō. *Tūne meum?*

20. Dōnane *eīs* dīs dabās? *Ego* nihil dabam.

21. *Ea tē*cum ad *tuōs* ībit.

22. Odium *meī* habēs? *Ego tē* amō.

23. *Tuum* est aurum?

24. Optāsne *mēcum* īre ad patriam *eōrum?*

25. *Nostrī, mī* fīlī, in bellō pugnant prō *tē* ac *tuīs.*

26. *Egone tibi* miser videor?

C. Write *only* the italicized words in Latin.

Example: *We* saw *her* and *her* friend.
Nōs eam eius

1. Should *I* carry *your* books, *my* Marcus, or should I give *them to you*?

2. *Those* sailors will set sail away from *our* island.

3. Do *you* have *his* money? He wants *it.*

4. Many *of us* fear *that* queen and *her* sons.

5. The son of *my* friend wants to go for a walk *with me*, but I hate *him*.

6. *She* has a fear *of me* and of *my* friends.

7. The citizens will give *you* gifts and will praise *your* deeds on behalf of *our* homeland.

8. On account of *that* war in *your* province, allies, the brave ones *of you* will have to fight.

9. *Those* girls are always borrowing *our* books. *We* ought to praise *their* zeal.

10. Great is Marcus's hatred *of us*. Tell *me*: is anyone dear *to him*?

11. The words of *your* friends were heard *by me* and *my men*.

12. *They (masc.)* went *with us* to *his* house.

13. *To that* man there was a hatred *of you*, girls, and he did not like *your* friends.

14. *Our* sailors were setting sail away from *your* island. Did *you* see *them*?

____

15. *He* took *my* weapons, but *that* woman ordered *him* to give *them* back *to me.*

____

16. *I* have *their (masc.)* swords, and *they (masc.)* have *my* gold.

____

17. Why did *you* come *with us,* boys? Answer *me*!

____

18. *Our men* were fighting in *that* war.

____

19. *To him* and *to me* there is a great love *of you (pl.).*

____

20. Many *of you* admire *us* on account of *our* diligence.

____

Exercises, CHAPTER IV

A. Translate these sentences.

1. Venī mēcum ad forum.

   Eōs ē forō mitte.

   Dūc amīcōs per forum.

   In forum ī cum eā puellā.

2. Fer nōbīs auxilium, ō puer.

   Auxilia nostra ad sociōs mittite, Rōmānī.

   Nōbīscum, virī, in bellum dūciminī.

3. Tibine est pecūnia, Sexte?

Eīs est multum aurum.

Multī eōrum aurum dant.

Dā mihi eius pecūniam.

4. Multī vestrum pecūniam, paucī quidem sapientiam optant.

5. Sententiīs clārus erat Pompeius, sed nōn factīs.

6. Vōs cum sociīs vestrīs iubeō incolās inimīcōs prōvinciae superāre. Cūr moram facitis? Pulchrum quidem est magnā glōriā superāre.

7. Tū quidem vītam bonam agis sine cūrīs, mī Lūcī. Ego semper dē pecūniā labōrō.

8. Age, dīc, mī fīlī. Audīsne verba nōn laeta dominī? Nihil bonī dīcit. Dominō enim est odium tuī.

9. Equidem arma capimus in Rōmānōs. Nam bonum est prō patriā nostrā pugnāre. Etenim cupidī sumus glōriae.

10. Clāra quidem est sententia L. Cornēlī Sullae. Magnam enim īram in altō animō sentit, sed eam cum cūrā regit.

11. Nauta bonus ā dīs ad patriam Italiam nōn sine causā dūcēbātur.

12. Fer auxilium, Tīte, ad eās miserās. Eīs enim auxilium dare dēbēs.

13. Tū propter studium bellī mittēre in prōvinciam cum auxiliīs. Etenim amīcus cum amīcō, causa cum causā pugnābit.

14. Dīcit rēgīna, "Ō nautae (nam amīcī estis populī Rōmānī), īte sine morā ē prōvinciā atque vēla in altum date! Movēminī magnō bellī perīculō!"

15. Līber sententiam dē cōnsiliīs Gracchōrum dīcet. Nam līberī sententiās sine cūrā dīcere possunt neque invidiam populī timent.

16. Tēne et tuōs, Quinte, ad sententiam sociōrum dūcere poterō? Etenim populus ā mē dūcī poterat.

17. Fīliam parvam vōbīscum, puerī, mittam in forum. Verba enim poētae magnī audīre optat. Et vōs verba eius?

18. Poēta magna facta deōrum canet atque audient virī fēminaeque. Et virōrum facta cum glōriā canēs, poēta noster; nam ā dīs movēbere.

19. Nautae dīcunt, "Cape cōnsilium, ō rēgīna, dē bellō in prōvinciīs."
Respondet rēgīna, "Pōnite arma, ō nautae validī. Neque enim in Italiā erit bellum neque in prōvinciīs."

20. Magnam īram deōrum nunc nōn timeō; namque clārum est caelum.

21. Liber magnus, dōnum poētae clārī, ad amīcum in oppidō parvō ā nōbīs mittētur.

22. Magnō studiō agricola agrōs, nauta altum laudat.

23. Rōmānī ad sociōs multum auxilium mittēbant; nam eōs quidem armīs superābant.

24. Cūr multī vestrum ā rēgīnā iubēbantur arma sine morā pōnere?

25. Nīl dīcō dē morā servōrum, nīl bonī dīcere possum, sed poenās dabunt et mox labōrābunt.

26. Propter invidiam multa mala dīcēbam in eum amīcum. Mihi enim erat magna īra.

27. Invidiam Iūliae sentīte, ō puellae, sed eius sapientiam laudāte. Nihil enim malum dē rēgīnae fīliā dīcī potest.

28. Servīs in agrō moram faciēbās. Iī nē labōrāre quidem poterant.

29. Nīl quidem dīcent dominī, nīl facient prō servīs, sed sapientia est multa et bona prō miserīs agere.

30. Rege, ō Līvia, animōs. Nam fēmina animō valida nōn īrā regī sed sapientiā dēbet.

31. Tibi est odium meī. Ego equidem inimīcum tē habeō. Cūr amīcī esse nōn possumus?

32. Nōn sine cōnsiliō id bellum per sociōs in Italiā gerī poterat.

33. Ad prōvinciam nostram Rōmānī arma, sociī eōrum aurum mittunt.

34. Nē paucae quidem fēminārum īre ad Italiam nōbīscum poterant.

35. Rēgīna bona vestram patriam regit regetque. Namque ea fēmina laeta ā populō cum studiō amātur.

36. Magnam prō mē cūram geris, mī Quinte; magna prō tē faciam.

37. Poēta librum dē animā scrībit; nōs quidem multōs scrībēmus.

38. Tē propter tuam cūram nostrī semper amābimus. Tū ā nōbīs multīs dōnīs dōnābere.

39. Date, dī in caelō, bonum cōnsilium atque auxilium. Terra enim propter bellum labōrat nec paucī in perīculō pōnuntur.

____

____

40. Cūr cum iīs fēminīs ad Italiam venīre nōn optātis? Agite, ō puellae, venīte!

____

____

41. Miser erit vir aurī cupidus. Nihil est vīta sine studiō bonōrum. Etenim multum studium pōnī in cūrā animae dēbet.

____

____

42. Equidem arma pōnere virōs iubēbam. Nec mora; ea pōnēbant.

____

____

43. "Nihil dīs dēbeō," dīcit puer.
Puerō dīcō, "Errās. Nam animam dēbēs."

____

____

44. Servī sine morā ad eōs agrōs laetōs veniunt. Namque cum agricolīs mox labōrābunt.

____

____

45. Dī in caelō, nē perīculum quidem rēgīnae nostrae sentītis? Nautae atque incolae, ferte rēgīnae miserae auxilium.

46. Servus tuus nīl dīcēbat, sed vītam cōgitābat. Studium eius per tē laudābātur.

47. Tibi est animus sapientiā validus, mī Lūcī. Paucī bonī tē cōnsiliō superant.

48. Poēta et canere et virōs verbīs movēre potest.

49. Validōs dūcētis ad bellum sine armīs? Gladiōs ferte!

50. Ego equidem vītam agere sine cōnsiliō neque optō nec possum.

51. Sapientia poētārum animam animumque regere dēbet. Sentīsne, mī Marce, sapientiam eōrum?

52. Iī servī ex agrō ab agricolā vocantur, sed verba eius nōn audiunt.

____

____

53. Bellum nunc in viīs oppidī nostrī ab incolīs inimīcīs geritur. Dūc, Marce, nōs nostrōsque ē perīculō.

____

____

54. Multīs quidem verbīs causam in forō prō amīcīs agam et sententiās multōrum superābō. Nē invidiam quidem populī timēbō.

____

____

55. Cūr bellum atque arma ā vōbīs cōgitantur? Sapientiam, ō sociī, optāre dēbētis. Nam ea est dōnum deōrum.

____

____

56. Multī nostrum rēgīnae odium bellī sentiunt, sed eam ad sententiam nostram dūcēs. Id bonum per tē agī poterit.

____

____

57. Cōnsilium dē eō bellō cape, mī fīlī. Auxiliane ad sociōs in prōvinciīs tēcum mittentur? Meā quidem sententiā, nostrī cum glōriā bellum gerent.

____

____

____

58. C. Gracchus semper bona prō populō et dīcēbat et faciēbat; nē perīculīs quidem invidiae movēbātur.

59. Vidētur ā nautīs laetīs terra ex altō. Eōsne per altum ad terram dī dūcent?

60. Nauta ex altō ad Italiam veniet. Nam ā dīs bonīs dūcitur.

61. Cupidus glōriae atque aurī nauta clārus vēla dare cum studiō optat, sed eī causās morae faciam. Multa enim in altō sunt perīcula.

62. Vir puellās cōnsiliō superat. Eīs enim est nihil cōnsilī.

63. Meus amīcus librum dē causīs bellī scrībit. Multōs, meā sententiā, librōs scrībere dēbet. Namque magnum malum et virīs et fēminīs semper est bellum.

64. Poēta dīcit, "Deōs in caelō canam ac per mē facta clāra deōrum." Eī est pulchrum cōnsilium.

65. Multa mala facta tuus amīcus facit, Marce Līcinī. Causam eius prō populō Rōmānō agere mox dēbēbis.

66. Tū quidem propter paucōrum odium atque invidiam sociōs in bellum dūcere nōn poterās.

67. Poēta clāra Rōmānōrum facta canēbat atque eum in forō audiēbāmus. Canitur nunc fāma eōrum per terrās.

68. Rēgīna nostra, glōriae fāmaeque cupida, virōs vestrōs, ō fēminae īnsulae, arma capere et bellum facere mox iubēbit.

69. Dī magnī et in caelō imperium tenent et in terrā. Namque dī virōs fēmināsque sapientiā superant.

70. Nōn sine poenā arma ex aurō faciēs. Dēbēs enim ea ex ferrō facere.

71. Equidem per altum ā dīs inimīcīs agēbāmur atque per multās terrās errābāmus.

72. Marcus Crassus, vir bellō quidem clārus, in forō sententiam cum studiō dīcēbat nec īram populī timēbat.

73. Tē propter studium malōrum virum bonum nōn habēmus. Cupidus sapientiae esse dēbēs.

74. Timent incolae neque īre in bellum optant. Paucīs dīcit rēgīna verbīs, “Nōn sine causā vōs et vestrōs poenās dare iubēbō, ō malī incolae.”

B. Write in Latin with some attention to good Latin word order.

1. The women desirous of gold were speaking about the fame and glory of the queen. They were praising her with enthusiasm.

2. I shall say a few things about this war: many auxiliary troops and much money will have to be sent by us to the Romans in that province.

3. Good slave, go into the field and listen very diligently to the words of the master. Be led by his advice.

4. Marcus Antonius, will not even your words about the causes of war be heard by the people?

5. It is a beautiful thing indeed to surpass many men in the glory of war.

6. Writing beautiful words is a good thing, Horace. Sing of the famous deeds of our men.

7. Marcus, famous in respect to words, is pleading the case of our allies in front of the Roman people.

8. You are indeed desirous of great glory, boy, but there are many dangers in the deep sea. Set sail carefully.

9. The mind of my friend is certainly ruled by hatred. Gods in the sky, grant him wisdom.

10. Come with us, my son, through the streets to the forum and bring many swords. For through arms the evil men will be able to be overcome.

11. Set aside hatred and envy, Romans. In my opinion, at least, you ought to think about the concerns of the people.

12. I, at least, was being led by your comrades, my Titus, but few of my men were going with us.

13. Come on, Marcus, lead the men desirous of authority into the forum and tell them the plans of Antony concerning war.

14. To be feared by the people is a bad thing for our queen.

____

____

Drill 40–42 Verb Morphology: Perfect Active Indicative System

A. On a separate sheet provided, write a synopsis for each of the following verbs in the indicated person and number.

1. amō, 3rd pl.
2. videō, 2nd sing.
3. habeō, 1st pl.
4. audiō, 1st sing.
5. pōnō, 2nd pl.
6. mittō, 3rd sing.
7. sum, 3rd sing. (no imperatives)
8. capiō, 2nd pl.
9. veniō, 1st sing.
10. possum, 1st pl. (no imperatives)
11. eō, 2nd sing.
12. superō, 3rd pl.

B. 1. Identify the tense of these active finite verb forms.
2. Translate.

	Tense	Translation
1. cēperās		
2. vēnēre		
3. mōverō		
4. audīveritis		
5. mōnstrāvit		
6. cecinerant		
7. mīsistī		
8. fuerimus		
9. ierit		
10. potueram		

	Tense	Translation
11. posueram		
12. cēpimus		
13. sēnserit		
14. amāvī		
15. timuēre		
16. vēnerat		
17. dederint		
18. dīxerāmus		
19. gessī		
20. respondistis		

C. Name the tense and write in Latin.

	Tense	Translation
1. I shall have worked		
2. we had been		
3. she has seen		
4. you (pl.) erred		
5. they had led		
6. he will have made		

	Tense	Translation
7. you rewarded		
8. I had called		
9. we have gone (3)		
10. they will have driven		
11. she has been able		
12. you (pl.) sang		
13. he has heard		
14. I had sent		
15. we have been		
16. you went (2)		
17. we shall have ordered		
18. they had been able		
19. I have called		
20. she has written		

D. Translate these sentences.

1. Arma pōnere virōs iussī. Ea posuēre.

____

____

2. Rōmānī imperī quidem cupidī multās terrās superāvērunt ac rēxērunt.

3. Cūr cum studiō causam Marcī Antōnī ēgistī? Nam is vir multa mala propter odium populī Rōmānī fēcerat.

4. Rēgīna nostra poētam clārum propter verba pulchra in forō mox laudāverit.

5. Ad eōs virōs dōna aurī mittēbantur. Bellum enim prō patriā gesserant.

6. Fīlius deae fuit Aenēās atque ad Italiam populum per altum dūxit.

7. Vīdistīne servōs in agrīs agricolārum? Nam eōs ex oppidō mīseram.

8. Ea fēmina glōriam propter dīligentiam cēpit. Mox eam poēta noster cecinerit.

9. Librumne dē animīs poētārum scrīpsistī? Dā mihi eum sine morā!

10. Dē eō bellō cum cūrā cōgitāvit et nunc pugnāre optat.

11. Vītam bonam in īnsulā ēgerāmus, sed propter perīculum bellī ad prōvinciam vēnimus.

12. Audīte, virī fēminaeque, verba rēgīnae: "Vestrī fīliī in prōvinciā cum sociīs incolās inimīcōs superāre potuēre. Laudārī magnō studiō ā vōbīs dēbent."

E. Write in Latin.

1. The Roman poet sang of the deeds of the gods, and we rewarded him with much gold.

2. You will be led into war, Lucius, and soon you will have shown both diligence and zeal.

3. The strong queen had ordered our sons to go to the province, and she led them through many dangers on the deep sea.

4. That woman praised the girls. For she had heard their words about the wisdom of the gods.

5. Did you (pl.) perceive the people's hatred of war?

6. You called my sons to the forum, but you erred; for I had sent them away from the town.

F. 1. Identify the tense of each form.
2. Translate.

	Tense	Translation
1. dōnāvimus		
2. dōnāmus		
3. gesseram		
4. geram		
5. iubēbitis		

	Tense	Translation
6. iussistis		
7. dūcit		
8. dūxit		
9. erāmus		
10. fuerāmus		
11. scrībunt		
12. scrīpsērunt		
13. respondet		
14. respondit		
15. agis		
16. ēgeris		
17. poterō		
18. potuerō		
19. ambulāveram		
20. ambulāverint		
21. cōgitās		
22. cōgitāvistī		
23. habēbam		

	Tense	Translation
24. habuī		
25. sentient		
26. sēnsēre		
27. ierat		
28. ībat		
29. dīcimus		
30. dīximus		
31. pōnit		
32. posuit		
33. audīs		
34. audīvistī		
35. fēceram		
36. fēcerō		
37. labōrābātis		
38. labōrāveritis		
39. poterant		
40. potuerant		
41. venit		

	Tense	Translation
42. vēnit		
43. dabās		
44. dedistī		
45. capiunt		
46. capient		
47. cēpērunt		
48. mōvit		
49. movet		
50. movēbat		
51. it		
52. īt		
53. iit		
54. fuēre		
55. fuērunt		
56. fuerint		

G. Name the tense and write in Latin.

	Tense	Translation
1. I have granted		
2. you are putting		
3. we shall have shown		
4. he had seen		
5. she moved		
6. they are coming		
7. you (pl.) had led		
8. I was singing		
9. they will have come		
10. you (pl.) sent		
11. I used to go		
12. we have heard		
13. she sang		
14. he has ruled		
15. she loves		
16. you had sent		
17. we shall conquer		

	Tense	Translation
18. you (pl.) will owe		
19. they have been		
20. we thought		
21. they will have heard		
22. I am able		
23. she was working		
24. I shall have said		
25. he drove		
26. you were (past simple)		
27. we had written		
28. I called		
29. they have gone		
30. you (pl.) had told		
31. we were able (progressive)		
32. she has written		
33. he was answering		
34. you will have seen		

	Tense	Translation
35. they will order	______	______
36. I was fighting	______	______
37. you will have driven	______	______
38. he had feared	______	______
39. they will have been able	______	______
40. we shall be	______	______

Drill 43 The Irregular Third-Conjugation Verb *ferō*

A. 1. On a separate sheet provided, write a synopsis of **ferō** in the third person singular.
   2. Translate the following forms.

1. fert ______________________

2. tulit ______________________

3. ferre (3) ______________________

4. fer ______________________

5. feram ______________________

6. tulerint ______________________

7. fers ______________________

8. ferēs ______________________

9. ferunt ______________________

10. tulistī ______________________

11. feruntur ______________________

12. ferris ______________________

13. ferēbantur ______________________

14. tulerās ______________________

15. tulēre ______________________

16. ferrī ______________________

17. fertur
18. feret

19. ferētur
20. ferimur

B. Translate these sentences containing forms of **ferō.**

1. Tulistīne arma? Nōs nē gladiōs quidem habēmus.

2. Ea perīcula bellī ā tē ferrī nōn poterunt.

3. Fer auxilium! Nam multa mala ferimus.

4. Bonī ā nōbīs laudābantur; dōna enim ac pecūniam tulerant.

5. Marcus odium multōrum fert atque inimīcus ā multīs habētur.

6. Auxiliumne ad sociōs fers?

7. Laetī erant incolae prōvinciae. Nam et ferrum eīs tulerāmus et aurum.

8. Fāma poētae in multās terrās ferētur.

C. Write in Latin.

1. Are you (pl.) bringing books for the boys? I shall bring gold.

2. We had endured the ill-will of the people, and we were going out from the forum.

3. Soon the Romans will have brought aid to the allies, now wretched in soul and mind.

4. Bring arms, men. For we are being carried toward war.

Drill 44–46 Reflexive Pronouns, Reflexive-Possessive Adjectives, and *ipse, ipsa, ipsum*

A. 1. Translate these short sentences.

2. Identify each italicized word as a *personal pronoun, possessive adjective, reflexive pronoun, reflexive-possessive adjective, or intensive adjective.*

1. Puella *sē* videt. Puer *sē* videt. *Sē* vident.

____

____

2. *Ipsa eum* in oppidō vidēbam.

____

____

3. Fīlius *noster nōbī*scum ad oppidum it.

____

____

4. Fēmina *suam* patriam amat. Fēminae *suam* patriam amant.

____

____

5. Poēta *sē*cum multa cōgitābat.

____

____

6. Cūr fēminae *sibi ipsīs* multa dīcēbant?

____

____

7. Amīcum *eius* amō. Amāsne *meum*?

____

____

8. Cūr poēta miser magnum odium *suī* habēbat?

____

____

9. *Nostra* capit. *Nostra* capimus.

____

____

10. Pecūniam ad *meōs* mittere optō.

____

____

11. Rēgīna *suum* fīlium ad bellum mittēbat. Rēgīna fīlium *eius* ad bellum mittēbat.

____

____

12. Puella *tibi* dōnum dabit.

____

____

13. Puella *sibi* dōnum dabit. Puella *eī* dōnum dabit.

14. In agrōs *eius* eō. In agrum *eōrum* īmus.

15. In agrōs *tuōs* it. *Ipse* in agrōs *tuōs* īs.

16. In agrōs *suōs* it. In agrōs *eōrum* it.

17. Patriam *nostram* amāmus.

18. Fēmina cum *suīs* ambulābat.

19. Prō *mē ipsō* pugnō, nōn prō *vōbīs* et *vestrīs.*

20. *Tūne tibi ipsī* aurum tenēs? Iubēsne aurum ā *mē* tenērī?

B. Write *only* the italicized words in Latin.

Example: *Your* daughter ran away because of hatred *of you.*

tua, tuī

1. *I (m.) myself* was thinking *with myself* about many things.

2. *He* came to live in *my* homeland.

3. *They (f.)* were planning treachery *for both you and me.*

4. Even the allies *themselves* abandoned *their own* town.

5. I saw *them (m.)* in *our* town.

6. The poet was singing *his own* words, not *yours.*

7. The queen has ordered *you (pl.)* to depart from the *very* province.

8. We called the island *our* homeland.

9. Many *of us* want to go *with you.*

10. *Your* care *of me* makes *me* very happy.

11. *We* were praising *his* courage.

12. The Romans fought *on behalf of themselves* and *their own* (allies).

13. Why was there great hatred *of us* in *your* province?

14. She kept the money *for her very self* and did not give *it to them.*

15. The girls *themselves* will come *with you (pl.)* to *my* fields.

16. He loves *himself.* We hate *him.*

17. *She* has a hatred *of herself,* but *she* loves *her own* people.

18. *You* ought to plead the case *on behalf of your very self,* Marcus.

19. *I* have *my own* opinion, and *he* has *his.*

20. *We (f.) ourselves* were telling *them* about *those* dangers.

21. The men in *our* town rule *themselves* well with *their own* minds.

22. The queen is sending the farmers *themselves* away from *her* land.

23. *They (m.)* have given the book *to you*, but *you* are not reading *it.*

24. The girls in *your (pl.)* homeland fear *for their very selves.*

25. *I* am carrying *my* books, but *you* took *her* books *for yourself.*

26. *She* placed *herself* and *her own* son in danger.

27. *I (m.) myself* desire to fight with *your* sword, not with *my own.*

28. *We* shall send aid to the allies *themselves*; for *they* cannot fight with *their own* weapons.

29. The queen of *your* land, inhabitants, said friendly things *to us ourselves.*

____

30. The man fears war *itself,* but *he* will fight *on behalf of himself* and *his own men.*

____

Drill 47 Adverbs I

A. Give the corresponding adverbs, regular or irregular, for these first-second-declension adjectives and translate.

Example: clārus, clāra, clārum **clārē** **brightly**

1. miser, misera, miserum ______________________
2. bonus, bona, bonum ______________________
3. pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum ______________________
4. malus, mala, malum ______________________
5. altus, alta, altum ______________________
6. multus, multa, multum ______________________
7. līber, lībera, līberum ______________________
8. validus, valida, validum (2) ______________________

____

B. Translate these sentences containing adverbs.

1. Rēgīna fīliās suās ad sē vocāvit; nam eās multum amābat.

____

____

2. Vir fātum suum miserē ferre dēbet. Mihi ipsī est fātum dūrum.

____

____

3. Ipsī ā patriā nostrā īvimus atque ad īnsulam tuam laetī vēla dabāmus.

____

____

4. Bene cecinit poēta verba sua, male mea.

____

____

5. Dīs ipsīs dōna pia piē dōnābam.

____

____

6. Vōs in perīculō male pōnitis, servī, sed vōbīs ipse auxilium feram.

____

____

7. Incola miser sēsē ac suōs nōn amābat. Multum errābat.

____

____

8. Līberē dīcam: puellam dūram valdē amō. Nōn mē amat, sed sē ipsam.

____

____

Drill 48 Subordinate Clauses I

A. For each of the following English sentences:

1. Underline the main clause once and the subordinate clause twice.
2. Name the kind of subordinate clause (temporal, causal, comparative, concessive, or conditional).
3. Add any necessary commas.

Example: I read the book after I saw the movie.

I read the book after I saw the movie. (temporal)

1. I took an umbrella because it was raining.

2. After he read the weather report he looked for his umbrella.

3. When she asked me that question I didn't know what to say.

4. I like you although you don't like me.

5. So now I shall help you as you used to help me.

6. He started driving more carefully after he had an accident.

7. If you give me some money I'll buy lunch.

8. As the leaders advise, so the soldiers do.

9. Although vegetables are good for us we don't eat enough of them.

10. Since they are blocking the exit you will have to wait.

11. He climbed up on a chair when he saw a mouse.

12. Because we couldn't hear we moved closer to the stage.

13. The child cries if his diaper is wet.

14. I'm not going to give him a gift since he didn't give me one.

15. We shall do as you say.

B. 1. Translate these sentences containing subordinate clauses.
2. Name the type of subordinate clause (temporal, causal, comparative, or concessive).

Example: Ubi fīliī nostrī ad bellum iērunt, timuimus.

1. **When our sons went to war, we were afraid.**
2. **temporal**

1. Ut poēta in forum vēnit, verba eius audīre optābam.

2. Vir tuus poenās dabit quoniam populō multa et mala fēcit.

3. Ut virī agunt, sīc puerī.

4. Etsī magna erit invidia, tamen ego populum cum studiō regam.

5. Nihil dōnāre possum quamquam meam pecūniam optās.

6. Sīc arma capiēmus ut iubēbis, ō rēgīna.

7. Respondēbimus ubi verbum dīxeris.

8. Quoniam mala verba dīcēbās, nōn audiēbam.

9. Nautae, quamquam perīculum timent, vēla dabunt.

10. Rōmānī incolās, postquam superāvērunt, imperiō rēxērunt.

11. Ut invidia populī est, sīc eam sentīs.

12. Quamquam bellum ā multīs gerēbātur, tamen oppidum capī nōn poterat.

13. Puer, postquam eam vīdit, amāvit.

14. Etsī servī magnā dīligentiā labōrāre dēbent, nīl tamen agunt.

15. Ubi in agrōs vēnimus, servōs vocāvimus.

16. Mihi erat magnum perīculum ut inimīcī meī in forum vēnēre.

17. Nīl dīcō quoniam verbīs movērī nōn potes.

18. Sīc scrībet poēta ut optābit populus.

Drill 49 Conditional Sentences I

1. Name the type of conditional sentence.
2. Translate Latin sentences into English, English sentences into Latin.
3. Give the syntax of the italicized verbs. (The syntax of a verb comprises tense, mood, and reason for tense and mood.)

Example: Sī meam pecūniam *capiēs,* poenās dabis.

1. **future more vivid (FMV)**
2. **If you take my money, you will pay the penalty.**
3. **future indicative in the protasis of a future more vivid conditional sentence**

1. Sī puellam vocās, ea sine morā *venit.*

____

____

____

2. Sī in īnsulā *erāmus,* incolās timēbāmus.

____

____

____

3. Paucī nautārum, sī vēla *dederint,* ad nostram terram venient.

____

____

____

4. Sī arma in nostrō oppidō timēbis, agricola, *ī* ad agrōs.

5. Fēminās nōn laudō nisi bona *faciunt.*

6. Clāra erit sī librum magnum *scrībet.*

7. Sī poēta pulchra cecinerit, ā populō laudābitur.

8. Sī nautae in prōvinciam ā rēgīnā dūcentur, cum eīs magnō studiō pugnābimus.

9. Sī vēla dedimus ad īnsulam, erāmus laetī.

10. Timēbimus multum nisi tū, Marce, nōs dūxeris.

11. If there are gods in the sky, they see the deeds of men and women.

12. The inhabitants will not be able to be conquered unless the queen sends weapons. (Write the protasis in two different and equally correct ways.)

13. If bad men rule the land, the inhabitants will be miserable. (Write the protasis in two different and equally correct ways.)

14. If the queen rules the people well, she will be praised by the poets.

15. We shall send auxiliary troops if the allies wage war in the province.

16. Go to the fields without delay, slaves, if I order you to work.

17. I always listened if the poet sang.

18. If I am not able to fight, give my sword to (my) son.

19. If the girls sing, the boys listen.

20. Take up arms, men, if you are ordered to go into war.

Exercises, Chapter V

A. Translate.

1. Postquam librum dē amīcitiā perfēcī, eum meō amīcō sine morā dedī.

   Nisi librum dē amīcitiā perfēcerō, magnam mihi invidiam movēbō.

2. Nautae, sī perīcula sentiunt, ab īnsulā discēdunt.

   Nautae, ubi perīcula sēnsērunt, sē ex oppidō tulērunt.

3. Incolae īnsulae misera nautārum fāta ā rēgīnā accēpēre: impiī eōs interfēcerant.

4. Dīxit dominus, “Iubeō dōna prō mē ferrī ad rēgīnam nostram.”
   “Ut dīcēs, sīc faciam,” servus dominō suō piē dīxit.

5. Līviamne vīdistī, Iūlia? Dīc mihi: Ubi ea nunc est? Ubi ad nōs veniet?

6. Etsī fīlius Antōnī ad īnsulam nōn vēnerat, veniēbat fīlia.

7. Ipsī discesserāmus ē prōvinciā et ad oppidum nostrum laetī accēdēbāmus.

8. Nōn aurum sed ferrum est dūrum, ut mihi quidem vidētur.

9. Gnaeus, nisi suōs bene dūcet, in ipsō proeliō cum suīs interficiētur.

10. Meōs in bellum per mē sine auxiliō dūcam. Ībit ad caelum fāma factōrum meōrum.

11. Quoniam Rōmānī magna in prōvinciā per sē ipsōs gesserant, sociī auxilia nōn mīsēre.

12. Marcus mē male ōdit, sed multam suī cūram habet. Nōn amīcum sed sē ipsum amat.

13. Ubi tē in proeliō vīdī, arma nōn gerēbās; sed tū, sī ambulāre potuistī, et potuistī gladium tenēre.

14. Tē propter tuam piam cūram nostrī semper amābimus, semper laudābimus.

15. Ubi bona deōrum cecinistis, poētae, bene fēcistis; ubi mala, male.

16. Ubi īnsulās cēperimus, incolās piōs verbīs, impiōs armīs superābimus.

17. Fēmina clāra, postquam fāta deum pulchrē cecinit, dōna ab incolīs accēpit abiitque ex oppidō.

18. Cūr multum errābat per terrās pius Aenēās? Sīc eī fātum fuerat, ut vidētur, ad Italiam venīre.

19. Fuērunt in Italiā oppida clāra atque incolae clārī.

20. Impiī et nōbīs ipsīs vidēmur nisi piē et facimus et dīcimus et cōgitāmus.

21. Vir pius fātum patriae multum cōgitat. Populum bene dūcet, ut nōbīs quidem vidētur.

22. Sī causam tuōrum in forō bene agēs, mī Tīte, multōs glōriā superābis.

23. Tuus amīcus bene sē gessit prō miserīs. Mox fāma eius ferētur per terrās. Bonum est ā multīs laudārī.

24. Sī fātum tibi est ex terrā nostrā cēdere, abī sine morā. Age, movē tē.

25. Fēminae sē in perīculō pōnent sī cum virīs ē suā patriā īverint. Etenim paucae redīre poterunt.

26. Marcus, sī multōs in proeliō interfēcit, magnam sibi glōriam cēpit.

27. Fēminae laetae ā nautīs pecūniam, amīcitiam ab incolīs accēperant.

28. Tū, sī nauta esse validē optābās, nōn in terrā erās, sed in altō semper.

29. Sī ē vītā mox cesserit rēgīna imperiumque accēperō, populum bene cum fīliīs regam.

30. Rēgīna suum populum bene regere nōn poterit; nam sē ipsam regere nōn potest.

31. Ut dōnās, sīc accipis. Dōna bona ad bonōs redeunt. Mea verba mementō, mī fīlī.

32. Meminī, amīce, ubi mihi multum ac male errāre vidēbāre, sed nunc clārē cōgitās.

33. "Ferrōne servus miser ē vītā cessit?"
"Est ut dominus ipse dīxit: Fīlium suum, mox sē ipsum interfēcit. Sīc erat in fātīs."

34. "Magnum, ut accēpī, est proelium in agrīs ac dūrum," dīxit Tītus.
"Semper in proeliīs mala sunt fāta virōrum," Spurius respondit.
Ipse dīxī, "Cūr virī cum virīs pugnant? Ubi dēbēbimus in bellum nōs ferre? Ubi redībimus?"

35. Ut virī arma ferre possunt, sīc puerī. Pugnant puerī quoniam virī pugnant. Fēminae quidem bellum atque arma et timent et ōdērunt.

____

____

____

36. "Ut ab oppidō nostrō discēdētis, meī fīliī, ferte vōbīscum meōs librōs dē amīcitiā." Sīc dīxit Gaius, sed iī verba eius nōn meminerant. Sine eīs librīs abiēre.

____

____

____

37. "Sum pius Aenēās fātīsque feror," rēgīnae dīxit. "Ē meā patriā ad terram tuam vēnī per altum. Sine inimīcitiīs ā tē accipī valdē optō."

____

____

____

38. Tuus fīlius ē bellō nōn rediit. Etenim vītam prō patriā dederat. Nunc pius nōn ā paucīs habērī dēbet. Semper eius facta meminerimus.

____

____

____

39. Etsī pius vidērī ipse optābam, impiē tamen multa in deōs faciēbam. Etenim sī dī nostra pia facta vident, et impia vident.

____

____

40. Puellam animō dūram mēcum cōgitābam: Eam, etsī multum amō, ōdī. Ōdī et amō.

41. Cūr agricolae eius terrae in amīcitiam populī Rōmānī vēnēre postquam agrōs eōrum ipsōrum bellō et armīs cēpimus?

42. Nautae discēdere ex īnsulā dēbent quoniam nihil prō incolīs per sē agunt, nihil eīs dant, nihil ab eīs accipiunt.

43. Vir bonus, sī bona perficiet, ā dīs amābitur. Mox in caelō accipiētur.

44. Rēgīna in forum vēnit populōque paucīs verbīs dīxit: "Accipite ā mē, ō incolae, dūrum proelium ac dūra fāta vestrōrum."

45. Postquam Ti. Semprōnius pia verba pulchrē dīxit, agricolae ā forō discessēre atque ad suōs agrōs laetī rediēre.

46. Ego, quamquam terrās regere cum rēgīnā valdē optābam, nōn tamen potuī. Fīlius enim rēgīnae mē ōderat atque agī ex terrā iussit. Ad īnsulam pulchram abiī neque ad eam terram redībō.

47. Multum labōrās, ō Rōmule, quoniam multa bona perficere optās. Bonam vītam et pulchram—nisi dī tē ōderint—magnā cum glōriā perficiēs.

48. Nōs inimīcitiās cum incolīs prōvinciae malīs habēmus quoniam eī sine causā nostrōs male interfēcēre. Semper eōs ōderimus.

49. Ut in forō verba poētae piī audīvī, causās bellī mēcum cōgitābam. Semper, meā quidem sententiā, virī virōs interficient.

50. Quamquam noster fīlius multa in vītā bene perfēcit, miserē tamen ad sua fāta abiit.

51. Puella puerum habēbit amīcum sī ab eō ē perīculō dūcī poterit. Etenim eīs erit magna amīcitia.

52. Male fert Lūcius invidiam populī atque inimīcitiam. Etenim multa dūra in forō dē sē ipsō audīvit. Cūr populus eum sīc ōdit?

53. Abībant propter studium bellī ab Italiā Rōmānī. Nihil sēcum ferēbant nisi arma et animum.

54. Amīcitia per sē ac propter sē datur et accipitur.

55. “Ad proelium meī fīliī piī abiērunt?”
“Sīc est ut dīcō. Nam Pompeius ipse sēcum eōs dūxit.”
“Eī, sī ad mē redierint, laetē accipientur.”

56. Horātius multīs et magnīs dē causīs ā mē amābātur. Etenim magna cum eō mihi fuit amīcitia, pia fuērunt facta, pulchra verba.

57. Cum causā accessī ad id proelium. Nam iī impiī meam fēminam ac meōs fīliōs interficī iusserant.

58. Pulchrum est amīcōrum meminisse. Tū mihi semper, amīce, eris in animō. Sī in perīculum vocāberis, ipse tēcum ībō.

59. Impiīs verbīs animōs incolārum superāvit Catilīna, impiīs factīs aurum eōrum cēpit. Eum impium cum causā ōdimus atque ōderimus.

60. Quamquam sociī ad proelium magnō studiō accesserant, paucī tamen eōrum miserē discessēre ubi ipsī dūra bellī vīdērunt.

61. Īte, miserī, cum fēminīs atque ex patriā discēdite sī vōbīs ac vestrīs timēbitis.

62. Malum est bona ōdisse, bonum nihil. Dīc mihi, Marce Antōnī: mēne ōdistī? Habēsne causam inimīcitiae? Meā quidem sententiā, odium tuī ipse habēs.

63. Sīc in forō Marcus postquam malum fātum Gaī accēpit: “Est mihi amīcitia cum Gaiō atque ipse causam eius agam. Nam valdē moveor, ō Rōmānī, vestrā invidiā atque odiō virī bonī.”

64. Agricola vītam in agrīs sine perīculō agēbat. Nam multum ōderat bellum atque arma.

65. Postquam Rōmānī multōs nostrōrum interfēcēre, mē ad sociōs tulī auxiliumque ab eīs accēpī.

66. Mementōte venīre, meae fīliae, sī vocābiminī. Venīte sī vōs vocāverō. Mēne audīvistis?

67. Quoniam ad sapientiam, ō virī, per vōs redīre nōn potestis, verbīs ac sententiīs bonōrum dūciminī.

B. Write in Latin with some attention to good Latin word order.

1. Since the words of the poet himself ought to be heard, we shall return to the forum without delay. Will he remember to sing of the deeds of this great man?

2. If the allies do not yield to Catiline himself, we shall praise (their) loyal spirits, and they will win the friendship of the Roman people.

3. If the wicked sailors, desirous of our fields, approach (our) homeland, with reason we shall kill them.

4. By your very self plead (your) case zealously, friend, if you do not desire to be overcome by the hostility of the disloyal men in your own town.

5. I strongly hated and feared Antonius. If he came to our town, I myself departed.

6. Unless you love well the friends of the man, you are not able to love the man himself. Friendship is a beautiful thing indeed.

7. You will be sent into battle without arms, son, if you do not bear your own. As the queen herself orders, so we always do.

8. When the dutiful man will have completed a good life, his soul will be borne toward heaven. Thus the souls of good men return to the gods.

9. After the women learned of the harsh fates of the gods down from the high sky, they were miserably distressed.

10. Although the poet sang of the deeds of the gods clearly and beautifully, few men nevertheless listened to his words.

11. Although she was beautiful in soul, the queen nevertheless had an evil fate. For (her) son, desirous of power for himself, drove her out from the land.

12. If because of hatred you order your own men to wage war, many of us will bear it badly. Bad indeed is anger by itself.

Drill 50–52 The Perfect Passive System; Synopsis IV

A. 1. Identify the tense of each of these passive verb forms.
2. Translate.

		Tense	Translation
Examples:	dictum est	**perfect**	**it was said/it has been said**
	missī erāmus	**pluperfect**	**we (m.) had been sent**

	Tense	Translation
1. ductus erat		
2. captī eritis		
3. iussae sumus		
4. posita erō		
5. dicta sunt		
6. acceptae estis		
7. mōtus eram		
8. gestum est		
9. capta es		
10. audīta erunt		
11. āctae sunt		
12. posita sum		
13. sēnsa eris		

	Tense	Translation
14. vocātī erāmus		
15. tentī erant		
16. amātus erit		
17. laudātī erimus		
18. scrīptum est		
19. missum erat		
20. interfectī sunt		

B. Name the tense and write in Latin.

	Tense	Translation
1. I (m.) was seen		
2. he had been sent		
3. we (f.) shall have been ruled		
4. they (n.) have been moved		
5. you (m.) were led		
6. she will have been called		
7. you (m. pl.) were captured		
8. it was written		
9. you (f.) had been ordered		

	Tense	Translation
10. they (m.) had been killed		
11. I (f.) shall have been heard		
12. you (f. pl.) were perceived		
13. they (f.) had been driven		
14. he has been conquered		
15. you (m.) will have been considered		
16. they (n.) were seen		
17. it has been accomplished		
18. they (f.) had been loved		
19. they (n.) had been borne		
20. you (m. pl.) will have been accepted		

C. On a separate sheet provided, write a synopsis for each of the following verbs in the indicated persons, numbers, and genders.

1. optō, 2nd sing. f.
2. teneō, 1st pl. m.
3. mittō, 3rd pl. n.
4. pōnō, 1st sing. f.
5. accipiō, 2nd pl. m.
6. sentiō, 3rd sing. n.

D. Translate these sentences.

1. Marcus, sī causam prō miserīs agere iussus erit, bene ac pulchrē dīcet.

2. Mala ā tē sunt dicta ac nihil bonī prō populō est perfectum.

3. Quoniam validī per sē vīsī erant sociī nostrī, arma atque auxilium in prōvinciam nōn tulimus.

4. Nisi perīculum sēnsum est, nec virī timuēre nec fēminae.

5. Poēta multa verba dē patriā scrībēbat quoniam ā rēgīnā iussus erat.

6. Ad īnsulam lātus es, ō nauta, et ā rēgīnā dūrā nunc regeris.

7. Dūrum ā virō iussum est, ō fēminae; missae enim estis ex Italiā cum puellīs.

8. Sī ā dominō in agrōs vocātī eritis, servī, īte sine morā.

9. Quamquam Marcus ā multīs incolārum est laudātus, eum ōderāmus.

10. Rēgīna nostra, meā quidem sententiā, invidiā odiōque mōta erat ubi vōs ac vestrōs ē terrā mīsit.

E. Identify the tense of each of these passive verb forms and translate.

	Tense	Translation
1. iussus sum		
2. iubēbar		
3. sēnsa erant		
4. sentiuntur		
5. scrīptum erit		
6. scrībētur		
7. acceptae estis		
8. acceptī erātis		
9. mōtus est		

	Tense	Translation
10. movētur		
11. gesta sunt		
12. gerēbantur		
13. āctī sumus		
14. agēmur		
15. dictum erat		
16. dīcētur		
17. amātae erimus		
18. amāmur		
19. data sunt		
20. dabantur		
21. ducta erō		
22. dūcar		
23. interfectī erunt		
24. interficiuntur		
25. vocātus es		
26. vocāre		
27. lātum est		

	Tense	Translation
28. ferētur		
29. missae sumus		
30. mittēmur		
31. mōnstrāta erant		
32. mōnstrantur		
33. vīsus erō		
34. vidēbor		
35. dēbitum est		
36. dēbētur		
37. capta sunt		
38. capientur		
39. audītī erāmus		
40. audīmur		

F. 1. Translate each of the following verb forms.
2. Change voice in Latin, active to passive, passive to active.

	Translation	Voice Change
1. interfēcerant		
2. agēbāre		
3. dīcimus		

	Translation	Voice Change
4. mittēminī		
5. vocāta sum		
6. tulerātis		
7. sentiam		
8. audīs		
9. dūxerō		
10. captae estis		
11. superābis		
12. tentī erimus		
13. posuī		
14. accipit		
15. dūcuntur		
16. optābātis		
17. habuistī		
18. mōta eram		
19. superāverit		
20. amābor		

G. Write these forms in Latin.

1. 3rd sing. imperf. act. indic. of *perficiō* ____________________
2. 2nd pl. masc. perf. pass. indic. of *dūcō* ____________________
3. 1st pl. plup. act. indic. of *sum* ____________________
4. 2nd sing. fut. perf. act. indic. of *ambulō* ____________________
5. 3rd pl. fem. plup. pass. indic. of *iubeō* ____________________
6. 3rd sing. neut. perf. pass. indic. of *dīcō* ____________________
7. 1st sing. pres. pass. indic. of *audiō* ____________________
8. 2nd pl. fut. act. indic. of *mittō* ____________________
9. 3rd sing. fem. fut. perf. pass. indic. of *optō* ____________________
10. 1st pl. perf. act. indic. of *possum* ____________________
11. 2nd sing. fut. pass. indic. of *teneō* ____________________
12. 3rd pl. neut. perf. pass. indic. of *interficiō* ____________________
13. 2nd pl. masc. plup. pass. indic. of *laudō* ____________________
14. 1st pl. pres. pass. indic. of *capiō* ____________________
15. 3rd sing. neut. plup. pass. indic. of *respondeō* ____________________
16. 3rd pl. fem. perf. pass. indic. of *videō* ____________________
17. 2nd sing. imperf. act. indic. of *pōnō* ____________________

18. 1st sing. fut. act. indic. of *sum* ____

19. 3rd sing. pres. pass. indic. of *gerō* ______________________________________

20. 1st pl. imperf. pass. indic. of *agō* ______________________________________

Drill 53–54 Omission of *sum*; Perfect Passive Participle; Impersonal Passive

A. Translate these sentences.

1. Audīvistīne dicta poētae? Facta eius laudāvī.

2. Bene cōgitāta memineris.

3. Ubi in forum veniētur, populō cum studiō dīcam.

4. Verba pulchra ā poētā scrīpta sunt et multa dōna eī dōnāta.

5. Bellum perficī nōn potuit sī ē proeliō cessum est.

6. Gessistīne gladium tibi ā virō datum?

7. Ab amīcīs vocātī in viam venīmus.

8. Nunc, ō virī, dē bene factīs dīcam; nam bellum ā vōbīs ipsīs cum glōria est gestum.

9. Sī in oppidum ventum est, magnī clārīque vīsī sunt atque audītī.

10. Laetane erās, ō fēmina, ab incolīs laudāta?

11. Auxilium ad fēminās captōrum mittere dēbēs.

12. Ex agrīs ītur; multum enim labōrātum est.

13. Propter verba pulchrē scrīpta poēta bonus aurō est dōnātus ac laudātus.

14. Rōmānī īnsulam ab impiā rēgīnā rēctam regere optābant.

15. Cūr reditum est in agrōs? Sīc ā dominō erat iussum.

B. Write these sentences in Latin.

1. Nothing (of) good had been accomplished by the captured slaves. On account of this cause they were not praised by the master.

2. There had been a going out from the homeland, and there was an approaching (to) the land of free men.

3. I heard a word badly spoken, boy. You ought to say good things about loved ones.

____

____

____

4. There will be much wandering through many lands since we have been sent out from the homeland.

____

____

____

5. Many of us were captured and killed in that war. Now without delay there will be a going away into a hostile land.

____

____

____

Drill 55 Third Declension

A. Recite from memory the endings for masculine/feminine nouns of the third declension and the endings for neuter nouns of the third declension.

B. On a separate sheet decline fully these noun/adjective phrases: **rēx bonus**, **carmen pulchrum**, **māter misera**.

C. Recite from memory the endings for masculine/feminine i-stem nouns of the third declension and the endings for neuter i-stem nouns of the third declension.

D. On a separate sheet decline fully these noun/adjective phrases: **cīvis Rōmānus**, **mare nostrum**, **magna vīs**, **alta moenia** (plural only).

E. Write these forms in Latin. Give all possibilities.

Example: acc. pl. of *cīvis* **cīvēs/cīvīs**

1. abl. pl. of *timor* ____________________
2. gen. pl. of *mēns* ____________________
3. nom. pl. of *animal* ____________________
4. abl. sing. of *hostis* ____________________
5. gen. sing. of *homō* ____________________
6. voc. pl. of *pater* ____________________
7. acc. pl. of *urbs* ____________________
8. acc. sing. of *carmen* ____________________
9. dat. sing. of *rēx* ____________________
10. abl. pl. of *vīs* ____________________
11. acc. pl. of *iūs* ____________________
12. gen. sing. of *Carthāgō* ____________________
13. gen. pl. of *corpus* ____________________
14. acc. sing. of *mare* ____________________
15. abl. sing. of *vīs* ____________________
16. voc. sing. of *amor* ____________________
17. gen. pl. of *māter* ____________________
18. gen. sing. of *corpus* ____________________
19. abl. sing. of *mare* ____________________
20. dat. pl. of *mīles* ____________________
21. acc. sing. of *vīs* ____________________
22. abl. sing. of *servitūs* ____________________

F. For each noun give case and number and translate. Give all possibilities.

	Case and Number	Translation
1. mātrī		
2. mentium		
3. corpus (3)		
4. cīvibus (2)		
5. amōre		
6. animālī (2)		
7. urbīs		
8. hominēs (3)		
9. rēgem		
10. maris		
11. corporum		

	Case and Number	Translation
12. hostēs (3)	______________________	______________________________
	______________________	______________________________
	______________________	______________________________
13. mare (3)	______________________	______________________________
	______________________	______________________________
	______________________	______________________________
14. servitūte	______________________	______________________________

G. Write in Latin.

1. of our city ______________________________
2. toward the city walls ______________________________
3. about slavery ______________________________
4. of animals ______________________________
5. through force ______________________________
6. body (d.o.) ______________________________
7. for the human being ______________________________
8. by right ______________________________
9. concerning fear ______________________________
10. in mind ______________________________
11. into the sea ______________________________
12. in the sea ______________________________

13. of the father

____

14. by means of songs

____

15. for the soldiers

____

16. king (addressed directly)

____

17. rights (subj.)

____

18. of your love

____

19. by means of strength

____

20. of the public enemies

____

21. by the mother

____

22. our fears (d.o.)

____

H. Translate these phrases. Give all possibilities.

1. propter timōrem

____

2. in mare

____

3. alta moenia

____

4. ab hominibus

____

5. in tuā urbe

____

6. prō mātribus

____

7. rūs pulchrum

____

8. cum meō patre

____

9. dūre homō

____

10. propter amōrem

____

11. ex urbe ____________________

12. dē moenibus ____________________

13. sine mātre ____________________

14. per rūra ____________________

15. in marī ____________________

16. dē servitūte ____________________

17. magnā vī ____________________

18. magnīs vīribus ____________________

19. multa animālia ____________________

20. cīvibus bonīs ____________________

I. Give the full vocabulary entry for the following nouns.

Example: (public) enemy **hostis, hostis, -ium** *m.*

1. mother ____________________
2. Carthage ____________________
3. soldier ____________________
4. body ____________________
5. slavery ____________________
6. city walls ____________________
7. right ____________________
8. song ____________________

9. country(side) ____________________

10. human being ____________________

11. city ____________________

12. citizen ____________________

13. Athens ____________________

14. fear ____________________

15. animal ____________________

16. force ____________________

17. house ____________________

18. sea ____________________

19. love ____________________

20. king ____________________

21. mind ____________________

22. father ____________________

Drill 56 Third-Declension Adjectives

A. On a separate sheet decline fully these noun/adjective phrases: **vir fortis**, **omnis fēmina**, **ferrum ācre**, **pater īnfēlīx**, **ingēns mare**, **via facilis**.

B. Supply the correct form of each adjective to modify each noun. Then translate each phrase. Give all possibilities.

Adjective Translation

1. (easy) ____________________ vītam ____________________

2. (all) ____________________ amīcīs ____________________

____

3. (unfortunate) ____________________ mātrēs ____________________

____________________ ____________________

____

4. (strong) ____________________ animō ____________________

____

5. (fierce) ____________________ cūrās ____________________

6. (huge) ____________________ perīculī ____________________

7. (fortunate) ____________________ hominum ____________________

8. (difficult) ____________________ bellō ____________________

____

9. (every) ____________ iūs ____________

____

____

10. (strong) ____________ mente ____________

C. Translate these phrases. Give all possibilities.

1. ingentī glōriā ____________
2. sociōrum fortium ____________
3. in ācre proelium ____________
4. in urbe omnī ____________
5. omnia dūra ac difficilia ____________
6. ingentibus gladiīs ____________
7. fortī deae ____________
8. ō māter fēlīx ____________
9. sine omnī perīculō ____________
10. dē īnfēlīcibus servīs ____________
11. cum armīs fortibus ____________
12. omnīs bonōs bonāsque ____________

Drill 56–57 Third-Declension Adjectives; Adverbs II

A. Give the corresponding adverbs, regular or irregular, for these third-declension adjectives and translate.

1. ācer, ācris, ācre ______
2. fēlīx, fēlīcis ______
3. omnis, omne ______
4. facilis, facile ______
5. fortis, forte ______
6. difficilis, difficile ______
7. īnfēlīx, īnfēlīcis ______

B. Translate these sentences containing third-declension nouns and adjectives, as well as adverbs formed from third-declension adjectives.

1. Ācriter pugnātum erat et fēlīciter: mīlitēs nostrī hostīs magnā vī superāvēre.

______

______

2. Nihil omnīnō sine auxiliō sociōrum perficiētur atque amīcitiā. Nōn difficulter rēgem ē prōvinciā agēmus sī sociī auxilia mīserint.

______

______

______

3. Hostēs, ubi ad moenia vēnērunt, ingentem timōrem omnibus fēcērunt.

4. Mea verba dē malīs servitūtis ācrī mente bene intellēxistī. Etenim fortiter mihi respondistī.

5. Mē ipsum audīte, patrēs cōnscrīptī. Ācrēs erant vīrēs eōrum virōrum fortium. Propter amōrem glōriae ingentem hostēs ex urbe agī facile potuērunt.

6. Facile est carmina scrībere, sed paucī carmen dē dīs pium facere possunt.

7. Omnēs cīvēs iūra urbis ac forī tenēbant atque iūre ea tenēbant.

8. Īnfēlīx puella! Nam in servitūtem sine mātre data es.

C. Write in Latin.

1. Although there are huge animals in the sea, brave sailors always set sail without fear.

2. All things will be easy for you if you work strongly. You seem to me (to be) a fortunate and strong man.

3. After I spoke fiercely in the forum, I was enduring bravely the ill-will and anger of the citizens. For it is difficult to be praised by all the populace.

4. You will conduct an entirely miserable life if you do not manage yourself dutifully on behalf of gods and men.

Drill 58–62 Short Sentences and Syntax

Accusative of Place To Which
Ablative of Separation
Ablative of Cause
Ablative of Place From Which
Ablative of Place Where
Locative case
Impersonal Passive

Translate these short sentences with some regard for good English usage, and from the list above **give the syntax** of the italicized words. For locatives give case only. Identify impersonal passives as such.

Example: In *oppidō* erant. **They were in the town.**
oppidō: **Ablative of Place Where**

1. *Rōmam* cum fēminīs cēdam.

____

____

Rōmam ______________________________

2. Et *rūrī* et in *urbe* servī labōrant.

____

____

rūrī ______________________________

urbe ______________________________

3. *Pecūniā* careō, sed arma habeō.

____

____

pecūniā ______________________________

4. Discēde, puer, *domō*. Etenim mittī ex *urbe* dēbēs.

____

____

domō ______________________________

urbe ______________________________

5. Dī multa mala ad incolās *invidiā* mittunt.

____

____

invidiā ______________________________

6. Sī ad *īnsulam* veniēs, *amīcīs* nōn carēbis.

____

____

īnsulam ______________________________

amīcīs ______________________________

7. *Athēnās venītur.*

____

____

Athēnās ______________________________

venītur ______________________________

8. Verba poētae populum *cūrīs* līberāvērunt.

____

____

cūrīs ______________________________

9. Quamquam *rūs* puellās mīsistī, *Rōmae* tamen erant.

____

____

rūs ______________________________

Rōmae ______________________________

10. Puerī *studiō* ā fēminā laudantur.

____

____

studiō ______________________________

11. Venīte *domum* sine morā! Laetī *domī* eritis.

____

____

domum ______________________________

domī ______________________________

12. Cūr ad bellum *ītur*? Etenim cūr *pugnābitur*?

____

____

ītur ______________________________

pugnābitur ______________________________

13. *Athēnīs discessum est. Rōmam reditum est.*

____

____

Athēnīs ________________________________

discessum est ________________________________

Rōmam ________________________________

reditum est ________________________________

14. Sī *Rōmā* abībimus, *nostrīs* carēbimus.

____

____

Rōmā ________________________________

nostrīs ________________________________

Exercises, CHAPTER VI

A. Translate.

1. Laetī sumus in urbe; rūrī nōbīs sunt multae cūrae. Redīre quidem ad urbem optāmus.

2. Tītus, vir ācer et fortis, nihil umquam omnīnō sine causā dīxit, nihil ēgit. Sīc vidēbātur omnibus.

3. Multum errāvistī, īnfēlīx puer. Nōn enim verba mātris tuae audīvistī.

4. Multī hominēs Rōmam vēnērunt, patrēs cōnscrīptī, sed paucī imperium tenēre potuēre. Difficile enim est imperium tenēre nisi potes id capere.

5. Auxilium ā mīlitibus nostrīs numquam ad prōvinciās lātum est. Cūr nē arma quidem, mī pater, mīsimus?

6. Omnia animālia ā servīs capta per viās in forum ācta sunt. Meā autem sententiā agī in sua rūra debent.

____

____

____

7. Nōn dī vītam fēcērunt difficilem. Nōs omnia nōbīs difficilia facilium odiō fēcimus.

____

____

8. Pauca tibi dē tē scrībō: ubi es in urbe, rūs cum studiō laudās; ubi rūrī, urbem.

____

____

____

9. Liber tuus et lēctus est et legitur ā mē cum dīligentiā. Vīs autem verbōrum nōn omnīnō intellegī potest.

____

____

____

10. Postquam ē bellō rediī, fēlīx domus mē accēpit. Nam ingentī proeliō superāveram hostem. Nunc ego rūs ībō atque rūrī semper vīvam.

____

____

____

11. Pater deōrum atque hominum rēx imperiō et caelum et terrās regit.

12. Sī bellum magnā vī gestum erit, nautae mīlitēsque ab īnsulā abībunt ac terrā marīque fortiter pugnābitur.

13. Multī servī in bellō erant captī. Eōs omnēs rēx dūcī per urbīs ā mīlitibus iussit.

14. Servōrum fēlīcīs domī dominus tenuit, īnfēlīcīs in agrīs labōrāre iussit.

15. Nunc per rūra errātur quoniam servī arma in agricolās ipsōs cēpērunt.

16. Multa tulit fēcitque servus. Līber servitūtem ferre numquam potuit.

17. Ācriter dīxit rēgīna: "Ipse ē meā patriā discēdis? Tē nec noster amor nec amīcitia tenet?"

18. Dē fātō rēgis interfectī facile est paucīs verbīs dīcere: domum mittitur eius corpus quoniam vītā nunc caret.

19. Omnēs hominēs in Italiā iūra cīvium tenēbant nec umquam bellum cum Rōmānīs gerere optābant.

20. Dōna mīlitibus ā rēge missa sunt quoniam bene ac fēlīciter prō moenibus pugnātum erat.

21. Magna domus et pulchra est mihi. Mēcum vīvere potes sī tibi ipsī est ea mēns.

22. Sī mīlitēs fortēs ad moenia hostium cum armīs accesserint, iī timōre miserē discēdent.

23. Postquam ā cīvibus dicta rēgīnae sunt audīta, in eius sententiam itum est.

24. Age, mī homō, dīc mihi mentem tuam. Respondēbō sī poterō.

25. Dūra sunt iūra Fātōrum: interfectus est mīles pius, vīvit impius. Sīc semper erit.

26. Mīles miser, ingentī bellī timōre mōtus, ā mente atque ā sē ipsō discessit. Nunc autem ad sē fēlīx rediit.

27. Mīlitēs Carthāginem īre iussī sunt, rēgem īnfēlīcem capere, Rōmam ferre. Omnia iussa difficulter sunt perfecta.

28. Quoniam poētae miserōs amōrēs hominum canēbant, Amor multīs deus vīsus est dūrus.

29. Cupidus equidem glōriae meōs sub moenia urbis dūcam. Eōs bene pugnāre cum hostibus iubēbō.

30. Dūrum erat proelium: pater īnfēlīx fīlium vītā superāvit. Postquam ē vītā abiit, miserī sine suō fīliō erant pater māterque.

31. Nihil mihi esse bonum potest sī domī male vīvitur, atque paucīs hominibus datum est vīvere sine cūrīs. Mihi autem mēns est timōre lībera.

32. Multī hominēs propter sapientiae studium Athēnās ībant. Nam magna et difficilia cōgitāre optābant. Ubi Rōmam rediērunt, multa quidem intellegēbant.

33. Altae moenia Rōmae atque virōrum fortium facta cecinit poēta postquam carmen pulchrum perfēcit dē agrīs animālibusque.

34. Fīlius rēgis in servitūte vīvēbat quoniam ab hominibus dūrīs prōvinciae per vim captus erat. Pater fātum fīlī fortiter ferēbat, sed cūr rēx magnus eum līberāre numquam poterat?

35. Per vim atque arma ācriter pugnātum est. Quoniam superātī estis, hostēs, et ā meīs mīlitibus captī, Rōmam mittēminī. Paucī autem vestrum in servitūtem dūcentur.

36. Omnis servus līber esse dēbet. Homō enim est. Meōs quidem servōs, etsī habēbam bellī iūre, līberārī iussī. Tū tuōs umquam līberābis?

37. Dūrus deus est Amor sed pulcher. Eī cēdite, virī fēminaeque. Cane meōs amōrēs, poēta. Cane mē miserum et dūram puellam ā mē amātam.

____

____

____

38. Nautae vim maris ingentis multum cōgitant. Vēla enim mox dabunt in altum.

____

____

____

39. Labōrābat prōvincia parva sub imperiō populī Rōmānī. Incolae enim esse līberī optābant.

____

____

____

40. Errābāmus āctī fātīs per maria omnia perque omnīs terrās. Laetī atque cūrīs līberī erāmus ubi ad Italiam ventum est.

____

____

____

41. Cīvēs miserī oppidī rūra suī tenēbunt sī umquam oppidum ipsum per vim ab hostibus erit captum.

____

____

____

42. Carmina poētae clārī facile audiēbam. Namque pulchra vīsa sunt quamquam erant pauca. Poētam autem multō aurō dōnārī iussī.

43. Ut dīs caelum, sīc terra hominibus data est. Animālia autem terram cum hominibus tenent. Et hominēs et animālia sub imperiō sunt deōrum.

44. In mare ab hostibus agēmur nisi in terrā per nōs ipsōs pugnāverimus.

45. Bene vīxī et fēlīciter. Cūr nunc vīrēs vītaque meō ex corpore cēdunt? Mementō meī, bone vir, ubi discesserō ac fer mea dicta ad mātrem meam.

46. Postquam omnēs mīlitēs ā rēge iussī in proelium abiērunt, nōs quidem multa misera domī nōn facile ferēbāmus.

47. Nē dī quidem bellīs proeliīsque carent, ut ferunt poētae. Multīs autem dē causīs inter sēsē ācre bellum gerunt.

48. Catilīnam, hominem impium ac mente captum, ex urbe iūre ēgimus. Sīc timōre populus Rōmānus est līberātus.

49. Vīribus mīlitum, patrēs cōnscrīptī, perīculīs servitūtis līberātī sumus. Nunc sine timōre ācrium hostium vīvere possumus.

50. Rōmā cum fēminā discesseram et Athēnās redieram laetus. Athēnīs enim inter bonōs vīvere poterāmus.

51. Quamquam oppidum vī capī nōn potuerat, multī incolae, et servī et līberī, erant captī. Sub ingentia moenia Rōmae ā mīlitibus dūcēbantur.

52. Gaius inter omnīs poētās novōs multum laudātus est. Amōre fāmae, nōn pecūniae, sua carmina scrībēbat.

53. Māter cum fīliō parvō Rōmā timōre discessit. Nam rūra tenēre optābat. “Numquam Rōmam redībimus,” miserē dīxit.

54. Ingēns erat bellum inter Carthāginem et Rōmam. Nostrīs autem mīlitibus nihil omnīnō erat timōris.

55. Ubi fortiter ab hominibus ē prōvinciā missīs causa sociōrum ācta erat, ē forō discessum est.

56. Vir amōre glōriae captus, sī vim fēcerit umquam cīvibus, ē forō atque ex urbe agētur.

57. Deōs fēcit timor hominibus miserīs, ut ferunt poētae. Vestrā quidem sententiā, id ipsum bene dictum?

58. Parvus, Antōnī, erās ubi vim et arma ācria timēbās. Nunc fortī mente bellum geris.

59. Quoniam pater fīliās suās domō sine causā ēgerat, eum iūre ōderant. Vēnit mihi in mentem eum impium hominem interficere.

60. Dea pauca Amōrī: "Ī, mī fīlī, meae vīrēs, ad alta moenia Carthāginis. Sī tibi clāra erit mea mēns, magnō animum rēgīnae īnfēlīcis movēbis amōre."

61. Sīc inter sē et mēcum dīcēbant iī hominēs: "Nōbīs omnibus quamquam magnum quidem imperium prō nostrīs factīs dēbitum ac dēbētur, nē iūs quidem cīvium datur."

62. Nunc in ācrīs bellī cūrās ītur. Mīles autem Rōmānus, vīribus ingēns, nōs in hostīs dūcere dēbēbit.

63. Hominēs piī timōre ex oppidīs prōvinciae discēdēbant. Postquam id Rōmae intellēctum est, magna vīs mīlitum missa est.

64. Agite magnā vī, patrēs cōnscrīptī, ex urbe eōs impiōs hominēs, sociōs Catilīnae, bonōrum inimīcōs, hostīs patriae! Līberāte timōre vōs et vestrōs.

65. Nisi cōnsiliō rēctī eritis, ō cīvēs, nisi animō ac mente verba rēgis fortis audīveritis, sociōs vestrōs in servitūtem dūcētis. Nōn timōre, sed iūre movēminī!

66. Marcus, quoniam magnō amōre aurī captus est, nunc prōvinciā domōque caret, mox vītā.

67. Pater, quamquam et mente et corpore erat validus, ā fīliō impiē interfectus est. Mox eius corpus domum ferētur atque in terrā ā fēminā piē pōnētur. Fīlius autem iūre poenās dabit.

68. Hominēs in īnsulā, ō rēx, in servitūtem darī dēbent quoniam impiē sē gessērunt.

69. Magnō, patrēs cōnscrīptī, patriae mēcum tenēminī amōre. Bellum autem inter cīvēs movēbitis nisi Catilīnam ex urbe ēgeritis.

70. Vōbīs erat timor nostrī, sed multī nostrum vōs timēbant. Sī umquam nōbīs dīcēbātis, nōn omnīnō respondēbāmus.

B. Write in Latin with some attention to good Latin word order.

1. Although a huge force of men had been led with strong arms to the walls of the enemies, because of fear they soon proceeded quickly to the countryside.

2. We all shall be sent away from the city if the fierce enemies fight through force at the foot of the walls.

3. Few Romans were living in Carthage because of fear and hatred of the enemies.

4. When Marcus came to Athens with his father, he lived among the citizens, and he received wisdom from the poets themselves. Why did he depart from Athens? Where does he live now?

5. If you listen well to all the poems written by this famous poet, son, you will easily be moved by his words.

6. If the gods desire to stir up anger and enmity among unfortunate men, they send wicked thoughts into their minds.

7. With difficulty have my opinions been able to be understood, senators. All things, however, will be clear to you if you read my books about violence and weapons.

8. When there was a coming to the walls of the enemies, few of us were lacking fear. We, however, sons of remarkable men, were taking up sharp swords.

9. If there is (a) fierce fighting on behalf of the allies, all the soldiers will depart from Rome and will bear aid and arms to the province.

10. On the sea few sailors are not at all free from cares. Many men, moreover, rightly fear the deep sea.

11. The poet keen in mind was pondering both love and war. It is not easy to understand the power of the gods.

12. At Rome men held the rights of citizens, but all women lacked them.

Drill 64–69 Verb Morphology: Active and Passive Subjunctive

A. Fill in the blanks. Do not use abbreviations.

1. The five properties of the finite verb in Latin are: ____________, ____________, ____________, ____________, and ____________.

2. The two voices of the Latin verb are: ____________ and ____________.

3. The three moods of the Latin verb are: ____________, ____________, and ____________.

4. The indicative mood is used for ____________________________________.

   The imperative mood is used for ____________________________________.

   The subjunctive mood is used for ____________________________________.

5. The four tenses of the subjunctive mood are: ____________, ____________, ____________, and ____________.

B. On a separate sheet provided, write a synopsis for each of the following verbs in the indicated persons, numbers, and genders.

1. sum, 3rd sing. (no pass.)
2. possum, 1st pl. (no pass., no imper.)
3. superō, 3rd pl. n.
4. iubeō, 2nd sing. f.
5. sentiō, 1st sing. f.
6. perficiō, 3rd sing. n.
7. ferō, 2nd pl. m.
8. legō, 3rd pl. n.
9. moveō, 2nd sing. f.
10. līberō, 1st sing. m.
11. eō, 1st pl. (no pass.)
12. audiō, 2nd pl. m.

C. Translate indicatives. Identify subjunctives (give person, number, tense, voice, mood).

1. amō ____________________

2. amem ____________________

3. mōnstrārētur ____________________

4. mōnstrātur ____________________

5. dūcet ____________________

6. dūxerit (2) ____________________

____

7. vīvās ____________________

8. vīvis ____________________

9. mōvissētis ____________________

10. mōtī essētis ____________________

11. capior ____________________

12. capiar (2) ____________________

____

13. dīcunt ____

14. dīcerent ____

15. mittēmus ____

16. mīsimus ____

17. intellēxit ____

18. intellēctus sit ____

19. īverim ____

20. īverō ____

21. habuissēs ____

22. habuerās ____

23. moveās ____

24. moveāre ____

25. legerent ____

26. lēgērunt ____

27. ferant ____

28. ferunt ____

29. agēbātur ____

30. agātur ____

31. cessisset ____

32. cesserit (2) ______________________________

____

33. eātis ______________________________

34. īssētis ______________________________

35. vidērēmur ______________________________

36. videāmur ______________________________

37. sentiāris ______________________________

38. sentīris ______________________________

39. fuerit (2) ______________________________

____

40. fuit ______________________________

D. Write these forms in Latin.

1. 1st pl. pres. act. subjunc. of *canō* ______________________________
2. 3rd sing. imperf. act. indic. of *vīvō* ______________________________
3. 2nd sing. fem. perf. pass. subjunc. of *līberō* ______________________________
4. 1st sing. masc. plup. pass. indic. of *capiō* ______________________________
5. 3rd pl. neut. fut. perf. pass. indic. of *legō* ______________________________
6. 2nd pl. plup. act. subjunc. of *careō* ______________________________
7. 3rd sing. neut. perf. pass. indic. of *scrībō* ______________________________

8. 2nd sing. pres. act. subjunc. of *sum* ______

9. 1st pl. imperf. pass. subjunc. of *interficiō* ______

10. 3rd pl. masc. plup. pass. indic. of *ferō* ______

11. 2nd sing. fut. act. indic. of *dō* ______

12. 3rd sing. pres. pass. subjunc. of *sentiō* ______

13. 2nd sing. imperf. pass. indic. of *optō* ______

14. 1st sing. perf. act. subjunc. of *intellegō* ______

15. 1st pl. fem. plup. pass. subjunc. of *dūcō* ______

16. 3rd pl. pres. act. subjunc. of *eō* ______

17. 2nd sing. perf. act. indic. of *gerō* ______

18. 3rd sing. imperf. act. subjunc. of *possum* ______

19. 1st sing. fut. pass. indic. of *pōnō* ______

20. 3rd pl. fem. perf. pass. subjunc. of *amō* ______

Drill 70 Three Independent Subjunctives

A. Write each indicative or imperative in Latin. Name each independent subjunctive and then write in Latin. Give all possibilities.

Example: He departed. **Discessit.**
If ony he would depart. **Optative**
Discēdat.

1. a) They are listening. ____________________

   b) They might be listening. ____________________

   ____

2. a) Answer. ____________________

   b) Do not answer. ____________________

   ____

3. a) We were being ruled. ____________________

   b) Let us be ruled. ____________________

   ____

4. a) It was seen. ____________________

   b) It might have been seen. ____________________

   ____

5. a) She will sing. ____________________

   b) If only she would sing. ____________________

   ____

6. a) You are being freed. ____________________

   b) If only you were being freed. ____________________

   ____

7. a) He was not praised. ____________________

   b) He would not have been praised. ____________________

   ____

8. a) There is (a) living. ____________________

   b) Let there be (a) living. ____________________

   ____

9. a) Approach (pl.). ____________________

   b) Do not approach (pl.). ____________________

   ____

10. a) I shall send. ____________________

    b) I might send. ____________________

    ____

11. a) You have been able. ____________________

    b) If only you had been able. ____________________

    ____

12. a) Endure. ____________________

    b) Do not endure. ____________________

    ____

13. a) They were returning. ______________________________

b) They might have returned. ______________________________

____

14. a) It had been. ______________________________

b) Let it be. ______________________________

____

15. a) It was said. ______________________________

b) If only it had not been said. ______________________________

____

16. a) They remember. ______________________________

b) Let them remember. ______________________________

____

17. a) I (m.) was perceived. ______________________________

b) I could not have been perceived. ______________________________

____

18. a) Set aside. ______________________________

b) If only you were setting aside. ______________________________

____

19. a) There is (a) fighting. ______________________________

b) Let there not be (a) fighting. ______________________________

____

20. a) You (f. pl.) will have been moved. ______________________

b) You (f. pl.) might be moved. ______________________

____

B. Name each independent subjunctive and then translate. Give all possibilities.

Example: Vīvant in Italiā. **Jussive: Let them live . . .**
Potential: They might live . . .
Optative: If only they would live . . .

1. Id ēgeris. ______________________

2. Utinam viam mihi mōnstrāvisset! ______________________

____

3. Ab urbe omnēs abeāmus. ______________________

____

____

4. Domum cum suīs redīrent. ______________________

____

5. Nē umquam Rōmam eāmus, sed fēlīciter rūrī vīvāmus. ______________________

____

____

6. Līber servitūtem nōn omnīnō ferat. ______________________

____

7. Utinam mē audīrēs. ______________________

____

8. Nē ingentem vim hostium timueris. ____________________

9. Virōs fortīs dūcam! ____________________

10. Nē carmina tua ad mē mittās! ____________________

11. Mīlitēs in viīs nōn vidērētis. ____________________

12. Nē urbs ab hostibus capta esset. ____________________

13. Dē eīs errārēs. ____________________

14. Ex īnfēlīcī proeliō discēdāmus. ____________________

15. Utinam nē animō dūra esset. ____________________

16. Omnēs deōs amēs atque omnibus dōna dēs. ____________________

17. Sine gladiō ācrī pugnāre nōn potuerim.

18. Rēgem facile interficiant.

19. Nē verbīs dominī moveāris.

20. Nē difficilia mihi dīxeris.

C. Name each independent subjunctive and then write in Latin. Give all possibilities.

1. If only I (f.) had not been sent home!

2. Do not return to the forum, unfortunate man.

3. May the gods give good things to the brave ones of us.

4. Let us not speak about them at all.

5. The unfortunate slaves might take up arms against their masters.

6. Let them yield to the words of the fierce king.

7. Why would they have been put in huge danger?

8. If only he were conducting a good life!

9. Do not (pl.) be moved by envy.

10. A war could not be waged on land and sea.

Drill 71 Conditional Sentences II

A. 1. Identify the tense and mood of the verbs in the protasis and apodosis, and name the type of conditional sentence.

2. Translate.

3. Give the syntax of the italicized words.

Example: Sī Rōmae *vīverem,* cūrīs carērem.

1. **vīverem: imperf. subjunc.; carērem: imperf. subjunc.; Pres. Contrary-to-Fact**
2. **If I were living in Rome, I would be without cares.**
3. **imperf. subjunc. in the protasis of a Pres. Contrary-to-Fact conditional sentence**

1. Tē laetē *accipiāmus* sī rūs veniās.

2. Tē laetē accipiēmus sī rūs *veniēs.*

3. Nisi īnfēlīx nōbīs vidērētur puella, eī pecūniam nōn *darēmus.*

4. Puella, nisi īnfēlīx *vīsa esset,* pecūniam ā nōbīs nōn accēpisset.

5. Sī librōs eius lēgissēs, omnia nunc *intellegerēs.*

6. Sī librōs eius *lēgistī,* omnia quidem intellēxistī.

7. Sī ab inimīcīs in perīculō pōnāminī, auxilium sine morā mittēmus.

8. Sī ab inimīcīs in perīculō positī eritis, auxilium sine morā mittēmus.

9. Nisi rēx tibi aurum dōnāverit, fēlīx ā mē nōn habēbere.

10. Nisi rēx tibi aurum dōnet, fēlīx ā mē nōn habēberis.

11. Arma virumque canerem sī poēta essem.

12. Arma virumque cecinissem sī poēta fuissem.

13. Amīcōs in forum nōn mittam sī mihi timor perīculī sit.

14. Amīcōs in forum nōn mīsissem sī mihi timor perīculī fuisset.

15. Sī rēgīna nautās discēdere iussisset, nunc vēla darent.

16. Sī rēgīna nautās discēdere iubeat, mox vēla dabunt.

B. Name the type of conditional sentence and write in Latin.

1. If you should go to Athens, your friends at home would bear it with difficulty.

2. If all men were understanding the huge power of the gods, they would be living happily and without cares.

3. There will be fierce fighting near our city walls if war should ever be waged at Rome.

4. If I had not been an unlucky human being, I would not have been captured by enemies and given into harsh slavery.

5. Justly you would be stirring up the anger of the citizens if you had taken up strong arms against the Roman people.

Drill 72–73 Short Sentences and Syntax

Dative of Purpose
Dative of Reference
Dative of Advantage
Dative of Disadvantage

Translate these short sentences with some regard for good English usage, and from the list above **give the syntax** of the italicized words.

1. Amīcitia deōrum *nōbīs* erit *bonō*.

____

____

nōbīs ______________________________________

bonō ______________________________________

2. Arma ex aurō *mīlitibus* fēcī.

____

____

mīlitibus ___________________________________

3. Aurum ad sociōs *auxiliō* mittēmus.

____

____

auxiliō ____________________________________

4. *Rēgī* bellum in īnsulā erat magnae *cūrae.*

____

____

rēgī ______________________________

cūrae ______________________________

5. Multam pecūniam mīlitibus *dōnō* dedit rēx.

____

____

dōnō ______________________________

6. Carmen *mātrī* meae scrībēbam.

____

____

mātrī ______________________________

7. Cūr *odiō patrī* fīlius erat?

____

____

odiō ______________________________

patrī ______________________________

8. Semper *mihi* dūra est mea puella.

____

____

mihi ______________________________

Exercises, CHAPTER VII

A. Translate.

1. Sī magna pars fortūnae nōbīs mānserit, facile vincēmus.

   Sī magna pars fortūnae nōbīs maneat, facile vincēmus.

   Sī magna pars fortūnae nōbīs mānsisset, facile vīcissēmus.

2. Sī moenia capiantur, fugere vērē cupiāmus.

   Sī moenia caperentur, fugere vērē cuperēmus.

   Sī moenia capta essent, fugere vērē cuperēmus.

3. Aut falsa dīxit frāter aut vēra.

Aut falsa dīxit frāter aut soror.

4. Post bellum acerbum cīvium, pars mīlitum Rōmae mānsērunt, sed nōs Athēnās fūgimus. Fēlīciter, nam amīcitiam ab incolīs et petīvimus et laetī accēpimus.

5. Cūr cōpiae sociōrum patriam armīs petīvērunt atque sibi ipsīs nostram urbem trādī iussēre? Nōs quidem eōs numquam ita peterēmus.

6. Postquam in templa deōrum immortālium itum est, animālia pulchra interfecta sunt. Auxilium enim ā dīs petēbātis. Nōn autem dōnīs in ārā positīs sed factīs piīs auxilium peterētur.

7. Mīlitēs fortēs, quoniam armōrum cōpiam habēbant, in prōvinciam auxiliō missī erant. Utinam incolae ingentī timōre īnsidiārum nē fūgissent. Nunc omnia bona eōrum sine poenā ab hostibus auferrī possunt.

8. Cūr Rōmānī ad āram Minervae ībant sapientiamque ā deā petēbant? Minerva hominibus, ut accēpimus, omnīs artēs dedit.

9. Incertus est frāter meus. Nunc amōrem sentit, nunc odium. Vincit Amor, ut vidētur. Nē ab eō deō dūrō caperētur!

10. Trādēsne propter inimīcitiās antīquās causam sociōrum fortūnāsque prōvinciae? Nē id ēgeris.

11. Pauca quidem dē nātūrā deōrum facile intelleguntur: Iuppiter caelum terramque imperiō regit, sed mare ingēns Neptūnō frātrī ipse trādidit.

12. Incolae īnsulārum in amīcitiā populī Rōmānī mānsissent nisi falsīs verbīs per īnsidiās territī essent.

13. Hominum pars rūrī fēlīciter vīvunt, pars in urbibus nōn sine cūrīs.

14. Pater ad templa antīqua deum ambulābat; post veniēbat fīlius, ut umbra.

15. Corpore quidem pulchra est Iūlia, vērum nōn animō. Omnēs autem puellās vincit mea Cynthia et ingeniō et arte. Deārum mihi esse ea vidētur aut certē dīvīna.

16. Amīcitiae immortālēs, mortālēs inimīcitiae dēbent esse, ut dīcēbant antīquī.

17. Tū quidem eī puellae amīcus cārus es. Ea frātrem tē vocat et soror vocātur.

18. Caesarem ante omnēs victī timent. Verba Caesaris iūs faciunt. Caesar ipse per populōs dat iūra.

19. Dīvīnum habērī animal homō possit. Ego quidem eum mortālem deum habeam.

20. Rēx ingeniō acerbus timōrī est populō. Eī liber dē nātūrā imperī magnō sit auxiliō.

21. Amēmus patriam. Nē patria umquam hostibus ā nōbīs trādātur. Semper amōrī cīvibus sit patria. Prō meā parte cāra est terra Italiae.

22. Noster poēta, nisi cīvis Rōmānus esset, ā populō nunc cīvitāte dōnārētur. Antīquī etiam hostīs in cīvitātem accēpērunt.

23. Dē Antōniō nihil tibi novī dīcere possim, nihil quidem bonī: quoniam eum omnēs mortālēs ōdērunt, et tibi odiō esse dēbet.

24. Omnia arte nātūrae vīvunt, pulchrē nātūrā geruntur. Ita pater mihi dīxit. Meā autem sententiā, mēns dīvīna omnia movet ac regit.

25. Novum sī bellum gerēs atque ea tibi mēns erit, rēx magne, nōs nōn causās petēmus sed arma. Magnā vōce dīcēmus: “Bellum quidem prō nostrā cīvitāte gerātur!”

26. Pater fīliīs: "Bene perficiātur vīta mea sī meīs verbīs factīsque moveāminī ad studium sapientiae ac virtūtis. Mementōte: nōn ego ad vōs sed mea umbra post mortem veniet."

27. Ad forum redeāmus atque Catōnem audiāmus. Catō enim cōpiā verbōrum ac sententiārum causās prō populō bene agit. Ipse prō mē dīcat sī umquam in iūs vocer.

28. Pater nōbīs cārus librōs antīquōrum poētārum aut mihi dōnō dederit aut frātrī aut sorōrī. In incertō sum.

29. Tū, sī virtūtem in bellō tenuissēs, auxiliō fuissēs patriae ac cārus ab omnibus habitus essēs.

30. Dī immortālēs omnēs deaeque, facilem ad mortem date viam; nam acerba est servitūs mea ac misera.

31. Falsa magnae partī patrum dicta sociōrum vīsa sunt. Paucī etiam īnsidiās sēnsēre.

32. Ubi multī nostrum ex ācrī proeliō fugiēbant, tuus fīlius nōn sēsē sōlum ad hostīs tulit, sed etiam suōs territōs dūxit. Ita nōbīs virtūs eius magnō erat bonō.

33. Cūr eī īnfēlīcī erat fātum miserum? Est interfectus arte frātris impiī. Etenim post mortem, ubi umbra ipsīus in oppidō vīdēbātur, territus est frāter.

34. Quoniam ad Iovis templum ventum est, dōna deō magnō in ārīs piē pōnāmus. Etenim dōnīs vincātur inimīcitia deōrum immortālium.

35. Tū propter ingenium tuum ac sapientiam carmen pulchrum facile scrībere possīs. Ego quidem omnīnō nōn potuerim.

36. "Rēx noster per īnsidiās interficerētur."
"Nē id mihi dīxeris. Nē ea acerba ex tē audiam."

37. Novās Venus artīs, nova in animō cōnsilia cōgitat. Amōrem Carthāginem mittit iubetque īnsidiās rēgīnae facere. Amor rēgīnam, ubi videt, petit.

38. Sī pugnet ingeniō Marcus mēcum, sī pugnet et arte, eum certē superābō.

39. Quamquam ē templō discēdere cupiēbam, nec piē id facere poteram nec iūre. Ita in templō manēbam ut ante.

40. Post bellum acerbum nōn ego tē laudārem, nōn equidem. Nam ubi magna pars cōpiārum fortiter pugnābant ac fēlīciter, tū ab hostibus territus miserē fūgistī. Ē cīvitāte discēderēs!

41. Incerta sunt studia cīvium, magna mea perīcula. Rūrī vōbīscum erō sī vīvam. Utinam mox mihi homō aut deus auxiliō sit!

42. Etsī tū multīs ā mē sententiīs differs, amīcus tamen mihi cārus es. Tuō autem amōre meī tē multī bonī ōdērunt. Nē tibi essem omnīnō causa malōrum!

43. Mors nōbīs “Vīvite” dīcit, “veniō.” Utinam eius vōcibus terreāminī aut certē moveāminī! Ut mortī dēbēmur nōs nostraque, ita bene vīvāmus.

44. Aenēās post bellum dūrum ē Troiā antīquā fūgit et propter īram Iūnōnis per altum errābat. Nam patriam novam petēbat. Nisi autem ā dīs bonīs esset ductus, numquam ad Italiam vēnisset.

45. Vīxērunt prō certō post Catullum multī poētae ingeniō magnī. Etenim Horātius Catullum, ut mihi quidem vidētur, et ingeniō superāvit et arte. Certā dē causā in meā sententiā manēbō quamquam multī ā mē different.

46. Facta multum ā verbīs differunt, Marce Antōnī. Sī tibi esset nōn sōlum virtūs vērum etiam vīrēs, ex proeliō miserē nōn fugerēs. Nisi sine morā redeās, poenās prō certō dabis.

47. Impius mīles, postquam hostibus nostram urbem trādidit, sēcum esse sēcumque, ut dīcitur, vīvere nōn potuit, et mox sē suō ferrō interfēcit.

48. “Multī mortālēs, sī cum cūrā tua carmina lēgerint, cupient artīs sibi tuās, dīvīne poēta.”
“Utinam vēram mihi dīcerēs ex animō sententiam!”
“Nīl (ita mē dī ament) falsī dīxī.”

49. Vir mihi cārus ad mortem acerbam īvit. Meōs vērō amōrēs sēcum abstulit. Nunc etiam redit umbra atque eius audīre vōcem videor. Dīcit, “Meī mementō. Nam numquam redībō ego ipse.”

50. Territa essem sī umquam proelium acerbum vīdissem. Nam etiam umbrās sine causā timēbam. Cūr mihi ingēns erat timor? Nōn facile dīxerim.

51. Līber sit cūrīs mortālibus animus pius. Laudentur semper ā nōbīs omnēs hominēs piī. Nōs sī aurum impiē ā templō Iovis abstulerimus, poenās certē dabimus.

52. Audī, Iuppiter, mea dicta: auxilium ad nostrās cōpiās mittās! Nam cīvitās populī Rōmānī īnsidiīs hostium victa sit.

53. Abeāmus quoniam umbrīs in viīs territī sumus. Fēminae, quamquam fugere cupiunt, maneant.

54. Audīte, ō cīvēs, vōcem vestrī rēgis: "Īnsidiīs meōrum inimīcōrum labōrābam. Nunc iūre poenās dedēre. Vīxērunt."

55. Meō frātrī ante erat mēns clāra et corpus forte. Post vērō bellum homō sine vīribus esse, sine virtūte vidēbātur.

56. Nōn sōlum animus hominis est dīs cārus, sed etiam corpus. Animus autem nōn semper in mortālī corpore manēbit. Sīc nātūrā iubet.

57. Equidem incertus sum dē nātūrā deōrum. Nōn, sī facta deum sunt bona, sunt etiam mala. Tibi autem est magna vīs ingenī; dīc mihi sententiam tuam.

58. Nisi nova auxilia ā sociīs mitterentur, īnfēlīcēs iūre vidērēmur atque ad ārās īrēmus fortūnamque ā dīs peterēmus.

59. Falsus es, Marce Antōnī, et ingeniō malus. Vēra nec dīcis neque agis. Ita tē tuōsque mors ac mala fāta manent. Utinam verbīs tuae sorōris movērēre!

60. Quoniam mīlitēs inter sē differēbant, rēx ante proelium cōpiās ad sē vocāvit: “Multa dē novīs īnsidiīs Rōmānōrum et dīximus et dīcēmus. Nunc autem, ō sociī, aut prō patriā pugnāte aut sine glōriā interficiminī. Omnia nōbīs aut fortūna aut nātūra dabit.”

61. Ō dī immortālēs! Mala fāta Rōmānōs propter eōrum īnsidiās vērē manent. Ubi enim cōpiae eōrum ex prōvinciā discesserant, multī sociōrum nōn difficulter sunt captī et interfectī.

62. Postquam mīlitēs victī atque ex urbe āctī sunt, ablātī sunt cum armīs animī eōrum. Nē victī essent!

63. Audīte mē, patrēs cōnscrīptī. Sī Marcus virīs impiīs patriam trādidisset, hostem nunc eum habērēmus.

B. Write in Latin with some attention to good Latin word order.

1. If Caesar should order the city of the enemies to be captured and conquered, we would be moved by love of glory and would fight near the city walls without fear.

2. If human beings were always ruled by wisdom, they would differ much from animals, and they would approach the life of the immortal gods.

3. When there had been a departing from the altars and the temples, the citizens were differing among themselves about the power of the gods. For few of us, as it seems, truly understand their nature.

4. If the state had ever been handed over to the disloyal allies, not only would our fellow citizens have been given into slavery but also many of you, senators, would have been killed.

5. Let us either remain in Rome or flee to the countryside with (our) dear sisters. I for my part do not desire to be killed on behalf of the state.

6. O son dear to me, do not be frightened by the harsh words of your enemies. If, however, you should be carried away by force, a true friend would surely be a source of great aid to you.

7. Few sons could surpass their own fathers in both skill and wisdom, as ancient men used to say.

8. Not only your courage but also your talent, Marcus Tullius, will be a source of envy to many men if you speak fiercely to the people about Antony. Do not, however, be overcome by their bitter opinions. For surely your good reputation will remain.

9. If only, senators, you would not hand over part of the state to that evil king. Why do you say nothing about his treachery?

10. If fortune should summon me away from death, I shall return to the wife dear to me. May she still be alive!

11. As before the war we used to praise the divine art of the poet, so even now we remember his great talent and his clear voice.

12. The citizens were bearing bitterly and were hating your words, neither reliable nor true. If you had not through ill-will ordered all the citizenry to be in arms, you would even now be held in the friendship of the Roman people.

Drill 75–76 Deponent and Semideponent Verbs

A. Give the principal parts of the following verbs and identify the conjugation to which each belongs.

1. audeō ______________________________

2. cōnor ______________________________

3. morior ______________________________

4. sequor ______________________________

5. experior ______________________________

6. fateor ______________________________

7. patior ______________________________

B. On a separate sheet provided, write a synopsis for each of the following verbs in the indicated persons, numbers, and genders.

1. cōnor, 3rd sing. masc.
2. fateor, 2nd sing. fem.
3. audeō, 1st pl. fem.
4. sequor, 3rd pl. neut.
5. experior, 2nd pl. masc.
6. morior, 1st sing. fem.
7. patior, 3rd pl. masc.

C. Translate each of the following verb forms of deponent and semideponent verbs. Treat subjunctives as independent. Give all possibilities.

1. fatēre ______________________________

2. mortuus erat ______________________________

3. ausae estis ______________________________

4. experīminī ____________________

5. morerēris ____________________

6. patiantur ____________________

7. cōnābantur ____________________

8. sequar ____________________

9. ausī erāmus ____________________

10. cōnātus essēs ____________________

11. moriēmur ____________________

12. cōnāre ____________________

13. patiēre ____________________

14. experīrī ____________________

15. sequuntur ____________________

16. fassa sit ____________________

17. ausus esset ____________________

18. sequāmur ____________________

19. patitur ____________________

20. fatēbāminī ____________________

21. mortuus esset ____________________

22. morī ____________________

23. audēbant ____________________

24. cōnābimur ____________________

25. sequitur ____________________

26. passī sunt ____________________

27. experiēbātur ____________________

28. experīrēmur ____________________

D. Write in Latin. Give all possibilities.

1. I shall try ____________________

2. if only he were following ____________________

3. they might have confessed ____________________

4. we (m.) have tried ____________________

5. to follow ____________________

6. you were enduring ____________________

7. we (f.) dared ____________________

8. let him die ____________________

9. they were dying ____________________

10. I dared (habitually) ____________________

11. you (m. pl.) might experience ____________________

12. if only we (m.) had tested ____________________

13. follow! ______________________________

14. I (f.) had suffered ______________________________

15. they (f.) will have died ______________________________

16. to admit ______________________________

E. Translate each of the following verb forms. Deponent, semideponent, and nondeponent verbs are included. Treat subjunctives as independent, giving one possibility.

1. fatētur ______________________________

2. movētur ______________________________

3. pōnī ______________________________

4. sequī ______________________________

5. experīre ______________________________

6. audīre ______________________________

7. sequar ______________________________

8. mittar ______________________________

9. capientur ______________________________

10. morientur ______________________________

11. cōnāre ______________________________

12. cōnārī ______________________________

13. fatērēmur ______________________________

14. habērēmur ______________________________

15. moriātur ______________________________

16. moriētur ______________________________

17. ausa erat ______________________________

18. ausus esset ______________________________

19. passī sīmus ______________________________

20. passae sumus ______________________________

21. dūcēmur ______________________________

22. cōnēmur ______________________________

23. morī ______________________________

24. moriminī ______________________________

25. ausī erimus ______________________________

26. audēbimus ______________________________

27. sequuntur ______________________________

28. sequantur ______________________________

29. morere ______________________________

30. moriēre ______________________________

F. Translate these short sentences containing deponent and semideponent verbs.

1. Sī rēx noster mortuus erit, mala patiētur populus.

2. Mē sequere, amīce. Ex perīculō tē dūcere cōnābor.

3. Caesarem sequī (fatēbor enim) cupiō.

4. Et virōs et fēminās in bellum mittere est ausus rēx noster?

5. Fīlia mihi cāra mortua est. Utinam nē mortua esset!

6. Impius vērum mihi fassus est ac nunc poenam patitur.

7. Bellī fortūnam vērē expertī essētis sī umquam ad proelium īvissētis.

8. Utinam etiam dominus servitūtem experiātur.

9. Agricola, quamquam rūrī vīvit, Rōmam īre audēbit.

10. Nisi nostrum oppidum hostī trādidissēs, nunc nōn morerēre.

Drill 77 Demonstrative Adjectives/Pronouns

A. On a separate sheet decline fully (singular and plural, no vocative) “this part,” “that brother (of yours),” “that temple.”

B. Supply the correct form of the specified demonstrative adjective to modify each noun. Give all possibilities.

Example: (hic, haec, hoc) ***huic, hōc*** dominō

hic, haec, hoc

1. ____________________ urbem
2. ____________________ nauta
3. ____________________ corpora
4. ____________________ mentem
5. ____________________ virīs
6. ____________________ ārae
7. ____________________ gladiō
8. ____________________ arma
9. ____________________ ingenium
10. ____________________ librī

iste, ista, istud

1. ____________________ animum
2. ____________________ cōnsilia
3. ____________________ sorōrī
4. ____________________ inimīcōs
5. ____________________ fortūna
6. ____________________ mīlitēs
7. ____________________ imperium
8. ____________________ carminis
9. ____________________ vītā
10. ____________________ māter

ille, illa, illud

1. ____________________ patriae
2. ____________________ bella
3. ____________________ frātre
4. ____________________ causās
5. ____________________ homō
6. ____________________ moenia
7. ____________________ servī
8. ____________________ terrīs
9. ____________________ puerōrum
10. ____________________ hostis

C. Translate these phrases into English. Give all possibilities.

1. propter hoc bellum

   ____

2. hae puellae

   ____

3. ex istā patriā

   ____

4. illa perīcula

   ____

5. huic frātrī malō

   ____

6. in illā ārā

   ____

7. illīus poētae

   ____

8. prō istīs servīs

   ____

9. illī rēgī clārō

   ____

10. haec facta

    ____

11. dē hīs

    ____

12. istam vītam miseram

    ____

13. illī urbī

    ____

14. huius virī

    ____

15. istōs animōs

____

16. hārum sententiārum

____

17. virtūtem illam

____

18. huic animae

____

19. cum istīs amīcīs

____

20. hoc cōnsilium impium

____

21. sub hōc imperiō

____

22. illud corpus

____

23. hī hominēs

____

24. dē illīs īnsidiīs

____

25. hōrum mīlitum

____

26. in istā urbe

____

27. illī incolae

____

28. ab illīs templīs

____

29. ista soror

____

30. per hanc prōvinciam

____

31. hōc gladiō

____

32. istud carmen magnum

____

33. sine illō librō

____

34. istō timōre

____

35. haec urbs antīqua

36. moenia illa

37. hīs dē causīs

38. illārum virtūtum

39. huius īnsulae

40. sub hōc caelō

D. Translate these short sentences containing demonstrative adjectives and pronouns.

1. Cūr ille rēx haec dīxit?

2. Hoc illī fēminae datum est.

3. Nē iste fīlius mala facta faceret.

4. Haec ā meā sorōre dīcentur.

5. Ad illam urbem missī sīmus.

6. Spurius et Lūcius in viā ambulābant. Hunc vīdī, sed nōn illum.

7. Hīs verbīs movēbere. Verbīs huius movēbar.

8. Haec illud dīxit. Dīxistīne haec? Audīvistīne hanc vōcem?

9. Catōnī illī erat multa sapientia.

10. Misera est vīta istīus hominis.

11. Omnēs Rōmulī illīus semper meminerimus.

12. Dūxistīne, ō Caesar, istōs mīlitēs in illud ingēns perīculum?

13. Nē in hoc templum īveris. Ante āram mēcum manē.

14. Carmina et Ovidiī et Vergiliī lēgī. Ingenium huius poētae laudāverim, artem illīus.

Drill 78 The Relative Pronoun and the Relative Clause

A. Recite from memory the forms of the relative pronoun in Latin, across the singular and then across the plural.

B. Identify these forms by gender, number, and case. Give all possibilities.

Example: quōrum **masc. pl. gen.; neut. pl. gen.**

1. quam ____________________
2. cui ____________________
3. quae ____________________
4. quōs ____________________
5. quibus ____________________
6. quem ____________________
7. quō ____________________
8. quī ____________________
9. quod ____________________
10. cuius ____________________
11. quārum ____________________
12. quās ____________________
13. quā ____________________
14. quōrum ____________________

C. 1. Underline the relative clause once and the relative pronoun twice.
2. Explain the gender, number, and case of the relative pronoun.
3. Translate.

Example: 1. **Vīdī domōs quās vīdistī.**
2. quās **= fem. pl. to agree with antecedent (domōs)**
= acc., d.o. of vīdistī.
3. **I saw the houses that you saw.**

1. Rēx ācer prōvinciam in quā vīvimus vī regit.

____

____

____

2. Pulchra sunt carmina quae poēta cecinit.

____

____

____

3. Mīlitī quī ad bellum mittitur sunt arma patris.

____

____

____

4. Caesar est vir quem multī mortālēs timent.

____

____

____

5. Auxiliumne umquam mittētis, ō sociī, quod petimus?

____

____

____

6. Īnfēlīx erat agricola cuius agrī ab hostibus erant captī.

____

____

____

7. Dā mihi id ferrum quō rēgem interfēcistī.

8. Eam virtūtem quam cupis habeō.

9. Iī quibus cāra est patria bellum inter cīvēs ōdērunt.

10. Vir quem vīdistī pater meus est.

11. Omnēs amīcōs quibus salūs urbis erat cūrae ad sē vocāvit.

12. Malum erat illud quod difficulter ferēbāmus.

13. Habēsne nunc ea quibus carēbās?

14. Haec scrīberet poēta cui erat ingenium magnum.

15. Frātrēs quōrum pater māterque Rōmam abierant rūrī manēbant.

16. Eī quī bene pugnābit aurum dōnābō.

17. In illa templa fugiāmus quae dī magnī tenent.

18. Hunc virum ōdī, cuius sorōrem amō.

19. Ea quae dīxit rēx nōn audīvimus.

20. Cīvēs eārum urbium ad quās accēdēbant hostēs arma capiēbant.

D. For each of the following English sentences:

1. Underline the relative clause once and the relative pronoun twice.
2. Explain the gender, number, and case required to translate the relative pronoun into Latin.
3. Write in Latin *only* the correct form of the relative pronoun.

Example: 1. **Women who work do not cook dinner.**

2. **rel. pron. = fem. pl. to agree with antecedent (women)**
= nom., subj. of "work"

3. **quae**

1. I have more concern for the soul, which is immortal, than for the body.

2. A poet whose books are read by all has great influence.

3. I pity those slaves whom the master will not free.

4. Place the gifts on the altar that is in the temple.

5. Tell me the reason on account of which you are leaving.

6. Is this the house in which the money was found?

7. Citizens whose rights are taken away should protest.

8. The words that Cicero spoke aroused both hope and fear.

9. She loves an old man, who happens to be very rich.

10. Mighty are the weapons with which we shall fight.

11. Have you read the book that my brother wrote?

12. The girl for whom I have a message cannot be found.

13. Catullus, who died at thirty, may have had tuberculosis.

14. We ought to choose a king whom we all trust.

15. The soldiers will defend the city walls, which defend the city.

16. Why should a man fear the fate that awaits him?

17. Those things that you said about me were most unkind.

18. The allies to whom we had sent weapons defeated the enemies in battle.

19. The man whom the gods hate conducts a hard life.

20. The island toward which we are sailing seems beautiful.

Drill 79 Special Features of the Relative Pronoun

Translate these sentences containing relative clauses.

1. Quī mē ōdit meus inimīcus est.

2. Vidēsne quod videō? Tūne vidēs quae ego?

3. Horātius novum carmen ac pulchrum scrīpsit. Quod postquam lēgī, eum multum laudāvī.

4. Bellum inter cīvēs nunc cupis ac movēs. Propter quod hostis ab omnibus bonīs habēris.

5. Errant quī fortūnam fugiunt.

6. Quem bellum atque arma nōn terrent, eī est animus certus.

7. Homō impius pecūniam populī sibi cēpit et fēminam suam interfēcit. Quae sī vēra sint, poenās dabit.

8. Dīcere quae dēbeō certā dē causā nōn possum.

9. Fac quod bonum est.

10. Quī multōs librōs lēgit cīvēs dūcere dēbet.

11. Cūr, quae habēre nōn potes, ea petis?

12. Quōs in perīculum mīsistī, eōs ego in salūtem dūcam.

Drill 80–81 Interrogative Pronouns and Adjectives

A. 1. Translate these short sentences.
   2. Identify each italicized word as either an *interrogative pronoun* or *interrogative adjective*.

1. *Quis* nōs dūcet?

2. *Quae* moenia vīsa sunt?

3. *Quod* ferrum optās?

4. *Cuius* fātō moveātur?

5. *Cui* deō cūrās dīxistī?

6. *Quōs* in viā vidēre potuerim?

7. *Quid* agis? *Quid* malī agis? *Quae* mala ēgistī?

8. Dē *quibus* mortālibus dīxit?

9. *Quōrum* poētārum carmina audīmus?

10. *Quō* ex oppidō vēnērunt? Ad *quam* urbem ībunt? *Quī* hominēs sunt?

11. *Quae* prō *quibus* capere dēbeō?

12. Ā *quō* auxilium petis?

13. *Quem* servum dominus servitūte līberābit?

14. *Quid* novī nōbīs dīcere potes?

15. In *quā* parte urbis vīvēbās?

16. *Cui* servitūs odiō nōn sit?

B. 1. Write in Latin *only* the italicized words.
   2. Indicate for each whether you wrote an *interrogative pronoun* or an *interrogative adjective.*

1. *To whom* (pl.) will she give the gifts?

2. *With whose sword* were you fighting?

3. *Who* said that the city would fall?

4. *What towns* will give aid to Rome in the war?

5. *What* did you say?

6. *Which soldiers* did the king order to fight?

7. *Whose (pl.)* books were left in the house?

8. *With what spirit* did you undertake this task?

9. *Toward which lands* were the slaves sent?

____

10. *What things* did you hear in the forum?

____

11. *With what friends* were you walking?

____

12. *What* are you afraid of?

____

13. *By what poet* was this book written?

____

14. *Whom* shall we choose to lead us?

____

Exercises, CHAPTER VIII

A. Translate.

1. Ille cui imperium ā populō Rōmānō datum est lēgēs sociīs amīcīsque audacter dat.

2. Ea quae nihil oculīs vīdit multa tamen animō sēnsit. Etenim eī mūnus nōn parvum dī immortālēs dederant.

3. Sunt et sub terrā caeca iūra nātūrae, quae quidem sentit agricola.

4. Quamquam ingēns est mātris amor vestrī, frātrēs, illa mē quoque amat. "Amō," inquit, "vōs omnīs, sed nōn eōdem modō."

5. Quī modus mihi exiliō tandem erit? Quī modus fugae?

6. Quem ad modum, ō sociī, per loca difficilia nōn sequēminī eundem cōnsulem quī prōvinciam vestram lībertāte ante dōnāvit?

7. Illud amīcī mūnus est: quae mortuus cupīvit meminisse, quae iussit perficere.

8. Hic gladius quem pater ante gerēbat ā tē quoque gerātur. Quibus armīs ipse pugnābō?

9. Frāter meus arma in hostīs capere est ausus, sed īnfēlīciter pugnāvit ac mox mortuus est. Saepe post haec eiusdem umbram vīdī vōcemque audīvī.

10. In hōc oppidō maneāmus quod semper nōbīs nostrīsque amīcum fuit.

11. Patriam facile relinquam et mala exilī leviter patiar sī fēmina mēcum haec quoque experīrī poterit.

12. Ab hōc locō cum gaudiō abīmus. Inimīcōs quidem relinquimus. Quī tandem hominēs idem nōn faciant quod nōs ipsī facimus?

13. "Ille quī mē vocāvit quis est?"
"Incertus sum, sed nōs certē oculīs sequitur."
"Fugere cōnēmur."

14. Istī servō īnfēlīcī, quem bellō cēpistī, est animus audāx ac mēns mala. Eum in hāc īnsulā relinque nisi omnia fatēbitur.

15. Caesar fortūnam bellī saepe expertus partem cōpiārum in prōvinciam dūcī, partem hōc locō relinquī iussit. Quae postquam hostēs accēpērunt, cōnsilia bellī cēpēre.

16. Ubi sē in Italiā mōverit illa magna vīs bellī, etiam agricolae cum virtūte pugnāre audēbunt.

17. Etsī difficilis, mī fīlī, est via virtūtis, ego tamen hanc viam sequar. Tū quoque sequī cōnāre. Etiam Cicerōnem illum virtūte superābis sī cōnēre.

18. Haec verba quae ab antīquīs hominibus sunt dicta nōn difficiliter intellegī poterunt sī memineritis magnum eōrum amōrem virtūtis.

19. Studium pecūniae animōs multōrum movet. Tū quoque movēre aurī amōre. Dī, inquam, immortālēs, nē tibi iste amor sit malō!

20. Cōnsul populum meminisse iubēbat illud proelium īnfēlīx in quō mortuī sunt multī cīvēs audācēs. “Ego quidem illa gravia meminerō. Vōs quoque mementōte.”

21. Quid tibi ego mittam mūneris sī bene amīcōs meōs rūrī accipiēs? Hoc, inquam, certum est: multum eīs placēbunt fēlīcia rūra.

22. Illīus hominis quem ut frātrem ante amābam nē meminisse quidem nunc cōnātus sim. Nam quid in mē malī nōn fēcit, quid nōn fassus est?

23. Hoc fatēbor: Sī fortiter cum hoste umquam pugnāvissem, magnā certē glōriā mortuus essem. Mē autem in fugam dedī propter timōrem.

24. Hī cōnsulēs īsdem quibus populus lēgibus pārēre dēbent. Quod quidem quis nōn facile fassus sit?

25. Quem hominēs amant dīs immortālibus quoque placet. Quā ex causā multa illum manent gaudia.

26. Quem ad modum causam meam agēs et quid dīcēs? Age audacter mehercules!

27. Ille miser (fatēbor enim) sub oculīs fēminae fīliaeque est mortuus. Quis hominum eō modō morī optet?

28. Ingēns gaudium quod tibi dōnō petere nē ā dīs quidem ipse audeās.

29. Ubi tandem aut quō sub caelō salūs ipsa petātur? Illō, illō, inquam, locō quem vidētis. In templum Iovis sine morā nōs ferāmus.

30. Quid malī expertus es, mī homō? Quod malum fers? Sī mē sequēre, tē ex hōc locō in salūtem dūcam.

31. Omnēs patrēs, id quod ante oculōs est, in eandem īvēre sententiam. Lēgem enim dē vī ferrī cupiunt.

32. Multī virī, inquam, et bonī et gravēs, aut mortem acerbam aut exilī miseram fugam patiantur sī verbīs lēgum ac nōn sententiīs pāreātur. Idemne hoc sentīs quod ego?

33. Dē nātūrā deōrum multum errāmus. Nam et eīs dīcimus quī nōn intellegunt et ea dīcimus quae nōn intellegimus ipsī.

34. Eōs sociōs quibus multum ā cīvibus dēbētur laudēmus ac mūneribus dōnēmus.

35. Is quī audacter ante moenia pugnāre iussus erat nōn pāruit. Quās tandem poenās dabit?

36. Istum fīlium poētīs trāde, quōrum arte ad virtūtem dūcētur.

37. Nōn is sōlum nōbīs placēre dēbet quī pācem inter Rōmānōs et hostīs fēcit, vērum etiam eī quī in eō bellō graviter passī sunt.

38. Numquam ad facta impia, quem ad modum ante dīxī, caecus erō. Etenim mihi est gravis cūra meōrum cīvium.

39. Dea caeca est Fortūna, ut ferunt antīquī. Dea quoque est Pāx, cui post bellum grave ārās fēcimus.

40. Nē laudāveris omnēs, Iūlia. Est enim modus in omnibus. Eum sōlum laudā quī bene facit ac dīcit.

41. Cicerō, ubi in forō populō dīcēbat, Antōnium īsdem quibus Caesarem verbīs laudābat. Hunc autem timēbat, illum ōderat.

42. Caecī sunt oculī istīus servī ac nihil vidēre potest. Quā dē causā “Caecus” vocētur.

43. Saepe nōbīs patriae lībertās fuit cūrae nōn parvae. Numquam cum eīs quī armīs urbem tenent pācem faciēmus.

44. Ex quā terrā discessistī? Quae perīcula gravia passus es ubi ad hanc nostram patriam veniēbās? Quae tibi erat causa istīus fugae miserae? Quid petēbās?

45. Pater suīs dīxit: "Mors ad mē venit. Nam vīrēs vītaque ē meō corpore cēdunt. Mox certē umbra erō." Oculī eius post haec ad caelum errābant. Pāx tandem eī cum morte data est.

46. In eandem sententiam tandem vēnērunt iī quibus aut odium ācre erat aut timor gravis istīus rēgis: nōs omnēs eum ad mortem mittere cupiēbāmus. Quod autem numquam perfēcimus quamquam cōnātī saepe sumus.

47. Hī servī captī lībertātem numquam experientur nisi per fugam. Ex hīs terrīs īdem fugere audeant.

48. Postquam hominis corpus in terrā est positum, dictum est: “Sit tibi terra levis.”

49. Et bonī mīlitum in fugam et exsilium ā patribus pellentur. Quod etiam caecus vidēre possit.

50. Cui tandem istud cōnsilium dē bellō placēbit? Misera enim bellī ante oculōs omnium saepe posita sunt. Numquam hominēs prō lībertāte sociōrum pugnāre cupiunt.

51. Quō modō inter sēsē differunt pater et dominus? Huic timōre pārētur, illī amōre. Meus autem dominus mihi relīquit haec quae habeō omnia.

52. Populō dīxit cōnsul: “Omnis mīles ā mē ductus fortiter pugnāvit neque ācre proelium relīquit. Ego ipse vītam prō patriā dare cōnābar, sed nōn potuī.” Quae quidem omnīnō falsa vidēbantur omnibus.

53. Nisi cīvēs lēgī dē vī pāruerint, in viīs pugnābitur ac multī mortālēs morientur. Bellum inter cīvēs numquam vīdī, numquam vidēre optō.

54. Ego, quamquam tē amābam et tibi placēbam, caecus tamen animō eram. Equidem īdem sum quī semper fuī. Cūr tandem mē nunc ōdistī? Levis mihi vidēris puella ac falsa.

55. Cōnsul ipse illud patribus dīxit: "Haec meīs oculīs vīdī. Cīvēs cum cīvibus pugnant. Pars mīlitum sē in fugam cum Gaiō dedērunt, pars Antōnium sequuntur. Quō tandem modō pācem habēre poterimus nisi in exsilium impiōs ēgerimus?"

56. Illud gaudium vocātur: ubi laetus est animus ac sine cūrīs. Quī miser vīvit gaudium nōn experītur.

57. Si ista dicta, homō audāx, dē cōnsulibus dīcere ausus essēs quae nunc dē mē līberē dīcis, gravīs poenās dedissēs.

B. Write in Latin with some attention to good Latin word order.

1. On account of the flight of the allies, these auxiliary troops were not able to follow the forces of the enemies when they fled toward their own city walls.

2. You yourself tried to kill the unfortunate consul, reckless man, and you dared to attack him with that sword of yours. Confess!

3. If only you were feeling the same thing that I (feel) about the laws of the homeland! If only all men would obey them!

4. What things, then, will you do, Lucius? How will you tell the citizens about the serious dangers of war?

5. What books please you? Have you ever read the poems that were written by that (famous) poet who was driven into exile on account of the huge anger of Caesar?

6. Who of us, I ask you, would be able to endure exile in an unfriendly land? Do not abandon your homeland! Indeed those to whom you are dear will not allow you to go if you should ever try to depart.

7. You ought to pass a law, senators, concerning peace in the provinces. And in this way the allies finally might receive the very things that they seek.

8. Those unfortunate slaves, whose homeland had been captured by war, were experiencing a new master. They always used to obey his harsh words, but when that man died, he did not hand over freedom to them.

9. What would your sister have suffered if you had been sent into exile? If she had attempted to follow you, would you have left that wretched woman behind in Rome?

10. "I saw with my eyes," he says, "and I experienced often the reckless deeds of this wicked woman. She even tried to carry away gifts that had been placed in the temples for the good gods. Finally, she dared to attack the consul himself. And because of this treachery that important man might have died."

11. (He) who abandons a dear friend driven into exile is pleasing neither to gods nor to men. What, I ask you, of evils will this man not suffer?

12. Who would not desire safety and peace before all things? If, I say, those men who rule the province should pass the same law about violence that Roman citizens obey, every human being who lives in that place would conduct a fortunate life.

Drill 83 Quantitative Meter, Scansion

A. Fill in the blanks.

1. The mute/liquid rule states ______________________________

______________________________.

2. Write out from memory the scheme of the dactylic hexameter. Mark foot divisions.

______________________________.

3. Write out from memory the scheme of the elegiac couplet. Mark foot divisions.

____

______________________________.

4 Elision is ______________________________

______________________________.

5. A caesura occurs when ______________________________

______________________________.

6. The principal caesura is ______________________________

______________________________.

7. Diaeresis occurs when ______________________________

______________________________.

8. Hiatus occurs when ______________________________

______________________________.

B. 1. Scan the following passages, marking long (–) and short (˘) syllables, foot divisions (/), elisions (‿), and principal caesura(e) (//).

2. Read out loud the scanned passages.

Dactylic Hexameter

1. Arcades hīs ōrīs, genus ā Pallante profectum,
qui rēgem Ēvandrum comitēs, quī signa secūtī,
dēlēgēre locum et posuēre in montibus urbem
Pallantis proavī dē nōmine Pallantēum.
hī bellum adsiduē dūcunt cum gente Latīnā;
hōs castrīs adhibē sociōs et foedera iunge.
ipse ego tē rīpīs et rēctō flūmine dūcam . . .

2. hostis habet mūrōs; ruit altō ā culmine Troia.
sat patriae Priamōque datum: sī Pergama dextrā
dēfendī possent, etiam hāc dēfēnsa fuissent.
sacra suōsque tibī[1] commendat Troia Penātīs;
hōs cape fātōrum comitēs, hīs moenia quaere . . .

3. (heu furiīs incēnsa feror!): nunc augur Apollō,
nunc Lyciae sortēs, nunc et Iove missus ab ipsō
interpres dīvum fert horrida iussa per aurās.
scīlicet is superīs labor est, ea cūra quiētōs
sollicitat. neque tē teneō neque dicta refellō:
ī, sequere Ītaliam ventīs, pete rēgna per undās.

---

[1] The final **-i** of **tibi** here scans *long*.

4. Raedārum custōs numquam latrāvit ineptē,
   nunc silet et cinerēs vindicat umbra suōs.

5. sīc ego nec sine tē nec tēcum vīvere possum,
   et videor vōtī nescius esse meī.

6. Cynthia tē vātem fēcit, lascīve Propertī;
   ingenium Gallī pulchra Lycōris erat;
fāma est argūtī Nemesis formōsa Tibullī;
   Lesbia dictāvit, docte Catulle, tibi:

7. nōn haec Calliopē, nōn haec mihi cantat Apollō.
   ingenium nōbīs ipsa puella facit.

8. tūne audīre potes vēsānī murmura pontī
   fortis, et in dūrā nāve iacēre potes?
tū pedibus tenerīs positās fulcīre pruīnās,
   tū potes īnsolitās, Cynthia, ferre nivēs?
ō utinam hībernae duplicentur tempora brūmae
   et sit iners tardīs nāvita Vergiliīs,
nec tibi Tyrrhēnā solvātur fūnis harēnā,
   nēve inimīca meās ēlevet aura precēs!

Introduction Summary   Rules for Pronunciation

Consonants

b as **b**, but **bs** as the **ps** of ta**ps**; **bt** as the **pt** of a**pt**
c as the **c** of **c**art (hard **c**)
g as the **g** of **g**et (hard **g**)
h as the **h** of **h**at
i, as consonant, as the **y** of **y**awn
n as **n**, but **nc** as the **nk** of ba**nk**; **ng** as the **ng** of ha**ng**
qu as the **qu** of **qu**it
r as a rolled **r**
s as the **s** of **s**erpent
v (consonantal **u**) as the **w** of **w**et
x as the **x** of a**x**e
z as the **dz** of ga**dz**ooks
ch as the **ch** of **ch**aracter
ph as the **p** of **p**eople
th as the **t** of **t**ea

Vowels and Diphthongs

a as the **a** of **a**lert or the **u** of c**u**p
ā as the **a** of f**a**ther
e as the **e** of p**e**t
ē as the **a** of f**a**te
i as the **i** of f**i**t
ī as the **ee** of f**ee**t
o as the **o** of s**o**ft
ō as the **o** of h**o**pe
u as the **u** of p**u**t
ū as the **oo** of f**oo**l

ae as the **i** of h**i**gh
oe as the **oy** of b**oy**
ei as the **ay** of d**ay**
ui as the **wi** of t**wi**n
au as the **ow** of h**ow**
eu as Elmer Fudd would pronounce the **er** of v**er**y (v**ew**y)

Syllables

ultima	last syllable
penult	almost last syllable (second last)
antepenult	syllable before the almost last syllable (third last)

long by nature	syllable containing a long vowel or diphthong
long by position	short vowel in syllable followed by two or more consonants

Law of the penult   If the *penult* is *long*, it is *stressed*.
If the *penult* is *short*, the *antepenult* is *stressed*.

CHAPTER I

Vocabulary

agricola, **agricolae** *m.* farmer
➤ **anima**, **animae** *f.* life force; soul[1]
dea, **deae** *f.* goddess
➤ **fāma**, **fāmae** *f.* report, rumor; reputation, fame
fēmina, **fēminae** *f.* woman; wife
fīlia, **fīliae** *f.* daughter
īnsula, **īnsulae** *f.* island
Italia, **Italiae** *f.* Italy
nauta, **nautae** *m.* sailor
patria, **patriae** *f.* country, homeland
pecūnia, **pecūniae** *f.* money
poēta, **poētae** *m.* poet
puella, **puellae** *f.* girl
rēgīna, **rēgīnae** *f.* queen
via, **viae** *f.* way, road, street, path

ager, **agrī** *m.* field
➤ **deus**, **deī** *m.* god
➤ **dominus**, **dominī** *m.* master, lord
fīlius, **fīliī** *m.* son
gladius, **gladiī** *m.* sword
liber, **librī** *m.* book
puer, **puerī** *m.* boy
servus, **servī** *m.* slave
vir, **virī** *m.* man; husband

aurum, **aurī** *n.* gold
bellum, **bellī** *n.* war
➤ **cōnsilium**, **cōnsiliī** *n.* deliberation; plan, advice; judgment
dōnum, **dōnī** *n.* gift
factum, **factī** *n.* deed
➤ **ferrum**, **ferrī** *n.* iron; sword
oppidum, **oppidī** *n.* town
perīculum, **perīculī** *n.* danger
verbum, **verbī** *n.* word

➤ **ā**, **ab** (prep. + abl.) (away) from
➤ **ad** (prep. + acc.) toward, to
cum (prep. + abl.) with
➤ **dē** (prep. + abl.) (down) from; about, concerning
➤ **ē**, **ex** (prep. + abl.) (out) from
➤ **et** (conj.) and
  et . . . et . . . both . . . and . . .
  (adv.) even, also
➤ **in** (prep. + acc.) into, onto; against
  (prep. + abl.) in, on
ō (interj.) O
➤ **-que** (enclitic conj.) and

---

[1] An arrow next to a vocabulary entry indicates that there is additional important information about this entry in the **vocabulary notes** that follow.

Chapter I Summary Noun Morphology and Syntax

		First Declension		*Second Declension Masc./Fem.*		*Second Declension Neuter*	
Noun Morphology		*Sing.*	*Plural*	*Sing.*	*Plural*	*Sing.*	*Plural*
Nominative	1. subject 2. predicate nominative	**-a**	**-ae**	**-us/–**[1]	**-ī**	**-um**	**-a**
Genitive	"of"	**-ae**	**-ārum**	**-ī**	**-ōrum**	**-ī**	**-ōrum**
Dative	"to," "for"	**-ae**	**-īs**	**-ō**	**-īs**	**-ō**	**-īs**
Accusative	1. direct object 2. with certain prepositions	**-am**	**-ās**	**-um**	**-ōs**	**-um**	**-a**
Ablative	1. "from" 2. "by," "with" 3. "in," "on"	**-ā**	**-īs**	**-ō**	**-īs**	**-ō**	**-īs**
Vocative	direct address	**-a**	**-ae**	**-e**[2]	**-ī**	**-um**	**-a**

DETERMINE THE *DECLENSION* OF A NOUN BY LOOKING AT THE GENITIVE SINGULAR OF THE FULL VOCABULARY ENTRY. A GENITIVE SINGULAR ENDING IN **-ae** INDICATES THAT A NOUN BELONGS TO THE FIRST DECLENSION; A GENITIVE SINGULAR ENDING IN **-ī** INDICATES THAT A NOUN BELONGS TO THE SECOND DECLENSION.

To decline a noun: 1. get the stem from the genitive singular in the full vocabulary entry
(e.g., **puell-** from **puella, *puell*ae,** *f.*, girl; or **libr-** from **liber, *libr*ī,** *m.*, book)
2. add the appropriate case endings to the stem

Noun Syntax

Nominative, Subject	Expresses the Subject (that which is spoken about) of a verb
Predicate Nominative	Expresses an element that is *equivalent to* the subject and is joined to it by a *linking* or *copulative* verb
Genitive of Possession	Expresses a person or thing who *owns* or *possesses* another noun
Dative of Reference	Expresses a person *with reference to whom* the action of the verb occurs
Dative of Indirect Object	1. Expresses the person or thing *indirectly* interested in the action of the verb 2. Most often occurs with verbs of *giving, showing,* or *telling*
Accusative, Direct Object	Expresses the person or thing *receiving the action of the verb*
Ablative of Accompaniment	1. Expresses the person or thing that *accompanies* another noun in the sentence 2. *Always* uses the preposition **cum**
Ablative of Means	1. Expresses the *thing by means of which* an action is performed 2. *Never* uses a preposition

---

[1] Some second-declension nouns do NOT use this ending but instead end in either **-r** or **-er**. The nominative singular must be memorized as part of the full vocabulary entry.

[2] nom. sing. **-us** > voc. sing **-e** (**servus** > serve)
nom. sing. **-ius** > voc. sing. **-ī** (**fīlius** > fīlī)
nom. sing. **-r/-er** > voc. sing. **-r/-er** (puer > puer)

CHAPTER II

Vocabulary

cūra, cūrae *f.* care, concern; anxiety
➤ **īra, īrae** *f.* anger, wrath
poena, poenae *f.* punishment, penalty
sapientia, sapientiae *f.* wisdom
vīta, vītae *f.* life

➤ **animus, animī** *m.* (rational) soul, mind; spirit; *pl.*, strong feelings
➤ **arma, armōrum** *n. pl.* arms, weapons
studium, studiī *n.* zeal, enthusiasm; pursuit, study
vēlum, vēlī *n.* sail

➤ **ambulō, ambulāre, ambulāvī, ambulātum** (1-intr.) walk
➤ **amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus** (1-tr.) love
➤ **cōgitō** (1-tr.) think; ponder
➤ **dō, dare, dedī, datus** give, grant
  ➤ **poenās dare** (idiom) to pay the penalty
  ➤ **vēla dare** (idiom) to set sail
➤ **dōnō** (1-tr.) give; present, reward
errō (1-intr.) wander; err, make a mistake
labōrō (1-intr.) work; suffer, be distressed
➤ **mōnstrō** (1-tr.) show, point out
➤ **optō** (1-tr.) desire
➤ **vocō** (1-tr.) call; summon; name

➤ **dēbeō, dēbēre, dēbuī, dēbitus** owe; ought
habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus have, hold; consider
➤ **iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussus** order
➤ **moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus** set in motion, stir (up), move
➤ **respondeō, respondēre, respondī, respōnsus** answer, respond
➤ **timeō, timēre, timuī,** — fear, be afraid (of)
videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsus see

➤ **sum, esse, fuī, futūrus** be; exist
➤ **possum, posse, potuī,** — be able, can

cūr (interrog. adv.) why
➤ **enim** (postpositive conj.) in fact, indeed; for
etenim (conj.) and indeed; for in fact
➤ **nam** (conj.) for
namque (conj.) for in fact
➤ **-ne** (interrog. enclitic particle) *added to the first word of a question*
➤ **neque** or **nec** (conj.-adv.) and not
  neque/nec . . . **neque/nec** . . . neither . . . nor . . .
➤ **nōn** (adv.) not
sed (conj.) but

Chapter II Summary Verb Morphology

Present Active Indicative System of 1st- and 2nd-Conjugation Verbs

Present	**Imperfect**	**Future**
Take stem from 2nd prin. part (by dropping **-re**)	Take stem from 2nd prin. part (by dropping **-re**)	Take stem from 2nd prin. part (by dropping **-re**)
	Add **-bā-**	Add **-bi-**
Add active personal endings:	Add active personal endings:	Add active personal endings:
Sing.	*Sing.*	*Sing.*
1 **-ō**[1]	1 **-m**	1 **-ō**[2]
2 **-s**	2 **-s**	2 **-s**
3 **-t**	3 **-t**	3 **-t**
Plural	*Plural*	*Plural*
1 **-mus**	1 **-mus**	1 **-mus**
2 **-tis**	2 **-tis**	2 **-tis**
3 **-nt**	3 **-nt**	3 **-nt**[3]

The Irregular Verbs *sum* and *possum*

sum, esse, fuī, futūrus "be, exist"
possum, posse, potuī, —— "be able, can"

Present	**Imperfect**	**Future**
Sing.		
1 **sum**	**eram**	**erō**
2 **es**	**erās**	**eris**
3 **est**	**erat**	**erit**
Plural		
1 **sumus**	**erāmus**	**erimus**
2 **estis**	**erātis**	**eritis**
3 **sunt**	**erant**	**erunt**
Sing.		
1 **possum**	**poteram**	**poterō**
2 **potes**	**poterās**	**poteris**
3 **potest**	**poterat**	**poterit**
Plural		
1 **possumus**	**poterāmus**	**poterimus**
2 **potestis**	**poterātis**	**poteritis**
3 **possunt**	**poterant**	**poterunt**

Long Vowel Rule: Long vowels shorten before **-m, -t, -nt.**

[1] But **vocō** (NOT *vocāō); **moveō** (NOT *movēō).

[2] But **vocābō** (NOT *vocābiō); **movēbō** (NOT *movēbiō).

[3] But **vocābunt** (NOT *vocābint), **movēbunt** (NOT *movēbint).

Chapter II Summary Latin Tenses of the Indicative; Verb and Noun Syntax

Tense Name	*Time*	*Aspect*	*Sample Translation*
Present	present	simple	he sees
		progressive	he is seeing
		repeated	he sees (repeatedly)
Imperfect	past	progressive	he was seeing
		repeated	he saw (repeatedly)/he used to see
Future	future	simple	he will see
		progressive	he will be seeing
		repeated	he will see (repeatedly)
Perfect	1. present	completed	he has seen
	2. past	simple	he saw
Pluperfect	past	completed	he had seen
Future Perfect	future	completed	he will have seen

Complementary Infinitive AN INFINITIVE USED TO *COMPLETE* THE MEANING OF ANOTHER VERB	**Īnsulam *vidēre* possum.** I am able *to see* the island.
Object Infinitive AN INFINITIVE USED AS THE *DIRECT OBJECT* OF ANOTHER VERB	**Agricola *labōrāre* optat.** The farmer desires *to work.*
Dative of the Possessor INDICATES THE *PERSON WHO POSSESSES* SOMETHING	***Dominō* est liber.** *To the master* there is a book. *The master* has a book.

Chapter II Summary Guidelines for Reading Latin Sentences

1. When translating a Latin sentence, **go in order** from left to right. First translate in Latin word order; then give a second version, making minimum necessary changes for clear English. Going in order will allow you to:

    a. note and appreciate nuances of meaning signaled by particular word orders;
    b. give correct sense when ambiguities arise;
    c. most important, *read and understand Latin as it was written.*

2. Assume that the subject of a new sentence is the same as the subject of a preceding sentence if no new nominative subject is expressed.

3. Major grammatical elements (subject, indirect object, direct object)—particularly those referring to *people* rather than *things*—tend to be placed at or near the beginning of a sentence.

4. Genitives are regularly placed *after* the nouns they qualify or limit.

5. Adverbial elements (adverbs, adverbial phrases) are regularly placed *before* the verbs or other words they modify.

6. In questions, verbs tend to be placed *first.*

7. Copulative verbs are generally placed *between* subject and predicate, and predicate nouns and adjectives tend to come first in a sentence or clause.

8. When **sum** means "exist," it tends to come *before* its subject and is often first in a sentence.

9. Postpositive words appear in the second or third position in a sentence. A **postpositive** (< Latin **postpōnō**, "place after") word does not appear first in a sentence. It may be translated first, however, when it connects two sentences and indicates the logical relation between them.

CHAPTER III

Vocabulary

dīligentia, **dīligentiae** *f.* diligence
➤ **incola**, **incolae** *m.* inhabitant
mora, **morae** *f.* delay
➤ **prōvincia**, **prōvinciae** *f.* province
terra, **terrae** *f.* land, earth

➤ **amīcus**, **amīcī** *m.* friend
➤ **forum**, **forī** *n.* public square, marketplace, forum
➤ **imperium**, **imperiī** *n.* power, authority, command; empire
➤ **inimīcus**, **inimīcī** *m.* (personal) enemy
odium, **odiī** *n.* hatred
➤ **populus**, **populī** *m.* (the) people; populace
➤ **Rōmānī**, **Rōmānōrum** *m. pl.* (the) Romans

➤ **nihil** or **nīl** (indeclinable noun) *n.* nothing

laudō (1-tr.) praise
➤ **pugnō** (1-intr.) fight
superō (1-tr.) overcome, conquer; surpass

➤ **teneō**, **tenēre**, **tenuī**, **tentus** hold, grasp; keep, possess; occupy
videō, **vidēre**, **vīdī**, **vīsus** *passive,* be seen; seem (§25)

eō, **īre**, **iī/īvī**, **itum** go (§29)

➤ **amīcus**, **-a**, **-um** friendly (+ dat.)
  ➤ **inimīcus**, **-a**, **-um** unfriendly, hostile (+ dat.)
bonus, **-a**, **-um** good
➤ **laetus**, **-a**, **-um** happy
➤ **līber**, **lībera**, **līberum** free
➤ **magnus**, **-a**, **-um** large, big; great
malus, **-a**, **-um** bad, evil
miser, **misera**, **miserum** wretched, pitiable, miserable
multus, **-a**, **-um** much, many
parvus, **-a**, **-um** small, little
➤ **pulcher**, **pulchra**, **pulchrum** beautiful, handsome
Rōmānus, **-a**, **-um** Roman

ā, **ab** (prep. + abl.) by (§24)
➤ **atque** or **ac** (conj.) and (also)
➤ **mox** (adv.) soon; then
nunc (adv.) now
➤ **prō** (prep. + abl.) in front of; on behalf of, for; in return for, instead of
propter (prep. + acc.) on account of, because of
semper (adv.) always
sine (prep. + abl.) without

Chapter III Summary Adjective Morphology, Noun/Adjective Syntax

First-Second-Declension Adjectives: Endings

	Singular			*Plural*		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**-us/—**[1]	**-a**	**-um**	**-ī**	**-ae**	**-a**
Gen.	**-ī**	**-ae**	**-ī**	**-ōrum**	**-ārum**	**-ōrum**
Dat.	**-ō**	**-ae**	**-ō**	**-īs**	**-īs**	**-īs**
Acc.	**-um**	**-am**	**-um**	**-ōs**	**-ās**	**-a**
Abl.	**-ō**	**-ā**	**-ō**	**-īs**	**-īs**	**-īs**
Voc.	**-e**					

Get the stem from the feminine nominative singular by dropping the **-a**.

Noun-Adjective Agreement

Adjectives must always agree with the nouns they modify in *gender, number,* and *case.*

nauta malus (both noun and adj. are masc. sing. nom.)

Substantive Use of the Adjective

1. Adjectives used as nouns are called *substantives.*
2. Translation of a substantive must indicate gender and number.

***Bonus multa* videt.**
The good man sees *many things.*

Predicate Adjective

1. Appears with a copulative verb
2. Always agrees with the noun it modifies in *gender, number,* and *case*

***Clārus* est poēta.**
The poet is *famous.*

Subject Infinitive

An infinitive (a neuter singular verbal noun) may be the *subject* of another verb.

Bonum est *labōrāre.*
To work is good.

Ablative of Personal Agent

1. Expresses the person or agent by whom an action is performed
2. Occurs with verbs in the *passive* voice
3. Requires **ā/ab**

Fīlius *ā rēgīnā* vocābātur.
The son was being summoned *by the queen.*

Ablative of Manner

1. Expresses the way or manner in which an action is performed
2. Requires **cum** when NOT modified by an adjective
3. May use (but does NOT require) **cum** when modified by an adjective
4. May be translated with an "-ly" adverb

***Cum dīligentiā* labōrat.**
She works *with diligence/diligently.*
***Magnā (cum) dīligentiā* labōrat.**
She works *with great diligence/very diligently.*

Appositive

1. Defines or limits another noun next to which it is placed
2. Always agrees with the noun it defines in *case*

Horātius, *poēta* magnus, multōs librōs habet.
Horace, a great *poet,* has many books.

---

[1] Some adjectives have *no* ending for the masculine singular nominative (e.g., **miser, pulcher**). The masculine singular nominative must be memorized as part of the vocabulary entry.

Chapter III Summary Verb Morphology

Present Passive Indicative System of 1st- and 2nd-Conjugation Verbs

Present	**Imperfect**	**Future**
Take stem from 2nd prin. part (by dropping **-re**)	Take stem from 2nd prin. part (by dropping **-re**)	Take stem from 2nd prin. part (by dropping **-re**)
	Add **-bā-**	Add **-bi-**
Add passive personal endings:	Add passive personal endings:	Add passive personal endings:
Sing.	*Sing.*	*Sing.*
1 **-or**[1]	1 **-r**	1 **-or**[2]
2 **-ris/-re**	2 **-ris/-re**	2 **-ris/-re**[3]
3 **-tur**	3 **-tur**	3 **-tur**
Plural	*Plural*	*Plural*
1 **-mur**	1 **-mur**	1 **-mur**
2 **-minī**	2 **-minī**	2 **-minī**
3 **-ntur**	3 **-ntur**	3 **-ntur**[4]

The Irregular Verb *eō*

eō, īre, iī/īvī, itum "go"

Present	**Imperfect**	**Future**
Sing.		
1 **eō**	**ībam**	**ībō**
2 **īs**	**ībās**	**ībis**
3 **it**	**ībat**	**ībit**
Plural		
1 **īmus**	**ībāmus**	**ībimus**
2 **ītis**	**ībātis**	**ībitis**
3 **eunt**	**ībant**	**ībunt**

LONG VOWEL RULE: LONG VOWELS SHORTEN BEFORE **-m, -t, -nt, -r, -ntur.**

---

1. But **vocor** (NOT *vocāor); **moveor** (NOT *movēor).
2. But **vocābor** (NOT *vocābior); **movēbor** (NOT *movēbior).
3. But **vocāberis/vocābere** (NOT *vocābiris/*vocābire); **movēberis/movēbere** (NOT *movēbiris/*movēbire).
4. But **vocābuntur** (NOT *vocābintur); **movēbuntur** (NOT *movēbintur).

CHAPTER IV

Vocabulary

➤ **causa**, **causae** *f.* reason, cause; case
glōria, **glōriae** *f.* renown, glory
invidia, **invidiae** *f.* envy, jealousy; ill-will, resentment
➤ **sententia**, **sententiae** *f.* thought, feeling; opinion

➤ **altum**, **altī** *n.* deep sea; height
➤ **auxilium**, **auxiliī** *n.* aid, help
➤ **auxilia**, **auxiliōrum** *n. pl.* auxiliary troops
caelum, **caelī** *n.* sky, heaven
➤ **socius**, **sociī** *m.* ally, comrade

ego, **meī** (personal pron.) I; me (§37)
nōs, **nostrum/nostrī** (personal pron.) we; us (§37)
tū, **tuī** (personal pron.) you (§37)
vōs, **vestrum/vestrī** (personal pron.) you (pl.) (§37)
is, **ea**, **id** (personal pron.) he, she, it; they; him, her, it; them (§37)

➤ **agō**, **agere**, **ēgī**, **āctus** drive; do; spend, conduct
causam agere (idiom) to plead a case
➤ **canō**, **canere**, **cecinī**, **cantus** sing (of)
➤ **capiō**, **capere**, **cēpī**, **captus** take (up), capture; win
cōnsilium capere (idiom) to form a plan
➤ **dīcō**, **dīcere**, **dīxī**, **dictus** say, speak, tell
➤ **dūcō**, **dūcere**, **dūxī**, **ductus** lead; consider
➤ **faciō**, **facere**, **fēcī**, **factus** make; do
➤ **gerō**, **gerere**, **gessī**, **gestus** bear; manage, conduct; perform
bellum gerere (idiom) to wage war
➤ **mittō**, **mittere**, **mīsī**, **missus** send
➤ **pōnō**, **pōnere**, **posuī**, **positus** put, place; set aside
regō, **regere**, **rēxī**, **rēctus** rule, control
scrībō, **scrībere**, **scrīpsī**, **scrīptus** write

➤ **audiō**, **audīre**, **audīvī**, **audītus** hear, listen (to)
➤ **sentiō**, **sentīre**, **sēnsī**, **sēnsus** perceive; feel
➤ **veniō**, **venīre**, **vēnī**, **ventum** come

is, **ea**, **id** (demonstr. adj.) this, that; these, those (§37)

altus, **-a**, **-um** tall, high; deep
➤ **clārus**, **-a**, **-um** bright, clear; famous
➤ **cupidus**, **-a**, **-um** desirous (+ gen.)
meus, **-a**, **-um** my, mine (§38)
noster, **nostra**, **nostrum** our, ours (§38)
paucī, **paucae**, **pauca** few
socius, **-a**, **-um** allied
tuus, **-a**, **-um** your, yours (§38)
validus, **-a**, **-um** strong; healthy
vester, **vestra**, **vestrum** your (pl.), yours (pl.) (§38)

➤ **per** (prep. + acc.) through; by
➤ **quidem** (postpositive adv.) indeed, certainly; at least
➤ **equidem** (adv.) indeed, certainly; for my part
➤ **nē . . . quidem** not even

Chapter IV Summary Verb Morphology

Active Personal Endings

	Sing.	*Plural*
1	**-ō, -m**	**-mus**
2	**-s**	**-tis**
3	**-t**	**-nt**

Passive Personal Endings

	Sing.	*Plural*
1	**-or, -r**	**-mur**
2	**-ris/-re**	**-minī**
3	**-tur**	**-ntur**

Long Vowel Rule:

LONG VOWELS SHORTEN BEFORE **-m, -t, -nt, -r, -ntur.**

Present Indicative

Take present stem (by dropping **-re**) →

Stem Changes

3rd:	**-e- → -i- (rege- → regi-)**
3rd i-stem:	**-e- → -i- (cape- → capi-)**
4th:	NO CHANGE **(audī-)**

→ Add appropriate (active or passive) personal endings

Exceptions:

1st sing.: **regō, regor** (NOT *regiō, *regior)

2nd sing.: **regeris/regere** (NOT *regiris/*regire); **caperis/capere** (NOT *capiris/*capire)

3rd pl.: **regunt, reguntur** (NOT *regint, *regintur); **capiunt, capiuntur** (NOT *capint, *capintur); **audiunt, audiuntur** (NOT *audint, *audintur)

Imperfect Indicative

Take present stem (by dropping **-re**) →

Stem Changes

3rd:	**-e- → -ē- (rege- → regē-)**
3rd i-stem:	**-e- → -iē- (cape- →capiē-)**
4th:	**-ī- → -iē- (audī- → audiē-)**

→ Add **-bā-** → Add appropriate (active or passive) personal endings

---

Future Indicative

Take present stem (by dropping **-re**) →

Stem Changes

3rd:	**-e- → -ē- (rege- → regē-)**
3rd i-stem:	**-e- → -iē- (cape- → capiē-)**
4th:	**-ī- → -iē- (audī- → audiē-)**

→ Add appropriate (active or passive) personal endings

Exceptions:

1st sing.: **regam, regar** (NOT *regem, *reger); **capiam, capiar** (NOT *capiem, *capier); **audiam, audiar** (NOT *audiem, *audier)

Present Passive Infinitive: Change final **-e** of 2nd prin. part to **-ī**. In 3rd conjugation change final **-ere** to **-ī.**

Imperative	*Present Active Sing.*	*Present Active Pl.*	*Present Passive Sing.*	*Present Passive Pl.*
	Present Stem	Present Stem + **-te**	Present Stem + **-re**	Present Stem + **-minī**
Exceptions:		**regite, capite**		**regiminī, capiminī**
	dīc, dūc, fac, fer	**ferte**		

Chapter IV Summary Personal Pronouns, Noun Syntax

	First Person Personal Pronoun and Possessive Adj.	*Second Person Personal Pronoun and Possessive Adj.*	*Third Person Personal Pronoun*		
	Singular	*Singular*	*Singular*		
			M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**ego**	**tū**	**is**	**ea**	**id**
Gen.	**meī**[1]	**tuī**[1]	**eius**	**eius**	**eius**
Dat.	**mihi**	**tibi**	**eī**	**eī**	**eī**
Acc.	**mē**	**tē**	**eum**	**eam**	**id**
Abl.	**mē**	**tē**	**eō**	**eā**	**eō**
	(Possessive adj.: **meus, -a, -um**[2])	(Possessive adj.: **tuus, -a, -um**)			
	Plural	*Plural*	*Plural*		
			M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**nōs**	**vōs**	**eī/iī**	**eae**	**ea**
Gen.	**nostrum/nostrī**[1]	**vestrum/vestrī**[1]	**eōrum**	**eārum**	**eōrum**
Dat.	**nōbīs**	**vōbīs**	**eīs/iīs**	**eīs/iīs**	**eīs/iīs**
Acc.	**nōs**	**vōs**	**eōs**	**eās**	**ea**
Abl.	**nōbīs**	**vōbīs**	**eīs/iīs**	**eīs/iīs**	**eīs/iīs**
	(Possessive adj.: **noster, nostra, nostrum**)	(Possessive adj.: **vester, vestra, vestrum**)	(For possession, use genitive forms)		

Partitive Genitive

Represents a *whole* out of which another noun is a part

Multī *agricolārum* nōn labōrābant.
Many *of the farmers* were not working.

Subjective Genitive

Expresses the person or thing *performing the verbal action implied in another noun*

Magnum erat odium *Sullae* in Rōmānōs.
Great was the hatred *of Sulla* against the Romans.

Objective Genitive

1. Expresses the person or thing *receiving the verbal action implied in another noun*
2. May be translated with English "for"

Rēgīna odium *populī* habet.
The queen has hatred *of (for) the people.*

Ablative of Respect

1. *Limits* or *specifies* the meaning of an adjective or verb or sentence
2. *No* preposition used

Magnus *cōnsiliō* erat poēta.
The poet was great *in (respect to) judgment.*

[1] **meī** and **tuī** may be Partitive or Objective Genitive only; **nostrum** and **vestrum** may be Partitive Genitive only; **nostrī** and **vestrī** may be Objective Genitive only.

[2] Masc. sing. voc. of **meus** is **mī**.

CHAPTER V

Vocabulary

➤ **amīcitia**, **amīcitiae** *f.* friendship
  ➤**inimīcitia**, **inimīcitiae** *f.* enmity, hostility

➤ **fātum**, **fātī** *n.* destiny, fate
proelium, **proeliī** *n.* battle

➤ —, **meī** (reflexive pron.) myself (§44)
➤ —, **nostrum/nostrī** (reflexive pron.) ourselves (§44)
➤ —, **tuī** (reflexive pron.) yourself (§44)
➤ —, **vestrum/vestrī** (reflexive pron.) yourselves (§44)
➤ —, **suī** (reflexive pron.) himself, herself, itself; themselves (§44)

➤ **accipiō**, **accipere**, **accēpī**, **acceptus** receive; accept; hear (of), learn (of)
➤ **cēdō**, **cēdere**, **cessī**, **cessum** go, move; yield; withdraw
  ➤ **accēdō**, **accēdere**, **accessī**, **accessum** go to, come to, approach
  ➤ **discēdō**, **discēdere**, **discessī**, **discessum** go away, depart
➤ **interficiō**, **interficere**, **interfēcī**, **interfectus** kill
➤ **perficiō**, **perficere**, **perfēcī**, **perfectus** complete, accomplish

➤ **abeō**, **abīre**, **abiī**, **abitum** go away
➤ **ferō**, **ferre**, **tulī**, **lātus** bring, bear, carry; endure (§43)
  ➤ **sē ferre** (idiom) to proceed (quickly)
➤ **meminī**, **meminisse** (defective verb) remember
➤ **ōdī**, **ōdisse** (defective verb) hate
➤ **redeō**, **redīre**, **rediī**, **reditum** go back, return

dūrus, **-a**, **-um** hard; harsh
ipse, **ipsa**, **ipsum** (intensive adj.) -self, -selves; very (§46)
meus, **-a**, **-um** my (own) (§45)
noster, **nostra**, **nostrum** our (own) (§45)
➤ **pius**, **-a**, **-um** dutiful, loyal
  ➤ **impius**, **-a**, **-um** disloyal, wicked
suus, **-a**, **-um** his (own), her (own), its (own); their (own) (§45)
tuus, **-a**, **-um** your (own) (§45)
vester, **vestra**, **vestrum** your (pl.) (own) (§45)

bene (adv.) well
etsī (conj.) although
➤ **male** (adv.) badly
multum (adv.) much, a lot
nisi (conj.) if . . . not, unless
postquam (conj.) after
quamquam (conj.) although
quoniam (conj.) since, because
sī (conj.) if
➤ **sīc** (adv.) so, thus, in this way, in such a way
➤ **tamen** (adv.) nevertheless
➤ **ubi** (conj.) when; (interrog. adv.) where, when
➤ **ut** (conj.) as; when
valdē (adv.) strongly

Chapter V Summary Verb Morphology and Syntax

Perfect Active Indicative System for All Verbs

Perfect[1]	**Pluperfect**[2]	**Future Perfect**[3]
Take stem from 3rd prin. part (by dropping **-ī**)	Take stem from 3rd prin. part (by dropping **-ī**) Add **-erā-**	Take stem from 3rd prin. part (by dropping **-ī**) Add **-eri-**
Add active personal endings:	Add active personal endings:	Add active personal endings:
Sing.	*Sing.*	*Sing.*
1 **-ī**	1 **-m**	1 **-ō**[4]
2 **-istī**	2 **-s**	2 **-s**
3 **-it**	3 **-t**	3 **-t**
Plural	*Plural*	*Plural*
1 **-imus**	1 **-mus**	1 **-mus**
2 **-istis**	2 **-tis**	2 **-tis**
3 **-ērunt/-ēre**	3 **-nt**	3 **-nt**

The Irregular 3rd-Conjugation Verb *ferō*

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus "bring, bear, carry; endure"

Present Indicative

	Active	Passive
Sing.		
1	**ferō**	**feror**
2	***fers***	***ferris/ferre***
3	***fert***	***fertur***
Plural		
1	**ferimus**	**ferimur**
2	***fertis***	**feriminī**
3	**ferunt**	**feruntur**

	Present Imperative		**Present Infinitive**	
	Active	Passive	Active	Passive
Sing.	***fer***	***ferre***	***ferre***	***ferrī***
Pl.	***ferte***	**feriminī**		

Long Vowel Rule: Long vowels shorten before **-m, -t, -nt, -r, -ntur.**

Summary of Conditional Sentences

Name	**Verbs in Latin**	**Verbs in English**[5]
Present Simple	Present indicative in both protasis and apodosis[6]	No special translation
Past Simple	Any past tense of the indicative in both protasis and apodosis	No special translation
Future More Vivid (FMV)	Future indicative in both protasis and apodosis	Present ("does") in protasis, Future ("will do") in apodosis
Future More Vivid with Emphatic protasis (FMVE)	Future perfect indicative in protasis, future indicative in apodosis	Present ("does") in protasis, Future ("will do") in apodosis

---

1. The perfect tense may be EITHER present time with completed aspect (e.g., "I have seen") OR past time with simple aspect (e.g., "I saw").
2. The pluperfect tense is past time with completed aspect (e.g., "I had seen").
3. The future perfect tense is future time with completed aspect (e.g., "I shall have seen").
4. But **rēxerō** (NOT *rēxeriō).
5. The model verb "do" is used in English translation formulas.
6. A **protasis** is the subordinate clause (or "if-clause") of a conditional sentence. An **apodosis** is the main clause of a conditional sentence.

Chapter V Summary Reflexive Pronouns, Subordinate Clauses, Intensive Adjective, Adverbs

	First Person Reflexive Pronoun	**Second Person Reflexive Pronoun**	**Third Person Reflexive Pronoun**
	Singular	*Singular*	*Singular AND Plural*
Nom.	——[1]	——[1]	——[1]
Gen.	**meī**[2]	**tuī**[2]	**suī**[2]
Dat.	**mihi**	**tibi**	**sibi**
Acc.	**mē**	**tē**	**sē, sēsē**
Abl.	**mē**	**tē**	**sē, sēsē**
	(Reflexive-possessive adj.: **meus, -a, -um**)	(Reflexive-possessive adj.: **tuus, -a, -um**)	(Reflexive-possessive adj.: **suus, -a, -um**)
	Plural	*Plural*	
Nom.	——[1]	——[1]	
Gen.	**nostrum/nostrī**[2]	**vestrum/vestrī**[2]	
Dat.	**nōbīs**	**vōbīs**	
Acc.	**nōs**	**vōs**	
Abl.	**nōbīs**	**vōbīs**	
	(Reflexive-possessive adj.: **noster, nostra, nostrum**)	(Reflexive-possessive adj.: **vester, vestra, vestrum**)	

[1] There are no nominative forms of the reflexive pronouns because reflexive pronouns refer to but never are the subjects of clauses or sentences in which they appear.

[2] **meī**, **tuī**, and **suī** may be Partitive or Objective Genitive only; **nostrum** and **vestrum** may be Partitive Genitive only; **nostrī** and **vestrī** may be Objective Genitive only.

Conjunctions Introducing Subordinate Clauses

Type of Clause	*Conjunction*
Temporal	**postquam** after
	ut when
	ubi when
Causal	**quoniam** since
Comparative	**ut** as
Concessive	**etsī** although
	quamquam although
Conditional	**sī** if
	nisi if . . . not, unless

The Intensive Adjective *ipse, ipsa, ipsum* -self, -selves, very

	Singular			*Plural*		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**ipse**	**ipsa**	**ipsum**	**ipsī**	**ipsae**	**ipsa**
Gen.	**ipsīus**	**ipsīus**	**ipsīus**	**ipsōrum**	**ipsārum**	**ipsōrum**
Dat.	**ipsī**	**ipsī**	**ipsī**	**ipsīs**	**ipsīs**	**ipsīs**
Acc.	**ipsum**	**ipsam**	**ipsum**	**ipsōs**	**ipsās**	**ipsa**
Abl.	**ipsō**	**ipsā**	**ipsō**	**ipsīs**	**ipsīs**	**ipsīs**

Adverbs

1. Take stem (by dropping ending of the fem. sing. nom. of 1st-2nd-declension adj.)
2. Add **-ē**

Irregular Adverbs

bene well	**multum** much, a lot
male badly	**valdē** strongly

CHAPTER VI

Vocabulary

➤ **Athēnae**, **Athēnārum** *f. pl.* Athens
Rōma, **Rōmae** *f.* Rome

dictum, **dictī** *n.* word; saying
domus, **domī** *f.* house, home

➤ **amor**, **amōris** *m.* love
animal, **animālis**, **-ium** *n.* animal
➤ **carmen**, **carminis** *n.* song, poem
➤ **Carthāgō**, **Carthāginis** *f.* Carthage
➤ **cīvis**, **cīvis**, **-ium** *m.* or *f.* citizen
corpus, **corporis** *n.* body
➤ **homō**, **hominis** *m.* human being, man
➤ **hostis**, **hostis**, **-ium** *m.* (public) enemy
➤ **iūs**, **iūris** *n.* right, law; judgment; court
➤ **mare**, **maris**, ***-ium** *n.* sea
māter, **mātris** *f.* mother
➤ **mēns**, **mentis**, **-ium** *f.* mind; intention, purpose; attitude
mīles, **mīlitis** *m.* soldier
➤ **moenia**, **moenium** *n. pl.* (city) walls
pater, **patris** *m.* father
  ➤ **patrēs cōnscrīptī**, *voc. pl.* enrolled fathers, senators
rēx, **rēgis** *m.* king
➤ **rūs**, **rūris** *n. sing. or pl.,* country(side)
➤ **servitūs**, **servitūtis** *f.* slavery
timor, **timōris** *m.* fear
➤ **urbs**, **urbis**, **-ium** *f.* city
➤ **vīs**, ——, **-ium** *f.* force, power; violence; *pl.,* strength (§53)

➤ **līberō** (1-tr.) free

➤ **careō**, **carēre**, **caruī**, **caritūrus** lack, be without, be free (from) (+ abl.)

➤ **legō**, **legere**, **lēgī**, **lēctus** choose; read
  ➤ **intellegō**, **intellegere**, **intellēxī**, **intellēctus** understand
➤ **vīvō**, **vīvere**, **vīxī**, **vīctūrus** live, be alive

ācer, **ācris**, **ācre** sharp, keen; fierce
➤ **facilis**, **facile** easy
  ➤ **difficilis**, **difficile** difficult
➤ **fēlīx**, **fēlīcis** lucky, fortunate, happy
  ➤ **īnfēlīx**, **īnfēlīcis** unlucky, unfortunate, unhappy
fortis, **forte** brave; strong
ingēns, **ingentis** huge, vast; remarkable
omnis, **omne** every; all

➤ **autem** (postpositive conj.) however; moreover
difficulter (adv.) with difficulty
facile (adv.) easily; readily
inter (prep. + acc.) between, among; during
➤ **iūre** (adv.) rightly, justly
omnīnō (adv.) entirely; at all
➤ **sub** (prep. + acc.) under; up to
  (prep. + abl.) under; at the foot of; near
umquam (adv.) ever
  numquam (adv.) never

Chapter VI Summary Verb Morphology and Syntax

Perfect Passive Indicative System for All Verbs

Perfect Passive Indicative

Take ALL of the 4th principal part

Add *as a separate word* the present active indicative of **sum**

Remember to adjust for *gender* and *number:* e.g., **rēctus, -a, -um est; rēctī, -ae, -a sunt**

Pluperfect Passive Indicative

Take ALL of the 4th principal part

Add *as a separate word* the imperfect active indicative of **sum**

Remember to adjust for *gender* and *number:* e.g., **rēctus, -a, -um erat; rēctī, -ae, -a erant**

Future Perfect Passive

Take ALL of the 4th principal part

Add *as a separate word* the future active indicative of **sum**

Remember to adjust for *gender* and *number:* e.g., **rēctus, -a, -um erit; rēctī, -ae, -a erunt**

Impersonal Passive

1. *Third person singular passive* of an *intransitive* verb
2. Has no personal subject
3. Reports or emphasizes that the action of a verb is being done with no indication of who performs the action
4. Impersonal passives that are compound verb forms *always* have a perfect passive participle ending in the *neuter* nominative singular **-um.**

Per viās *errātur*.	Through the streets *wandering is being done* . *There is (a) wandering* through the streets.
Bene *pugnatum est* in prōvinciā.	*Fighting was done* well in the province. *There was* good *fighting* in the province.

Chapter VI Summary Noun, Adjective, Adverb Morphology

Case Endings of the Third Declension

(A gen. sing. ending in **-is** indicates that the noun belongs to the *third* declension.)

Masculine/Feminine

	Singular	*Plural*
Nom./Voc.	—[1]	**-ēs**
Gen.	**-is**	**-um**
Dat.	**-ī**	**-ibus**
Acc.	**-em**	**-ēs**
Abl.	**-e**	**-ibus**

Neuter

	Singular	*Plural*
Nom./Voc.	—[1]	**-a**
Gen.	**-is**	**-um**
Dat.	**-ī**	**-ibus**
Acc.	—[1]	**-a**
Abl.	**-e**	**-ibus**

Case Endings of the Third Declension i-Stem

Masculine/Feminine

	Singular	*Plural*
Nom./Voc.	—[1]	**-ēs**
Gen.	**-is**	***-ium***
Dat.	**-ī**	**-ibus**
Acc.	**-em**	**-ēs/*-īs***
Abl.	**-e**	**-ibus**

Neuter

	Singular	*Plural*
Nom./Voc.	—[1]	***-ia***
Gen.	**-is**	***-ium***
Dat.	**-ī**	**-ibus**
Acc.	—[1]	***-ia***
Abl.	***-ī***	**-ibus**

vīs, ——, -ium *f.* force, power; violence; *pl.,* strength

	Singular	*Plural*
Nom./Voc.	**vīs**	**vīrēs**
Gen.	——	**vīrium**
Dat.	——	**vīribus**
Acc.	**vim**	**vīrēs/vīrīs**
Abl.	**vī**	**vīribus**

Case Endings of Third-Declension Adjectives

	Singular			*Plural*		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom./Voc.	—	—	—	**-ēs**	**-ēs**	**-ia**
Gen.	**-is**	**-is**	**-is**	**-ium**	**-ium**	**-ium**
Dat.	**-ī**	**-ī**	**-ī**	**-ibus**	**-ibus**	**-ibus**
Acc.	**-em**	**-em**	—	**-ēs/-īs**	**-ēs/-īs**	**-ia**
Abl.	**-ī**	**-ī**	**-ī**	**-ibus**	**-ibus**	**-ibus**

1. Third-declension adjectives have ALL the features of third-declension i-stem nouns.
2. The ablative singular ending is ALWAYS **-ī**.
3. Third-declension adjectives may have *three endings, two endings,* or *one ending* in the nominative singular. For example:

M. F. N.		M./F. N.		M./F./N.	
ācer, *ācr*is, ācre	Stem = ***ācr-***	***fort*is, forte**	Stem = ***fort-***	**fēlix, *fēlīc*is**	Stem = ***fēlīc-***

Adverbs from Third-Declension Adjectives

1. Take stem (e.g., **fort-**)
2. Add **-iter** (e.g., **fortiter**)

Irregular Adverbs

difficulter with difficulty
facile easily; readily
omnīnō entirely; at all

---

1. A blank appears in the nominative singular because nouns of the third declension show wide variation in this form, and no single ending can be given. A blank appears in the neuter accusative singular because this form is always identical with the neuter nominative singular. The nominative singular must be memorized as the first part of the vocabulary entry for each noun.

Chapter VI Summary Noun Syntax

Ablative of Separation

1. Expresses the idea that someone is apart from someone or something
2. Preposition (**ā/ab**, **ē/ex**, or **dē**) is sometimes used, but more often the Ablative of Separation occurs with no preposition

Populum *perīculō* līberāvit.
He freed the people *from danger.*

Ablative of Cause

1. Expresses the cause or reason for a quality or verbal action
2. No preposition is used

Incolae *īrā* pugnābant.
The inhabitants were fighting *from/ because of anger.*

Ablative of Place From Which

1. Expresses motion from a place
2. Preposition (**ā/ab**, **ē/ex**, or **dē**) is used
3. No preposition is used with names of cities, towns, small islands, **domus**, or **rūs**

Ab *Italiā* vēla dedimus.
We set sail *from Italy.*
***Rōmā* discēdam.**
I shall depart *from Rome.*

Ablative of Place Where

1. Expresses location
2. Preposition (**in**; sometimes **sub**, **prō**) is regularly used

In *oppidō* erant multī nautae.
There were many sailors *in the town.*

Locative Case

1. Case that expresses location
2. Used for names of cities, towns, small islands, **domus**, or **rūs**

***Rōmae* erant multī nautae.**
There were many sailors *in Rome.*

Accusative of Place To Which

1. Expresses motion toward a place
2. Preposition (**ad**, **in**; sometimes **sub**, others) is used
3. No preposition is used with names of cities, towns, small islands, **domus**, or **rūs**

Fēminam ad *prōvinciam* mīsimus.
We sent the woman *to the province.*
Fēminam *Rōmam* mīsimus.
We sent the woman *to Rome.*

Chapter VI Summary Indicative Morphology

Active Personal Endings

	Sing.	*Plural*
1	**-ō, -m**	**-mus**
2	**-s**	**-tis**
3	**-t**	**-nt**

Passive Personal Endings

	Sing.	*Plural*
1	**-or, -r**	**-mur**
2	**-ris/-re**	**-minī**
3	**-tur**	**-ntur**

Long Vowel Rule

LONG VOWELS SHORTEN BEFORE **-m, -t, -nt, -r, -ntur.**

-i- → -e- before -ris, -re

Present Active and Passive
Take present stem from 2nd principal part (by dropping **-re**) →
Stem Changes
1st and 2nd conjugations: NO CHANGE
3rd, 3rd-i-stem conjugations: **-e- → -i-** →
4th conjugation: NO CHANGE
Add appropriate (active or passive) personal endings

But: **voc*ō*, voc*or*; move*ō*, move*or*; reg*ō*, reg*or*, reg*unt*, reg*untur*; cap*iunt*, cap*iuntur*; aud*iō*, aud*ior*, aud*iunt*, aud*iuntur***

Imperfect Active and Passive
Take present stem from 2nd principal part (by dropping **-re**) →
Stem Changes
1st and 2nd conjugations: NO CHANGE
3rd conjugation: **-e- → -ē-**
3rd conjugation i-stem: **-e- → -iē-**
4th conjugation: **-ī- → -iē-**
→ Add **-bā-** →
Add appropriate (active or passive) personal endings

Future Active and Passive
Take present stem from 2nd principal part (by dropping **-re**) →
Stem Changes
1st and 2nd conjugations: NO CHANGE → Add **-bi-** →
3rd conjugation: **-e- → -ē-** →
3rd conjugation i-stem: **-e- → -iē-**
4th conjugation: **-ī- → -iē-**
Add appropriate (active or passive) personal endings

But: **vocā*bō*, vocā*bor*, vocā*bunt*, vocā*buntur*; movē*bō*, movē*bor*, movē*bunt*, movē*buntur*; reg*am*, reg*ar*; cap*iam*, cap*iar*; aud*iam*, aud*iar***

Perfect Active
Take perfect active stem from 3rd principal part (by dropping **-ī**)

Add	**-ī**	**-imus**
	-istī	**-istis**
	-it	**-ērunt/-ēre**

Perfect Passive
Take *ALL* of 4th principal part
Add *as a separate word* the *present active indicative* of **sum** (remember to adjust gender and number: e.g., **rēctus, -a, -um est; rēctī, -ae, -a sunt**)

Pluperfect Active
Take perfect active stem from 3rd principal part (by dropping **-ī**)
Add **-erā-**
Add active personal endings (use **-m** for 1st person sing.)

Pluperfect Passive
Take *ALL* of 4th principal part
Add *as a separate word* the *imperfect active indicative* of **sum** (remember to adjust gender and number: e.g., **rēctus, -a, -um erat; rēctī, -ae, -a erant**)

Future Perfect Active
Take perfect active stem from 3rd principal part (by dropping **-ī**)
Add **-eri-**
Add active personal endings (use **-ō** for 1st person sing.)

But: **rēx*erō***

Future Perfect Passive
Take *ALL* of 4th principal part
Add *as a separate word* the *future active indicative* of **sum** (remember to adjust gender and number: e.g., **rēctus, -a, -um erit; rēctī, -ae, -a erunt**)

CHAPTER VII

Vocabulary

āra, **ārae** *f.* altar
➤ **cōpia**, **cōpiae** *f.* abundance; *pl.*, troops, forces
➤ **fortūna**, **fortūnae** *f.* fortune, chance
➤ **īnsidiae**, **īnsidiārum** *f. pl.* ambush, plot, treachery
nātūra, **nātūrae** *f.* nature
umbra, **umbrae** *f.* shadow, shade

➤ **ingenium**, **ingeniī** *n.* nature; disposition; (natural) talent
templum, **templī** *n.* temple

➤ **ars**, **artis**, **-ium** *f.* skill, art; guile, trick
➤ **cīvitās**, **cīvitātis** *f.* state, citizenry; citizenship
frāter, **frātris** *m.* brother
mors, **mortis**, **-ium** *f.* death
➤ **pars**, **partis**, **-ium** *f.* part
soror, **sorōris** *f.* sister
➤ **virtūs**, **virtūtis** *f.* manliness, courage; excellence, virtue
➤ **vōx**, **vōcis** *f.* voice; word

➤ **maneō**, **manēre**, **mānsī**, **mānsūrus** remain, stay; *tr.*, await
➤ **terreō**, **terrēre**, **terruī**, **territus** terrify, frighten

➤ **cupiō**, **cupere**, **cupiī/cupīvī**, **cupītus** desire, long for, want
➤ **fugiō**, **fugere**, **fūgī**, **fugitūrus** flee
➤ **petō**, **petere**, **petiī/petīvī**, **petītus** ask (for), seek; attack
➤ **trādō**, **trādere**, **trādidī**, **trāditus** hand over, surrender; hand down
➤ **vincō**, **vincere**, **vīcī**, **victus** conquer, overcome; *intr.*, win

➤ **auferō**, **auferre**, **abstulī**, **ablātus** carry away, take away, remove
➤ **differō**, **differre**, **distulī**, **dīlātus** *intr.*, differ, be different; *tr.*, carry in different directions

acerbus, **-a**, **-um** bitter; harsh
antīquus, **-a**, **-um** old, ancient
➤ **cārus**, **-a**, **-um** precious; dear (to) (+ dat.)
➤ **certus**, **-a**, **-um** sure, certain, reliable
  incertus, **-a**, **-um** unsure, uncertain, unreliable
falsus, **-a**, **-um** deceptive, false
novus, **-a**, **-um** new; strange
vērus, **-a**, **-um** real, true

mortālis, **mortāle** mortal
  immortālis, **immortāle** immortal

➤ **ante** (adv.) before, earlier, previously (prep. + acc.) before; in front of
➤ **aut** (conj.) or
  aut . . . **aut** . . . either . . . or . . .
➤ **etiam** (adv.) also, even; still
➤ **ita** (adv.) in this manner, thus, so
➤ **nē** (adv.) not (§70)
➤ **post** (adv.) after(ward), later; behind (prep. + acc.) after; behind
➤ **sōlum** (adv.) only
  ➤ **nōn sōlum** . . . **sed/vērum etiam** . . . not only . . . but also . . .
➤ **utinam** (particle) *introduces an Optative subjunctive* (§70)
➤ **vērō** (adv.) certainly, indeed; but (in fact)
➤ **vērum** (conj.) but

Chapter VII Summary Subjunctive Morphology

Active Personal Endings

	Sing.	*Plural*
1	**-ō, -m**	**-mus**
2	**-s**	**-tis**
3	**-t**	**-nt**

Passive Personal Endings

	Sing.	*Plural*
1	**-or, -r**	**-mur**
2	**-ris/-re**	**-minī**
3	**-tur**	**-ntur**

Long Vowel Rule

LONG VOWELS SHORTEN BEFORE **-m, -t, -nt, -r, -ntur.**

Present Active and Passive*

Take present stem from 2nd principal part (by dropping **-re**) ➔

Stem Changes		
1st conjugation:	**-ā- ➔ -ē-**	(**vocā- ➔ vocē-**)
2nd conjugation:	**-ē- ➔ -eā-**	(**movē- ➔ moveā-**)
3rd conjugation:	**-e- ➔ -ā-**	(**rege- ➔ regā-**)
3rd conjugation i-stem:	**-e- ➔ -iā-**	(**cape- ➔ capiā-**)
4th conjugation:	**-ī- ➔ -iā-**	(**audī- ➔ audiā-**)

➔ Add appropriate (active or passive) personal endings

This sentence can help you remember the changes: Sh***ē*** we***ā***rs ***ā*** gi***ā***nt d***iā***mond.

Imperfect Active and Passive

Take *ALL* of 2nd principal part ➔ Lengthen final **-e** ➔ Add appropriate (active or passive) personal endings

---

Perfect Active

Take perfect active stem from 3rd principal part (by dropping **-ī**)

Add **-eri-**

Add active personal endings (use **-m** for 1st person sing.)

Perfect Passive

Take *ALL* of 4th principal part

Add *as a separate word* the *present active subjunctive* of **sum** (remember to adjust gender and number: e.g., **rēctus, -a, -um sit**; **rēctī, -ae, -a sint**)

Pluperfect Active

Take perfect active stem from 3rd principal part (by dropping **-ī**)

Add **-issē-**

Add active personal endings (use **-m** for 1st person sing.)

Pluperfect Passive

Take *ALL* of 4th principal part

Add *as a separate word* the *imperfect active subjunctive* of **sum** (remember to adjust gender and number: e.g., **rēctus, -a, -um esset**; **rēctī, -ae, -a essent**)

---

*Present Subjunctive of **sum**

1	**sim**	**sīmus**
2	**sīs**	**sītis**
3	**sit**	**sint**

*Present Subjunctive of **possum**

1	**possim**	**possīmus**
2	**possīs**	**possītis**
3	**possit**	**possint**

*Present Subjunctive of **eō**

1	**eam**	**eāmus**
2	**eās**	**eātis**
3	**eat**	**eant**

Chapter VII Summary Verb and Noun Syntax

Summary of Independent Subjunctives

Name	*Tense of Subjunctive*	*Negation*	*English Translation*
Hortatory (1st person)	**Present**	**nē**	Let . . .
Jussive (3rd person)	**Present**		Let . . .
(2nd person)	**Present**		as imperative
(2nd person negated = negative command)	**Present** or **Perfect**		Do not . . .
Potential			
Present or Future Time	**Present** or **Perfect**	**nōn**	might,[1] could, would
Past time	**Imperfect**		might have,[1] could have, would have
Optative (**utinam** or ——)			
Future Capable of Fulfillment	**Present**	**nē**	If only . . . would . . .; May
Present Incapable of Fulfillment	**Imperfect**		If only . . . were . . .
Past Incapable of Fulfillment	**Pluperfect**		If only . . . had . . .

Summary of Conditional Sentences

Name	*Verbs in Latin*	*Verbs in English*[2]
Present Simple	Present indicative in both protasis and apodosis	No special translation
Past Simple	Any past tense of the indicative in both protasis and apodosis	No special translation
Future More Vivid (FMV)	Future indicative in both protasis and apodosis	Present ("does") in protasis, future ("will do") in apodosis
Future More Vivid with Emphatic protasis (FMVE)	Future perfect indicative in protasis, future indicative in apodosis	Present ("does") in protasis, future ("will do") in apodosis
Future Less Vivid (FLV)	Present subjunctive in both protasis and apodosis	"should do" in protasis, "would do" in apodosis
Present Contrary-to-Fact	Imperfect subjunctive in both protasis and apodosis	"were doing" in protasis, "would do" in apodosis
Past Contrary-to-Fact	Pluperfect subjunctive in both protasis and apodosis	"had done" in protasis, "would have done" in apodosis
Mixed Future	Present subjunctive in protasis, future indicative in apodosis	"should do" in protasis, "will do" in apodosis
Mixed Contrary-to-Fact	Pluperfect subjunctive in protasis, imperfect subjunctive in apodosis	"had done" in protasis, "would do" in apodosis

Dative of Purpose

1. Expresses an idea of purpose or service
2. May be translated "for the purpose of," "serve as a," "(be) a source of"

Librum *dōnō* mīsit.
He sent a book *for the purpose of a gift.*

Double Dative Construction

1. A dative of purpose joined with a dative of reference
2. Usually appears when the main verb is a form of **sum**

Tu *mihi cūrae* es.
You are *a source of concern to me.*

Dative of Advantage

Expresses the person for whose advantage the event of a sentence occurs

Poēta carmina *puerīs* canit.
The poet sings songs *for (the advantage of) the boys.*

Dative of Disadvantage

Expresses the person for whose disadvantage the event of a sentence occurs

Moram *nautīs* fēcistī.
You made a delay *for (the disadvantage of) the sailors.*

---

[1] "Might" and "might have" can be used only when a potential subjunctive is NOT negated.
[2] The model verb "do" is used in English translation formulas.

CHAPTER VIII

Vocabulary

➤ **fuga, fugae** *f.* flight

➤ **ex(s)ilium, ex(s)iliī** *n.* exile
gaudium, gaudiī *n.* joy
➤ **locus, locī** *m.* place
  ➤ **loca, locōrum** *n. pl.* places
➤ **modus, modī** *m.* measure; limit; rhythm, meter; manner, way
oculus, oculī *m.* eye

➤ **cōnsul, cōnsulis** *m.* consul
➤ **lēx, lēgis** *f.* law
  ➤ **lēgem ferre** (idiom) to pass a law

➤ **lībertās, lībertātis** *f.* freedom
➤ **mūnus, mūneris** *n.* service, duty; gift
➤ **pāx, pācis** *f.* peace; favor

quī, quae, quod (rel. pron.) who, which, that (§78)
quis, quid (interrog. pron.) who, what (§80)

➤ **cōnor** (1-tr.) try, attempt (§75)

➤ **audeō, audēre, ausus sum** dare (§76)
fateor, fatērī, fassus sum confess, admit (§75)
➤ **pāreō, pārēre, pāruī, pāritūrus** be obedient, obey (+ dat.) (§82)
➤ **placeō, placēre, placuī, placitum** be pleasing, please (+ dat.) (§82)

➤ **morior, morī, mortuus sum** die (§75)
relinquō, relinquere, relīquī, relictus leave (behind); abandon

➤ **patior, patī, passus sum** experience, suffer, endure; allow (§75)
➤ **sequor, sequī, secūtus sum** follow (§75)

experior, experīrī, expertus sum test; try; experience (§75)

➤ **inquam** (defective verb) say

hic, haec, hoc (demonstr. adj./pron.) this; these (§77)
ille, illa, illud (demonstr. adj./pron.) that; those (§77)
iste, ista, istud (demonstr. adj./pron.) that (of yours); those (of yours) (§77)
quī, quae, quod (interrog. adj.) what, which (§81)

➤ **caecus, -a, -um** blind; hidden, secret, dark

➤ **audāx, audācis** daring, bold; reckless
gravis, grave heavy; important, serious; severe
levis, leve light; trivial; fickle

➤ **īdem, eadem, idem** same

➤ **audacter/audāciter** (adv.) boldly; recklessly
➤ **quemadmodum** (rel. or interrog. adv.) in the manner in which, as; how
➤ **quō modō** (interrog. adv.) in what way, how
➤ **quoque** (adv.) also
saepe (adv.) often
➤ **tandem** (adv.) finally, at last; *in questions and commands,* pray, I ask you, then

Chapter VIII Summary Verb Morphology; Demonstratives

Deponent Verbs

1. HAVE REGULARLY FORMED *PASSIVE* FORMS WITH *ACTIVE* MEANINGS
2. HAVE *THREE* PRINCIPAL PARTS: 1ST PERSON SING. PRESENT *PASSIVE* INDICATIVE, PRESENT *PASSIVE* INFINITIVE, 1ST PERSON SING. MASC. PERFECT *PASSIVE* INDICATIVE
3. USE AN *IMAGINARY PRESENT ACTIVE INFINITIVE* TO FORM THE *IMPERFECT PASSIVE SUBJUNCTIVE*

Principal Parts	*Present Stem*	*Imaginary Present Active Infinitive*
cōnor, *cōnā*rī, cōnātus sum try, attempt	**cōnā-**	*cōnāre
fateor, *fatē*rī, fassus sum confess, admit	**fatē-**	*fatēre
sequor, sequī, secūtus sum follow	**seque-**†	*sequere
morior, morī, mortuus sum die	**more-**†	*morere
experiōr, *experī*rī, expertus sum experience	**experī-**	*experīre

†The present stem of *3rd-conjugation verbs* is found by dropping the **-re** from the *imaginary present active infinitive.*

Semideponent Verbs

1. HAVE *IN THE PRESENT SYSTEM* REGULARLY FORMED ACTIVE FORMS WITH ACTIVE MEANINGS
2. HAVE *IN THE PERFECT SYSTEM* REGULARLY FORMED *PASSIVE* FORMS WITH *ACTIVE* MEANINGS
3. HAVE *THREE* PRINCIPAL PARTS: 1ST PERSON SING. PRESENT *ACTIVE* INDICATIVE, PRESENT *ACTIVE* INFINITIVE, 1ST PERSON SING. MASC. PERFECT *PASSIVE* INDICATIVE: **audeō, audēre, ausus sum** dare

Demonstrative Adjectives/Pronouns

	Singular ("this")			*Plural* ("these")		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**hic**	**haec**	**hoc**	**hī**	**hae**	**haec**
Gen.	**huius**	**huius**	**huius**	**hōrum**	**hārum**	**hōrum**
Dat.	**huic**	**huic**	**huic**	**hīs**	**hīs**	**hīs**
Acc.	**hunc**	**hanc**	**hoc**	**hōs**	**hās**	**haec**
Abl.	**hōc**	**hāc**	**hōc**	**hīs**	**hīs**	**hīs**

	Singular ("that [of yours]")			*Plural* ("those [of yours]")		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**iste**	**ista**	**istud**	**istī**	**istae**	**ista**
Gen.	**istīus**	**istīus**	**istīus**	**istōrum**	**istārum**	**istōrum**
Dat.	**istī**	**istī**	**istī**	**istīs**	**istīs**	**istīs**
Acc.	**istum**	**istam**	**istud**	**istōs**	**istās**	**ista**
Abl.	**istō**	**istā**	**istō**	**istīs**	**istīs**	**istīs**

	Singular ("that")			*Plural* ("those")		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**ille**	**illa**	**illud**	**illī**	**illae**	**illa**
Gen.	**illīus**	**illīus**	**illīus**	**illōrum**	**illārum**	**illōrum**
Dat.	**illī**	**illī**	**illī**	**illīs**	**illīs**	**illīs**
Acc.	**illum**	**illam**	**illud**	**illōs**	**illās**	**illa**
Abl.	**illō**	**illā**	**illō**	**illīs**	**illīs**	**illīs**

Chapter VIII Summary Pronoun Morphology; Noun Syntax

Relative Pronoun

	Singular			*Plural*		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**quī**	**quae**	**quod**	**quī**	**quae**	**quae**
Gen.	**cuius**	**cuius**	**cuius**	**quōrum**	**quārum**	**quōrum**
Dat.	**cui**	**cui**	**cui**	**quibus**	**quibus**	**quibus**
Acc.	**quem**	**quam**	**quod**	**quōs**	**quās**	**quae**
Abl.	**quō**	**quā**	**quō**	**quibus**	**quibus**	**quibus**

The relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number. Its *case,* however, is determined by its syntax within the relative clause.

English Relative Pronoun

	Beings (sing. or pl.)	*Things (sing. or pl.)*
Subject	who	that/which
Possessive	whose	whose
Objects of verbs and prepositions	whom	that/which

Interrogative Pronoun

	Singular				*Plural*		
	M./F.		N.		M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**quis**	who?	**quid**	what?	**quī**	**quae**	**quae**
Gen.	**cuius**	whose? of whom?	**cuius**	whose? of what?	**quōrum**	**quārum**	**quōrum**
Dat.	**cui**	to/for whom?	**cui**	to/for what?	**quibus**	**quibus**	**quibus**
Acc.	**quem**	whom?	**quid**	what (d.o.)?	**quōs**	**quās**	**quae**
Abl.	**quō**	from (etc.) whom?	**quō**	from (etc.) what?	**quibus**	**quibus**	**quibus**

Interrogative Adjective

All forms of the interrogative adjective are *identical* with the forms of the relative pronoun.

Dative with an Intransitive Verb

1. IS A SPECIAL USE OF THE DATIVE OF REFERENCE	**Mea sententia *Antōniō* placet.**
2. EXPRESSES THE *PERSON* OR *THING AFFECTED* BY THE ACTION OF CERTAIN *INTRANSITIVE* VERBS	My opinion is pleasing *to Antony*. My opinion pleases *Antony*.

About Meter I Summary

A syllable is long if it contains:

1. a long vowel or diphthong (**long by nature**)
2. a short vowel *followed* by two or more consonants NOT NECESSARILY IN THE SAME WORD (**long by position**)

OBSERVATIONS

1. The letter **x** counts as a double consonant.
2. Short vowels before consonantal **-i-** count long.[1]
3. The consonant groups **qu**, **gu**, and **su** count as *single* consonants.
4. A syllable containing a short vowel followed by two consonants, the first of which is a **mute** (**p**, **ph**, **b**, **t**, **th**, **d**, **c**, **g**) or the **fricative f** followed by a **liquid** (**l**, **r**) or a **nasal** (**m**, **n**) can be *either* short *or* long.
5. The consonant **h** does *not* count toward making a syllable long by position. For example, in the phrase **hostis habet** the second syllable of **hostis** (**-tis**) is *short*.

long –	dactyl – ⏑ ⏑	hemiepes – ⏑ ⏑ – ⏑ ⏑ x
short ⏑	spondee – –	
anceps **x**		

Dactylic Hexameter

$$- \overline{\smile\smile} \;/\; - \overline{\smile\smile} \;/\; - \overline{\smile\smile} \;/\; - \overline{\smile\smile} \;/\; - \overset{(-)}{\smile\smile} \;/\; - \;\mathrm{x}$$

1 2 3 4 5 6

Elegiac Couplet (= a dactylic hexameter and a dactylic pentameter)

Dactylic Hexameter

$$- \overline{\smile\smile} \;/\; - \overline{\smile\smile} \;/\; - \overline{\smile\smile} \;/\; - \overline{\smile\smile} \;/\; - \overset{(-)}{\smile\smile} \;/\; - \;\mathrm{x}$$

1 2 3 4 5 6

Dactylic Pentameter

$$- \overline{\smile\smile} \;/\; - \overline{\smile\smile} \;/\; - \;//\; - \smile\smile \;/\; - \smile\smile \;/\; \mathrm{x}$$

1 2 $2\frac{1}{2}$ $3\frac{1}{2}$ $4\frac{1}{2}$ 5

A dactylic pentameter = two **hemiepes**

Elision (< **ēlīdō**, "eliminate, omit") is the full or partial suppression of a final syllable of a word. (The symbol ‿ is used to mark the elision of a syllable.) It occurs in the scansion and reading of poetry under the following circumstances:

1. when a word ending in a vowel or diphthong is followed by a word beginning with a vowel or diphthong
2. when a word ending in a vowel or diphthong is followed by a word beginning with **h-**
3. when a word ending in a vowel followed by **-m** is followed by a word beginning with a vowel, a diphthong, or **h-**

Inverse Elision or Aphaeresis occurs when **es** or **est** follows a word ending in a vowel or a word ending in a vowel followed by **-m.** The initial **e-** is dropped, and the rest of the word is joined to the preceding word (**mea est** > **meast; relictum est** > **relictumst**).

A **Caesura** (< **caesūra**, "cutting") is an internal pause in a line of poetry that occurs whenever a word ends within a foot. A double slash (//) is used to mark a caesura. The **Principal Caesura** (often simply called the **caesura**) falls at a natural pause in the line.

Two kinds: **strong** caesura occurs after the long syllable in a foot
weak caesura (rare) occurs after the first short syllable in a foot

The caesura in a pentameter line of an elegiac couple regularly falls after the first hemiepes.

---

[1] When a single **-i-** is written after another vowel, it in fact represents two i's. For example, **Troia** = **Troiia**. The first **-i-** combines with the preceding vowel to create a diphthong, while the second is pronounced consonantally.

A **Diaeresis** (< Greek *diairesis,* “division”) is also a pause within a line, but it occurs *at the end of* and not within a metrical foot. A triple slash (///) is used to mark a diaeresis. A diaeresis is marked only if it is a true sense pause.

A **Hiatus** (< **hiatus**, “gaping”) occurs *when conditions for elision exist but elision does not occur.* A wavy line (≀) is used to mark a hiatus.

Examples

1. – ˘ ˘ – – – – – ˘ ˘ – ˘ ˘ – –
   nunc more/re‿ast dē/mē // dī/vum pater / atque‿homi/num rēx
2. – – – ˘ ˘ – – – ˘ ˘ – ˘ ˘ – –
   magnī /saepe du/cēs, // mag/nī ceci/dēre ty/rannī

   – – – ˘ ˘ – – ˘ ˘ – ˘ ˘ ˘
   et Thē/bae stete/rant // altaque /Troia fu/it.
3. – ˘˘ – – – ˘ ˘ – – – ˘ ˘ – ˘
   quid struit? /// aut quā / spē ≀ ini/mīcā‿in /gente mo/rātur

General Guidelines for Reading Latin Poetry

1. Read all passages of poetry aloud. Pronounce long syllables twice as long as short syllables.
2. Focus on making elisions and on word accent. Allow the meter to assert itself on its own.
3. Always pause slightly at the caesura (or caesurae). The caesural breaks help reinforce the meter and often also clarify ambiguities of meaning.
4. Individual words are placed for maximum effect and emphasis even if they stand far apart from modifiers.
5. Words that are closely related (e.g., subject and verb, noun and adjective) are often placed at either end of a hexameter line.
6. Both in hexameter and pentameter lines, words ending at the caesura often go with a words at the end of the line.

Name ______________________________

Synopsis I, Chapter III

Principal Parts: ____

Person and Number: ______________________________

Indicative	Active/Translation	Passive/Translation
Present		
Imperfect		
Future		

Principal Parts: ____

Person and Number: ______________________________

Indicative	Active/Translation	Passive/Translation
Present		
Imperfect		
Future		

Name ______________________________

Synopsis II, Chapter IV

Principal Parts: ____

Person and Number: ______________________

	Active/Translation	Passive/Translation
Indicative		
Present		
Imperfect		
Future		
Infinitive		
Present		
Imperative		
Singular		
Plural		

Principal Parts: ____

Person and Number: ______________________

	Active/Translation	Passive/Translation
Indicative		
Present		
Imperfect		
Future		
Infinitive		
Present		
Imperative		
Singular		
Plural		

Name ______________________

Synopsis III, Chapter V

Principal Parts: ____

Person and Number: ______________________

	Active/Translation	**Passive/Translation**
Indicative		
Present	________________	________________
Imperfect	________________	________________
Future	________________	________________
Perfect	________________	________________
	________________	________________
Pluperfect	________________	________________
Future Perfect	________________	________________
Infinitive Present	________________	________________
Imperative Singular	________________	________________
Plural	________________	________________

Name ______________________

Synopsis IV, Chapter VI

Principal Parts: ____

Person, Number, and Gender: ______________________

	Active/Translation	Passive/Translation
Indicative		
Present	______________________	______________________
Imperfect	______________________	______________________
Future	______________________	______________________
Perfect	______________________	______________________
	______________________	______________________
Pluperfect	______________________	______________________
Future Perfect	______________________	______________________
Infinitive Present	______________________	______________________
Imperative Singular	______________________	______________________
Plural	______________________	______________________

Name ____________________

Synopsis V, Chapter VII

Principal Parts: ____________________

Person, Number, and Gender: ____________________

	Active	**Passive**
Pres. Indic.		
Imperf. Indic.		
Fut. Indic.		
Perf. Indic.		
Pluperf. Indic.		
Fut. Perf. Indic.		
Pres. Subjunc.		
Imperf. Subjunc.		
Perf. Subjunc.		
Pluperf. Subjunc.		
Pres. Infin.		
Imper. Sing.		
Imper. Pl.		

MORPHOLOGY APPENDIX

Note: Forms in brackets are not introduced in the textbook.

Nouns

First Declension

puella, puellae *f.*

Singular	
Nom./Voc.	**puella**
Gen.	**puellae**
Dat.	**puellae**
Acc.	**puellam**
Abl.	**puellā**
Plural	
Nom./Voc.	**puellae**
Gen.	**puellārum**
Dat.	**puellīs**
Acc.	**puellās**
Abl.	**puellīs**

Second Declension

servus, servī *m.*
fīlius, fīliī *m.*
puer, puerī *m.*

perīculum, perīculī *n.*
cōnsilium, cōnsiliī *n.*

		M./F.		N.	
Singular					
Nom.	**servus**	**fīlius**	**puer**	**perīculum**	**cōnsilium**
Gen.	**servī**	**fīliī/fīlī**	**puerī**	**perīculī**	**cōnsiliī/cōnsilī**
Dat.	**servō**	**fīliō**	**puerō**	**perīculō**	**cōnsiliō**
Acc.	**servum**	**fīlium**	**puerum**	**perīculum**	**cōnsilium**
Abl.	**servō**	**fīliō**	**puerō**	**perīculō**	**cōnsiliō**
Voc.	**serve**	**fīlī**	**puer**	**perīculum**	**cōnsilium**
Plural					
Nom./Voc.	**servī**	**fīliī**	**puerī**	**perīcula**	**cōnsilia**
Gen.	**servōrum**	**fīliōrum**	**puerōrum**	**perīculōrum**	**cōnsiliōrum**
Dat.	**servīs**	**fīliīs**	**puerīs**	**perīculīs**	**cōnsiliīs**
Acc.	**servōs**	**fīliōs**	**puerōs**	**perīcula**	**cōnsilia**
Abl.	**servīs**	**fīliīs**	**puerīs**	**perīculīs**	**cōnsiliīs**

Third Declension

mīles, mīlitis *m.* **urbs, urbis, -ium** *f.*			**corpus, corporis** *n.* **animal, animālis, -ium** *n.*	
	M./F.	M./F. i-stem	N.	N. i-stem
Singular				
Nom./Voc.	**mīles**	**urbs**	**corpus**	**animal**
Gen.	**mīlitis**	**urbis**	**corporis**	**animālis**
Dat.	**mīlitī**	**urbī**	**corporī**	**animālī**
Acc.	**mīlitem**	**urbem**	**corpus**	**animal**
Abl.	**mīlite**	**urbe**	**corpore**	**animālī**
Plural				
Nom./Voc.	**mīlitēs**	**urbēs**	**corpora**	**animālia**
Gen.	**mīlitum**	**urbium**	**corporum**	**animālium**
Dat.	**mīlitibus**	**urbibus**	**corporibus**	**animālibus**
Acc.	**mīlitēs**	**urbēs/urbīs**	**corpora**	**animālia**
Abl.	**mīlitibus**	**urbibus**	**corporibus**	**animālibus**

Adjectives and Pronouns

First-Second-Declension Adjectives

bonus, bona, bonum
pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum

Singular	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**bonus**	**bona**	**bonum**	**pulcher**	**pulchra**	**pulchrum**
Gen.	**bonī**	**bonae**	**bonī**	**pulchrī**	**pulchrae**	**pulchrī**
Dat.	**bonō**	**bonae**	**bonō**	**pulchrō**	**pulchrae**	**pulchrō**
Acc.	**bonum**	**bonam**	**bonum**	**pulchrum**	**pulchram**	**pulchrum**
Abl.	**bonō**	**bonā**	**bonō**	**pulchrō**	**pulchrā**	**pulchrō**
Voc.	**bone**	**bona**	**bonum**	**pulcher**	**pulchra**	**pulchrum**
Plural						
Nom./Voc.	**bonī**	**bonae**	**bona**	**pulchrī**	**pulchrae**	**pulchra**
Gen.	**bonōrum**	**bonārum**	**bonōrum**	**pulchrōrum**	**pulchrārum**	**pulchrōrum**
Dat.	**bonīs**	**bonīs**	**bonīs**	**pulchrīs**	**pulchrīs**	**pulchrīs**
Acc.	**bonōs**	**bonās**	**bona**	**pulchrōs**	**pulchrās**	**pulchra**
Abl.	**bonīs**	**bonīs**	**bonīs**	**pulchrīs**	**pulchrīs**	**pulchrīs**

Third-Declension Adjectives

With three nominative singular forms:	**ācer, ācris, ācre**
With two nominative singular forms:	**fortis, forte**

Singular	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom./Voc.	**ācer**	**ācris**	**ācre**	**fortis**	**fortis**	**forte**
Gen.	**ācris**	**ācris**	**ācris**	**fortis**	**fortis**	**fortis**
Dat.	**ācrī**	**ācrī**	**ācrī**	**fortī**	**fortī**	**fortī**
Acc.	**ācrem**	**ācrem**	**ācre**	**fortem**	**fortem**	**forte**
Abl.	**ācrī**	**ācrī**	**ācrī**	**fortī**	**fortī**	**fortī**
Plural						
Nom./Voc.	**ācrēs**	**ācrēs**	**ācria**	**fortēs**	**fortēs**	**fortia**
Gen.	**ācrium**	**ācrium**	**ācrium**	**fortium**	**fortium**	**fortium**
Dat.	**ācribus**	**ācribus**	**ācribus**	**fortibus**	**fortibus**	**fortibus**
Acc.	**ācrēs/ācrīs**	**ācrēs/ācrīs**	**ācria**	**fortēs/fortīs**	**fortēs/fortīs**	**fortia**
Abl.	**ācribus**	**ācribus**	**ācribus**	**fortibus**	**fortibus**	**fortibus**

With one nominative singular form: **ingēns, ingentis**

Singular	M.	F.	N.
Nom./Voc.	**ingēns**	**ingēns**	**ingēns**
Gen.	**ingentis**	**ingentis**	**ingentis**
Dat.	**ingentī**	**ingentī**	**ingentī**
Acc.	**ingentem**	**ingentem**	**ingēns**
Abl.	**ingentī**	**ingentī**	**ingentī**
Plural			
Nom./Voc.	**ingentēs**	**ingentēs**	**ingentia**
Gen.	**ingentium**	**ingentium**	**ingentium**
Dat.	**ingentibus**	**ingentibus**	**ingentibus**
Acc.	**ingentēs/ingentīs**	**ingentēs/ingentīs**	**ingentia**
Abl.	**ingentibus**	**ingentibus**	**ingentibus**

Demonstrative Adjectives and Pronouns

hic, haec, hoc

		Singular			*Plural*	
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**hic**	**haec**	**hoc**	**hī**	**hae**	**haec**
Gen.	**huius**	**huius**	**huius**	**hōrum**	**hārum**	**hōrum**
Dat.	**huic**	**huic**	**huic**	**hīs**	**hīs**	**hīs**
Acc.	**hunc**	**hanc**	**hoc**	**hōs**	**hās**	**haec**
Abl.	**hōc**	**hāc**	**hōc**	**hīs**	**hīs**	**hīs**

ille, illa, illud

		Singular			*Plural*	
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**ille**	**illa**	**illud**	**illī**	**illae**	**illa**
Gen.	**illīus**	**illīus**	**illīus**	**illōrum**	**illārum**	**illōrum**
Dat.	**illī**	**illī**	**illī**	**illīs**	**illīs**	**illīs**
Acc.	**illum**	**illam**	**illud**	**illōs**	**illās**	**illa**
Abl.	**illō**	**illā**	**illō**	**illīs**	**illīs**	**illīs**

is, ea, id

		Singular			*Plural*	
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**is**	**ea**	**id**	**eī/iī**	**eae**	**ea**
Gen.	**eius**	**eius**	**eius**	**eōrum**	**eārum**	**eōrum**
Dat.	**eī**	**eī**	**eī**	**eīs/iīs**	**eīs/iīs**	**eīs/iīs**
Acc.	**eum**	**eam**	**id**	**eōs**	**eās**	**ea**
Abl.	**eō**	**eā**	**eō**	**eīs/iīs**	**eīs/iīs**	**eīs/iīs**

iste, ista, istud

		Singular			*Plural*	
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**iste**	**ista**	**istud**	**istī**	**istae**	**ista**
Gen.	**istīus**	**istīus**	**istīus**	**istōrum**	**istārum**	**istōrum**
Dat.	**istī**	**istī**	**istī**	**istīs**	**istīs**	**istīs**
Acc.	**istum**	**istam**	**istud**	**istōs**	**istās**	**ista**
Abl.	**istō**	**istā**	**istō**	**istīs**	**istīs**	**istīs**

Personal Pronouns

First Person **ego, meī**
nōs, nostrum/nostrī

Second Person **tū, tuī**
vōs, vestrum/vestrī

	Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
Nom.	**ego**	**nōs**	**tū**	**vōs**
Gen.	**meī**	**nostrum/nostrī**	**tuī**	**vestrum/vestrī**
Dat.	**mihi**	**nōbīs**	**tibi**	**vōbīs**
Acc.	**mē**	**nōs**	**tē**	**vōs**
Abl.	**mē**	**nōbīs**	**tē**	**vōbīs**

Third Person **is, ea, id**

	Singular			*Plural*		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**is**	**ea**	**id**	**eī/iī**	**eae**	**ea**
Gen.	**eius**	**eius**	**eius**	**eōrum**	**eārum**	**eōrum**
Dat.	**eī**	**eī**	**eī**	**eīs/iīs**	**eīs/iīs**	**eīs/iīs**
Acc.	**eum**	**eam**	**id**	**eōs**	**eās**	**ea**
Abl.	**eō**	**eā**	**eō**	**eīs/iīs**	**eīs/iīs**	**eīs/iīs**

Reflexive Pronouns

First Person ——, **meī**
——, **nostrum/nostrī**

Second Person ——, **tuī**
——, **vestrum/vestrī**

Third Person ——, **suī**

	Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*	*Sing./Pl.*
Nom.	——	——	——	——	——
Gen.	**meī**	**nostrum/nostrī**	**tuī**	**vestrum/vestrī**	**suī**
Dat.	**mihi**	**nōbīs**	**tibi**	**vōbīs**	**sibi**
Acc.	**mē**	**nōs**	**tē**	**vōs**	**sē/sēsē**
Abl.	**mē**	**nōbīs**	**tē**	**vōbīs**	**sē/sēsē**

Intensive Adjective

ipse, ipsa, ipsum

	Singular			*Plural*		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**ipse**	**ipsa**	**ipsum**	**ipsī**	**ipsae**	**ipsa**
Gen.	**ipsīus**	**ipsīus**	**ipsīus**	**ipsōrum**	**ipsārum**	**ipsōrum**
Dat.	**ipsī**	**ipsī**	**ipsī**	**ipsīs**	**ipsīs**	**ipsīs**
Acc.	**ipsum**	**ipsam**	**ipsum**	**ipsōs**	**ipsās**	**ipsa**
Abl.	**ipsō**	**ipsā**	**ipsō**	**ipsīs**	**ipsīs**	**ipsīs**

Relative Pronoun

quī, quae, quod

	Singular			Plural		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**quī**	**quae**	**quod**	**quī**	**quae**	**quae**
Gen.	**cuius**	**cuius**	**cuius**	**quōrum**	**quārum**	**quōrum**
Dat.	**cui**	**cui**	**cui**	**quibus**	**quibus**	**quibus**
Acc.	**quem**	**quam**	**quod**	**quōs**	**quās**	**quae**
Abl.	**quō**	**quā**	**quō**	**quibus**	**quibus**	**quibus**

Interrogative Pronoun and Adjective

quis, quid

	Singular		Plural		
	M./F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**quis**	**quid**	**quī**	**quae**	**quae**
Gen.	**cuius**	**cuius**	**quōrum**	**quārum**	**quōrum**
Dat.	**cui**	**cui**	**quibus**	**quibus**	**quibus**
Acc.	**quem**	**quid**	**quōs**	**quās**	**quae**
Abl.	**quō**	**quō**	**quibus**	**quibus**	**quibus**

quī, quae, quod

	Singular			Plural		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**quī**	**quae**	**quod**	**quī**	**quae**	**quae**
Gen.	**cuius**	**cuius**	**cuius**	**quōrum**	**quārum**	**quōrum**
Dat.	**cui**	**cui**	**cui**	**quibus**	**quibus**	**quibus**
Acc.	**quem**	**quam**	**quod**	**quōs**	**quās**	**quae**
Abl.	**quō**	**quā**	**quō**	**quibus**	**quibus**	**quibus**

Irregular Adjective

īdem, eadem, idem

	Singular			Plural		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**īdem**	**eadem**	**idem**	**īdem/eīdem**	**eaedem**	**eadem**
Gen.	**eiusdem**	**eiusdem**	**eiusdem**	**eōrundem**	**eārundem**	**eōrundem**
Dat.	**eīdem**	**eīdem**	**eīdem**	**īsdem/ eīsdem**	**īsdem/ eīsdem**	**īsdem/ eīsdem**
Acc.	**eundem**	**eandem**	**idem**	**eōsdem**	**eāsdem**	**eadem**
Abl.	**eōdem**	**eādem**	**eōdem**	**īsdem/ eīsdem**	**īsdem/ eīsdem**	**īsdem/ eīsdem**

Adverbs

Adverbs Formed from First-Second-Declension Adjectives

acerbē < acerbus, -a, -um
pulchrē < pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum

Adverbs Formed from Third-Declension Adjectives

fortiter < fortis, forte

Verbs

First Conjugation

Principal Parts: **vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus**

	Indicative			**Subjunctive**	
Present					
	Active	Passive		Active	Passive
		Singular			
1	**vocō**	**vocor**	1	**vocem**	**vocer**
2	**vocās**	**vocāris/vocāre**	2	**vocēs**	**vocēris/vocēre**
3	**vocat**	**vocātur**	3	**vocet**	**vocētur**
		Plural			
1	**vocāmus**	**vocāmur**	1	**vocēmus**	**vocēmur**
2	**vocātis**	**vocāminī**	2	**vocētis**	**vocēminī**
3	**vocant**	**vocantur**	3	**vocent**	**vocentur**
Imperfect					
	Active	Passive		Active	Passive
		Singular			
1	**vocābam**	**vocābar**	1	**vocārem**	**vocārer**
2	**vocābās**	**vocābāris/vocābāre**	2	**vocārēs**	**vocārēris/vocārēre**
3	**vocābat**	**vocābātur**	3	**vocāret**	**vocārētur**
		Plural			
1	**vocābāmus**	**vocābāmur**	1	**vocārēmus**	**vocārēmur**
2	**vocābātis**	**vocābāminī**	2	**vocārētis**	**vocārēminī**
3	**vocābant**	**vocābantur**	3	**vocārent**	**vocārentur**
Future					
	Active	Passive			
	Singular				
1	**vocābō**	**vocābor**			
2	**vocābis**	**vocāberis/vocābere**			
3	**vocābit**	**vocābitur**			
	Plural				
1	**vocābimus**	**vocābimur**			
2	**vocābitis**	**vocābiminī**			
3	**vocābunt**	**vocābuntur**			

	Indicative			Subjunctive	
Perfect					
	Active	Passive		Active	Passive
		Singular			
1	**vocāvī**	**vocātus, -a, -um sum**	1	**vocāverim**	**vocātus, -a, -um sim**
2	**vocāvistī**	**vocātus, -a, -um es**	2	**vocāveris**	**vocātus, -a, -um sīs**
3	**vocāvit**	**vocātus, -a, -um est**	3	**vocāverit**	**vocātus, -a, -um sit**
		Plural			
1	**vocāvimus**	**vocātī, -ae, -a sumus**	1	**vocāverimus**	**vocātī, -ae, -a sīmus**
2	**vocāvistis**	**vocātī, -ae, -a estis**	2	**vocāveritis**	**vocātī, -ae, -a sītis**
3	**vocāvērunt/vocāvēre**	**vocātī, -ae, -a sunt**	3	**vocāverint**	**vocātī, -ae, -a sint**
Pluperfect					
	Active	Passive		Active	Passive
		Singular			
1	**vocāveram**	**vocātus, -a, -um eram**	1	**vocāvissem**	**vocātus, -a, -um essem**
2	**vocāverās**	**vocātus, -a, -um erās**	2	**vocāvissēs**	**vocātus, -a, -um essēs**
3	**vocāverat**	**vocātus, -a, -um erat**	3	**vocāvisset**	**vocātus, -a, -um esset**
		Plural			
1	**vocāverāmus**	**vocātī, -ae, -a erāmus**	1	**vocāvissēmus**	**vocātī, -ae, -a essēmus**
2	**vocāverātis**	**vocātī, -ae, -a erātis**	2	**vocāvissētis**	**vocātī, -ae, -a essētis**
3	**vocāverant**	**vocātī, -ae, -a erant**	3	**vocāvissent**	**vocātī, -ae, -a essent**
Future Perfect					
	Active	Passive			
	Singular				
1	**vocāverō**	**vocātus, -a, -um erō**			
2	**vocāveris**	**vocātus, -a, -um eris**			
3	**vocāverit**	**vocātus, -a, -um erit**			
	Plural				
1	**vocāverimus**	**vocātī, -ae, -a erimus**			
2	**vocāveritis**	**vocātī, -ae, -a eritis**			
3	**vocāverint**	**vocātī, -ae, -a erunt**			

Infinitive

	Active	Passive
Present	**vocāre**	**vocārī**

Imperative

Present	Active	Passive
Singular	2 **vocā**	**vocāre**
Plural	2 **vocāte**	**vocāminī**

[Future	Active	Passive
Singular	2 **vocātō**	**vocātor**
	3 **vocātō**	**vocātor**
Plural	2 **vocātōte**	
	3 **vocantō**	**vocantor**]

Second Conjugation

Principal Parts: **moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus**

	Indicative			Subjunctive	
Present					
	Active	Passive		Active	Passive
		Singular			
1	**moveō**	**moveor**	1	**moveam**	**movear**
2	**movēs**	**movēris/movēre**	2	**moveās**	**moveāris/moveāre**
3	**movet**	**movētur**	3	**moveat**	**moveātur**
		Plural			
1	**movēmus**	**movēmur**	1	**moveāmus**	**moveāmur**
2	**movētis**	**movēminī**	2	**moveātis**	**moveāminī**
3	**movent**	**moventur**	3	**moveant**	**moveantur**
Imperfect					
	Active	Passive		Active	Passive
		Singular			
1	**movēbam**	**movēbar**	1	**movērem**	**movērer**
2	**movēbās**	**movēbāris/movēbāre**	2	**movērēs**	**movērēris/movērēre**
3	**movēbat**	**movēbātur**	3	**movēret**	**movērētur**
		Plural			
1	**movēbāmus**	**movēbāmur**	1	**movērēmus**	**movērēmur**
2	**movēbātis**	**movēbāminī**	2	**movērētis**	**movērēminī**
3	**movēbant**	**movēbantur**	3	**movērent**	**movērentur**
Future					
	Active	Passive			
	Singular				
1	**movēbō**	**movēbor**			
2	**movēbis**	**movēberis/movēbere**			
3	**movēbit**	**movēbitur**			
	Plural				
1	**movēbimus**	**movēbimur**			
2	**movēbitis**	**movēbiminī**			
3	**movēbunt**	**movēbuntur**			
Perfect					
	Active	Passive		Active	Passive
		Singular			
1	**mōvī**	**mōtus, -a, -um sum**	1	**mōverim**	**mōtus, -a, -um sim**
2	**mōvistī**	**mōtus, -a, -um es**	2	**mōveris**	**mōtus, -a, -um sīs**
3	**mōvit**	**mōtus, -a, -um est**	3	**mōverit**	**mōtus, -a, -um sit**
		Plural			
1	**mōvimus**	**mōtī, -ae, -a sumus**	1	**mōverimus**	**mōtī, -ae, -a sīmus**
2	**mōvistis**	**mōtī, -ae, -a estis**	2	**mōveritis**	**mōtī, -ae, -a sītis**
3	**mōvērunt/mōvēre**	**mōtī, -ae, -a sunt**	3	**mōverint**	**mōtī, -ae, -a sint**

Indicative		Subjunctive	
Pluperfect			
Active	Passive	Active	Passive
	Singular		
1 **mōveram**	**mōtus, -a, -um eram**	1 **mōvissem**	**mōtus, -a, -um essem**
2 **mōverās**	**mōtus, -a, -um erās**	2 **mōvissēs**	**mōtus, -a, -um essēs**
3 **mōverat**	**mōtus, -a, -um erat**	3 **mōvisset**	**mōtus, -a, -um esset**
	Plural		
1 **mōverāmus**	**mōtī, -ae, -a erāmus**	1 **mōvissēmus**	**mōtī, -ae, -a essēmus**
2 **mōverātis**	**mōtī, -ae, -a erātis**	2 **mōvissētis**	**mōtī, -ae, -a essētis**
3 **mōverant**	**mōtī, -ae, -a erant**	3 **mōvissent**	**mōtī, -ae, -a essent**

Future Perfect	
Active	Passive
Singular	
1 **mōverō**	**mōtus, -a, -um erō**
2 **mōveris**	**mōtus, -a, -um eris**
3 **mōverit**	**mōtus, -a, -um erit**
Plural	
1 **mōverimus**	**mōtī, -ae, -a erimus**
2 **mōveritis**	**mōtī, -ae, -a eritis**
3 **mōverint**	**mōtī, -ae, -a erunt**

Infinitive		
	Active	Passive
Present	**movēre**	**movērī**
Imperative		
Present	Active	Passive
Singular	2 **movē**	**movēre**
Plural	2 **movēte**	**movēminī**
[Future	Active	Passive
Singular	2 **movētō**	**movētor**
	3 **movētō**	**movētor**
Plural	2 **movētōte**	
	3 **moventō**	**moventor**]

Third Conjugation

Principal Parts: **regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus**

Indicative		Subjunctive	
Present			
Active	Passive	Active	Passive
	Singular		
1 **regō**	**regor**	1 **regam**	**regar**
2 **regis**	**regeris/regere**	2 **regās**	**regāris/regāre**
3 **regit**	**regitur**	3 **regat**	**regātur**
	Plural		
1 **regimus**	**regimur**	1 **regāmus**	**regāmur**
2 **regitis**	**regiminī**	2 **regātis**	**regāminī**
3 **regunt**	**reguntur**	3 **regant**	**regantur**

	Indicative			Subjunctive	
Imperfect					
	Active	Passive		Active	Passive
		Singular			
1	regēbam	regēbar	1	regerem	regerer
2	regēbās	regēbāris/regēbāre	2	regerēs	regerēris/regerēre
3	regēbat	regēbātur	3	regeret	regerētur
		Plural			
1	regēbāmus	regēbāmur	1	regerēmus	regerēmur
2	regēbātis	regēbāminī	2	regerētis	regerēminī
3	regēbant	regēbantur	3	regerent	regerentur
Future					
	Active	Passive			
	Singular				
1	regam	regar			
2	regēs	regēris/regēre			
3	reget	regētur			
	Plural				
1	regēmus	regēmur			
2	regētis	regēminī			
3	regent	regentur			
Perfect					
	Active	Passive		Active	Passive
		Singular			
1	rēxī	rēctus, -a, -um sum	1	rēxerim	rēctus, -a, -um sim
2	rēxistī	rēctus, -a, -um es	2	rēxeris	rēctus, -a, -um sīs
3	rēxit	rēctus, -a, -um est	3	rēxerit	rēctus, -a, -um sit
		Plural			
1	rēximus	rēctī, -ae, -a sumus	1	rēxerimus	rēctī, -ae, -a sīmus
2	rēxistis	rēctī, -ae, -a estis	2	rēxeritis	rēctī, -ae, -a sītis
3	rēxērunt/rēxēre	rēctī, -ae, -a sunt	3	rēxerint	rēctī, -ae, -a sint
Pluperfect					
	Active	Passive		Active	Passive
		Singular			
1	rēxeram	rēctus, -a, -um eram	1	rēxissem	rēctus, -a, -um essem
2	rēxerās	rēctus, -a, -um erās	2	rēxissēs	rēctus, -a, -um essēs
3	rēxerat	rēctus, -a, -um erat	3	rēxisset	rēctus, -a, -um esset
		Plural			
1	rēxerāmus	rēctī, -ae, -a erāmus	1	rēxissēmus	rēctī, -ae, -a essēmus
2	rēxerātis	rēctī, -ae, -a erātis	2	rēxissētis	rēctī, -ae, -a essētis
3	rēxerant	rēctī, -ae, -a erant	3	rēxissent	rēctī, -ae, -a essent

Indicative		Subjunctive	
Future Perfect			
Active	Passive		
Singular			
1 **rēxerō**	**rēctus, -a, -um erō**		
2 **rēxeris**	**rēctus, -a, -um eris**		
3 **rēxerit**	**rēctus, -a, -um erit**		
Plural			
1 **rēxerimus**	**rēctī, -ae, -a erimus**		
2 **rēxeritis**	**rēctī, -ae, -a eritis**		
3 **rēxerint**	**rēctī, -ae, -a erunt**		

Infinitive

	Active	Passive
Present	**regere**	**regī**

Imperative

Present	Active	Passive
Singular	2 **rege**	**regere**
Plural	2 **regite**	**regiminī**

[Future	Active	Passive
Singular	2 **regitō**	**regitor**
	3 **regitō**	**regitor**
Plural	2 **regitōte**	
	3 **reguntō**	**reguntor**]

Third i-stem Conjugation

Principal Parts: **capiō, capere, cēpī, captus**

Indicative		Subjunctive	
Present			
Active	Passive	Active	Passive
	Singular		
1 **capiō**	**capior**	1 **capiam**	**capiar**
2 **capis**	**caperis/capere**	2 **capiās**	**capiāris/capiāre**
3 **capit**	**capitur**	3 **capiat**	**capiātur**
	Plural		
1 **capimus**	**capimur**	1 **capiāmus**	**capiāmur**
2 **capitis**	**capiminī**	2 **capiātis**	**capiāminī**
3 **capiunt**	**capiuntur**	3 **capiant**	**capiantur**
Imperfect			
Active	Passive	Active	Passive
	Singular		
1 **capiēbam**	**capiēbar**	1 **caperem**	**caperer**
2 **capiēbās**	**capiēbāris/capiēbāre**	2 **caperēs**	**caperēris/caperēre**
3 **capiēbat**	**capiēbātur**	3 **caperet**	**caperētur**
	Plural		
1 **capiēbāmus**	**capiēbāmur**	1 **caperēmus**	**caperēmur**
2 **capiēbātis**	**capiēbāminī**	2 **caperētis**	**caperēminī**
3 **capiēbant**	**capiēbantur**	3 **caperent**	**caperentur**

	Indicative			Subjunctive	
Future					
	Active	Passive			
	Singular				
1	**capiam**	**capiar**			
2	**capiēs**	**capiēris/capiēre**			
3	**capiet**	**capiētur**			
	Plural				
1	**capiēmus**	**capiēmur**			
2	**capiētis**	**capiēminī**			
3	**capient**	**capientur**			
Perfect					
	Active	Passive		Active	Passive
			Singular		
1	**cēpī**	**captus, -a, -um sum**	1	**cēperim**	**captus, -a, -um sim**
2	**cēpistī**	**captus, -a, -um es**	2	**cēperis**	**captus, -a, -um sīs**
3	**cēpit**	**captus, -a, -um est**	3	**cēperit**	**captus, -a, -um sit**
			Plural		
1	**cēpimus**	**captī, -ae, -a sumus**	1	**cēperimus**	**captī, -ae, -a sīmus**
2	**cēpistis**	**captī, -ae, -a estis**	2	**cēperitis**	**captī, -ae, -a sītis**
3	**cēpērunt/cēpēre**	**captī, -ae, -a sunt**	3	**cēperint**	**captī, -ae, -a sint**
Pluperfect					
	Active	Passive		Active	Passive
			Singular		
1	**cēperam**	**captus, -a, -um eram**	1	**cēpissem**	**captus, -a, -um essem**
2	**cēperās**	**captus, -a, -um erās**	2	**cēpissēs**	**captus, -a, -um essēs**
3	**cēperat**	**captus, -a, -um erat**	3	**cēpisset**	**captus, -a, -um esset**
			Plural		
1	**cēperāmus**	**captī, -ae, -a erāmus**	1	**cēpissēmus**	**captī, -ae, -a essēmus**
2	**cēperātis**	**captī, -ae, -a erātis**	2	**cēpissētis**	**captī, -ae, -a essētis**
3	**cēperant**	**captī, -ae, -a erant**	3	**cēpissent**	**captī, -ae, -a essent**
Future Perfect					
	Active	Passive			
	Singular				
1	**cēperō**	**captus, -a, -um erō**			
2	**cēperis**	**captus, -a, -um eris**			
3	**cēperit**	**captus, -a, -um erit**			
	Plural				
1	**cēperimus**	**captī, -ae, -a erimus**			
2	**cēperitis**	**captī, -ae, -a eritis**			
3	**cēperint**	**captī, -ae, -a erunt**			

Infinitive

	Active	Passive
Present	**capere**	**capī**

Imperative

Present	Active	Passive
Singular	2 **cape**	**capere**
Plural	2 **capite**	**capiminī**

[Future	Active	Passive
Singular	2 **capitō**	**capitor**
	3 **capitō**	**capitor**
Plural	2 **capitōte**	
	3 **capiuntō**	**capiuntor**]

Fourth Conjugation

Principal Parts: **audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus**

Indicative		Subjunctive	
Present			
Active	Passive	Active	Passive
	Singular		
1 **audiō**	**audior**	1 **audiam**	**audiar**
2 **audīs**	**audīris/audīre**	2 **audiās**	**audiāris/audiāre**
3 **audit**	**audītur**	3 **audiat**	**audiātur**
	Plural		
1 **audīmus**	**audīmur**	1 **audiāmus**	**audiāmur**
2 **audītis**	**audīminī**	2 **audiātis**	**audiāminī**
3 **audiunt**	**audiuntur**	3 **audiant**	**audiantur**
Imperfect			
Active	Passive	Active	Passive
	Singular		
1 **audiēbam**	**audiēbar**	1 **audīrem**	**audīrer**
2 **audiēbās**	**audiēbāris/audiēbāre**	2 **audīrēs**	**audīrēris/audīrēre**
3 **audiēbat**	**audiēbātur**	3 **audīret**	**audīrētur**
	Plural		
1 **audiēbāmus**	**audiēbāmur**	1 **audīrēmus**	**audīrēmur**
2 **audiēbātis**	**audiēbāminī**	2 **audīrētis**	**audīrēminī**
3 **audiēbant**	**audiēbantur**	3 **audīrent**	**audīrentur**
Future			
Active	Passive		
Singular			
1 **audiam**	**audiar**		
2 **audiēs**	**audiēris/audiēre**		
3 **audiet**	**audiētur**		
Plural			
1 **audiēmus**	**audiēmur**		
2 **audiētis**	**audiēminī**		
3 **audient**	**audientur**		

	Indicative			Subjunctive	
Perfect					
	Active	Passive		Active	Passive
		Singular			
1	audīvī	audītus, -a, -um sum	1	audīverim	audītus, -a, -um sim
2	audīvistī	audītus, -a, -um es	2	audīveris	audītus, -a, -um sīs
3	audīvit	audītus, -a, -um est	3	audīverit	audītus, -a, -um sit
		Plural			
1	audīvimus	audītī, -ae, -a sumus	1	audīverimus	audītī, -ae, -a sīmus
2	audīvistis	audītī, -ae, -a estis	2	audīveritis	audītī, -ae, -a sītis
3	audīvērunt/audīvēre	audītī, -ae, -a sunt	3	audīverint	audītī, -ae, -a sint
Pluperfect					
	Active	Passive		Active	Passive
		Singular			
1	audīveram	audītus, -a, -um eram	1	audīvissem	audītus, -a, -um essem
2	audīverās	audītus, -a, -um erās	2	audīvissēs	audītus, -a, -um essēs
3	audīverat	audītus, -a, -um erat	3	audīvisset	audītus, -a, -um esset
		Plural			
1	audīverāmus	audītī, -ae, -a erāmus	1	audīvissēmus	audītī, -ae, -a essēmus
2	audīverātis	audītī, -ae, -a erātis	2	audīvissētis	audītī, -ae, -a essētis
3	audīverant	audītī, -ae, -a erant	3	audīvissent	audītī, -ae, -a essent
Future Perfect					
	Active	Passive			
	Singular				
1	audīverō	audītus, -a, -um erō			
2	audīveris	audītus, -a, -um eris			
3	audīverit	audītus, -a, -um erit			
	Plural				
1	audīverimus	audītī, -ae, -a erimus			
2	audīveritis	audītī, -ae, -a eritis			
3	audīverint	audītī, -ae, -a erunt			

Infinitive

	Active	Passive
Present	audīre	audīrī

Imperative

Present	Active	Passive
Singular	2 audī	audīre
Plural	2 audīte	audīminī
[Future	Active	Passive
Singular	2 audītō	audītor
	3 audītō	audītor
Plural	2 audītōte	
	3 audiuntō	audiuntor]

Irregular Verbs

Principal Parts: **sum, esse, fuī, futūrus**

	Indicative Active			**Subjunctive Active**	
	Present	*Imperfect*	*Future*	*Present*	*Imperfect*
			Singular		
1	**sum**	**eram**	**erō**	**sim**	**essem**
2	**es**	**erās**	**eris**	**sīs**	**essēs**
3	**est**	**erat**	**erit**	**sit**	**esset**
			Plural		
1	**sumus**	**erāmus**	**erimus**	**sīmus**	**essēmus**
2	**estis**	**erātis**	**eritis**	**sītis**	**essētis**
3	**sunt**	**erant**	**erunt**	**sint**	**essent**
	Perfect	*Pluperfect*	*Future Perfect*	*Perfect*	*Pluperfect*
			Singular		
1	**fuī**	**fueram**	**fuerō**	**fuerim**	**fuissem**
2	**fuistī**	**fuerās**	**fueris**	**fueris**	**fuissēs**
3	**fuit**	**fuerat**	**fuerit**	**fuerit**	**fuisset**
			Plural		
1	**fuimus**	**fuerāmus**	**fuerimus**	**fuerimus**	**fuissēmus**
2	**fuistis**	**fuerātis**	**fueritis**	**fueritis**	**fuissētis**
3	**fuērunt/fuēre**	**fuerant**	**fuerint**	**fuerint**	**fuissent**

Infinitive

	Active
Present	**esse**

[**Imperative**	*Present Active*	*Future Active*	
Singular	2 **es**	2 **estō**	3 **estō**
Plural	2 **este**	2 **estōte**	3 **suntō**]

Principal Parts: **possum, posse, potuī, ——**

	Indicative Active			Subjunctive Active	
	Present	*Imperfect*	*Future*	*Present*	*Imperfect*
			Singular		
1	**possum**	**poteram**	**poterō**	**possim**	**possem**
2	**potes**	**poterās**	**poteris**	**possīs**	**possēs**
3	**potest**	**poterat**	**poterit**	**possit**	**posset**
			Plural		
1	**possumus**	**poterāmus**	**poterimus**	**possīmus**	**possēmus**
2	**potestis**	**poterātis**	**poteritis**	**possītis**	**possētis**
3	**possunt**	**poterant**	**poterunt**	**possint**	**possent**
	Perfect	*Pluperfect*	*Future Perfect*	*Perfect*	*Pluperfect*
			Singular		
1	**potuī**	**potueram**	**potuerō**	**potuerim**	**potuissem**
2	**potuistī**	**potuerās**	**potueris**	**potueris**	**potuissēs**
3	**potuit**	**potuerat**	**potuerit**	**potuerit**	**potuisset**
			Plural		
1	**potuimus**	**potuerāmus**	**potuerimus**	**potuerimus**	**potuissēmus**
2	**potuistis**	**potuerātis**	**potueritis**	**potueritis**	**potuissētis**
3	**potuērunt/ potuēre**	**potuerant**	**potuerint**	**potuerint**	**potuissent**

Infinitive

	Active
Present	**posse**

Principal Parts: **eō, īre, iī/īvī, itum**

	Indicative Active			Subjunctive Active	
	Present	*Imperfect*	*Future*	*Present*	*Imperfect*
			Singular		
1	**eō**	**ībam**	**ībō**	**eam**	**īrem**
2	**īs**	**ībās**	**ībis**	**eās**	**īrēs**
3	**it**	**ībat**	**ībit**	**eat**	**īret**
			Plural		
1	**īmus**	**ībāmus**	**ībimus**	**eāmus**	**īrēmus**
2	**ītis**	**ībātis**	**ībitis**	**eātis**	**īrētis**
3	**eunt**	**ībant**	**ībunt**	**eant**	**īrent**
	Perfect	*Pluperfect*	*Future Perfect*	*Perfect*	*Pluperfect*
			Singular		
1	**iī/īvī**	**ieram/īveram**	**ierō/īverō**	**ierim/īverim**	**īssem/īvissem**
2	**īstī/īvistī**	**ierās/īverās**	**ieris/īveris**	**ieris/īveris**	**īssēs/īvissēs**
3	**iit/īt/īvit**	**ierat/īverat**	**ierit/īverit**	**ierit/īverit**	**īsset/īvisset**
			Plural		
1	**iimus/īmus/ īvimus**	**ierāmus/īverāmus**	**ierimus/īverimus**	**ierimus/īverimus**	**īssēmus/īvissēmus**
2	**īstis/īvistis**	**ierātis/īverātis**	**ieritis/īveritis**	**ieritis/īveritis**	**īssētis/īvissētis**
3	**iērunt/iēre/ īvērunt/īvēre**	**ierant/īverant**	**ierint/īverint**	**ierint/īverint**	**īssent/īvissent**

Infinitive

	Active
Present	**īre**

Imperative	*Present Active*	[*Future Active*	
Singular	2 **ī**	2 **ītō**	3 **ītō**
Plural	2 **īte**	2 **ītōte**	3 **euntō**]

Principal Parts: **ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus**

	Indicative			**Subjunctive**	
Present					
	Active	Passive		Active	Passive
		Singular			
1	**ferō**	**feror**	1	**feram**	**ferar**
2	**fers**	**ferris/ferre**	2	**ferās**	**ferāris/ferāre**
3	**fert**	**fertur**	3	**ferat**	**ferātur**
		Plural			
1	**ferimus**	**ferimur**	1	**ferāmus**	**ferāmur**
2	**fertis**	**feriminī**	2	**ferātis**	**ferāminī**
3	**ferunt**	**feruntur**	3	**ferant**	**ferantur**
Imperfect					
	Active	Passive		Active	Passive
		Singular			
1	**ferēbam**	**ferēbar**	1	**ferrem**	**ferrer**
2	**ferēbās**	**ferēbāris/ferēbāre**	2	**ferrēs**	**ferrēris/ferrēre**
3	**ferēbat**	**ferēbātur**	3	**ferret**	**ferrētur**
		Plural			
1	**ferēbāmus**	**ferēbāmur**	1	**ferrēmus**	**ferrēmur**
2	**ferēbātis**	**ferēbāminī**	2	**ferrētis**	**ferrēminī**
3	**ferēbant**	**ferēbantur**	3	**ferrent**	**ferrentur**

Future		
	Active	Passive
	Singular	
1	**feram**	**ferar**
2	**ferēs**	**ferēris/ferēre**
3	**feret**	**ferētur**
	Plural	
1	**ferēmus**	**ferēmur**
2	**ferētis**	**ferēminī**
3	**ferent**	**ferentur**

Indicative		**Subjunctive**	
Perfect			
Active	Passive	Active	Passive
	Singular		
1 **tulī**	**lātus, -a, -um sum**	1 **tulerim**	**lātus, -a, -um sim**
2 **tulistī**	**lātus, -a, -um es**	2 **tuleris**	**lātus, -a, -um sīs**
3 **tulit**	**lātus, -a, -um est**	3 **tulerit**	**lātus, -a, -um sit**
	Plural		
1 **tulimus**	**lātī, -ae, -a sumus**	1 **tulerimus**	**lātī, -ae, -a sīmus**
2 **tulistis**	**lātī, -ae, -a estis**	2 **tuleritis**	**lātī, -ae, -a sītis**
3 **tulērunt/tulēre**	**lātī, -ae, -a sunt**	3 **tulerint**	**lātī, -ae, -a sint**
Pluperfect			
Active	Passive	Active	Passive
	Singular		
1 **tuleram**	**lātus, -a, -um eram**	1 **tulissem**	**lātus, -a, -um essem**
2 **tulerās**	**lātus, -a, -um erās**	2 **tulissēs**	**lātus, -a, -um essēs**
3 **tulerat**	**lātus, -a, -um erat**	3 **tulisset**	**lātus, -a, -um esset**
	Plural		
1 **tulerāmus**	**lātī, -ae, -a erāmus**	1 **tulissēmus**	**lātī, -ae, -a essēmus**
2 **tulerātis**	**lātī, -ae, -a erātis**	2 **tulissētis**	**lātī, -ae, -a essētis**
3 **tulerant**	**lātī, -ae, -a erant**	3 **tulissent**	**lātī, -ae, -a essent**
Future Perfect			
Active	Passive		
Singular			
1 **tulerō**	**lātus, -a, -um erō**		
2 **tuleris**	**lātus, -a, -um eris**		
3 **tulerit**	**lātus, -a, -um erit**		
Plural			
1 **tulerimus**	**lātī, -ae, -a erimus**		
2 **tuleritis**	**lātī, -ae, -a eritis**		
3 **tulerint**	**lātī, -ae, -a erunt**		

Infinitive

	Active	Passive
Present	**ferre**	**ferrī**

Imperative

Present	Active	Passive
Singular	2 **fer**	**ferre**
Plural	2 **ferte**	**feriminī**
[Future	Active	
Singular	2 **fertō**	**fertor**
	3 **fertō**	**fertor**
Plural	2 **fertōte**	
	3 **feruntō**	**feruntur**]

LATIN TO ENGLISH VOCABULARY

This Latin to English Vocabulary includes all words from vocabulary lists in Part I of *Learn to Read Latin*. Numbers in parentheses refer to the chapter (e.g., 6) or section (e.g., §16) in which the vocabulary word is introduced. Some additional meanings given in vocabulary notes are included.

ā, ab (prep. + abl.) (away) from (1); (prep. + abl.) by (3)
A. = **Aulus, Aulī** *m.* Aulus (§16)
abeō, abīre, abiī, abitum go away (5)
ac or **atque** (conj.) and (also) (3)
accēdō, accēdere, accessī, accessum go to, come to, approach (5)
accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptus receive; accept; hear (of), learn (of) (5)
ācer, ācris, ācre sharp, keen; fierce (6)
acerbus, -a, -um bitter; harsh (7)
ad (prep. + acc.) toward, to (1)
Aenēās, Aenēae *m.* Aeneas; **Aenēān** = *acc. sing.;* **Aenēā** = *voc. sing.* (§16)
ager, agrī *m.* field (1)
agō, agere, ēgī, āctus drive; do; spend, conduct (4)
  causam agere (idiom) to plead a case (4)
  age, agite, *used to strengthen other commands,* come on! (4)
agricola, agricolae *m.* farmer (1)
altum, altī *n.* deep sea; height (4)
altus, -a, -um tall, high; deep (4)
ambulō (1-intr.) walk (2)
amīcitia, amīcitiae *f.* friendship (5)
amīcus, -a, -um friendly (+ dat.) (3)
amīcus, amīcī *m.* friend (3)
amō (1-tr.) love (2)
amor, amōris *m.* love; *pl.,* feelings of love (6)
Amor, Amōris *m.* Love, Amor (§63)
anima, animae *f.* life force; soul (1)
animal, animālis, -ium *n.* animal (6)
animus, animī *m.* (rational) soul, mind; spirit; *pl.,* strong feelings (2)
ante (adv.) before, earlier, previously; (prep. + acc.) before; in front of (7)
antīquus, -a, -um old, ancient (7)
M. Antōnius, M. Antōniī *m.* Marcus Antonius, Marc Antony (§16)
Apollō, Apollinis *m.* Apollo (§63)
App. = **Appius, Appiī** *m.* Appius (§16)
Appius, Appiī *m.* Appius (§16)
āra, ārae *f.* altar (7)
arma, armōrum *n. pl.* arms, weapons (2)
ars, artis, -ium *f.* skill, art; guile; trick (7)
Athēnae, Athēnārum *f. pl.* Athens (6)
atque or **ac** (conj.) and (also) (3)
audacter or **audāciter** (adv.) boldly; recklessly (8)
audāx, audācis daring, bold, reckless (8)
audeō, audēre, ausus sum dare (8)
audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus hear, listen (to) (4)
auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātus carry away, take away, remove (7)
Augustus, Augustī *m.* Augustus (§63)
Aulus, Aulī *m.* Aulus (§16)
aurum, aurī *n.* gold (1)
aut (conj.) or; **aut . . . aut . . .** either . . . or . . . (7)
autem (postpositive conj.) however; moreover (6)
auxilia, auxiliōrum *n. pl.* auxiliary troops (4)
auxilium, auxiliī *n.* aid, help (4)

Bacchus, Bacchī *m.* Bacchus (§63)
bellum, bellī *n.* war (1)
  bellum gerere (idiom) to wage war (4)
bene (adv.) well (5)
bonus, -a, -um good (3)

C. = **Gaius**, **Gaiī** *m.* Gaius (§16)
caecus, **-a**, **-um** blind; hidden, secret, dark (8)
caelum, **caelī** *n.* sky, heaven (4)
Caesar, **Caesaris** *m.* Caesar (§63)
canō, **canere**, **cecinī**, **cantus** sing (of) (4)
capiō, **capere**, **cēpī**, **captus** take (up), capture; win (4)
  cōnsilium capere (idiom) to form a plan (4)
careō, **carēre**, **caruī**, **caritūrus** lack, be without, be free (from) (+ abl.) (6)
carmen, **carminis** *n.* song, poem (6)
Carthāgō, **Carthāginis** *f.* Carthage (6)
cārus, **-a**, **-um** precious; dear (to) (+ dat.) (7)
Catilīna, **Catilīnae** *m.* Catiline (§16)
Catō, **Catōnis** *m.* Cato (§63)
Catullus, **Catullī** *m.* Catullus (§16)
causa, **causae** *f.* reason, cause; case (4)
  causam agere (idiom) to plead a case (4)
cēdō, **cēdere**, **cessī**, **cessum** go, move; yield; withdraw (5)
Cerēs, **Cereris** *f.* Ceres (§63)
certē (adv.) surely, certainly; at least (7)
certus, **-a**, **-um** sure, certain, reliable (7)
Cicerō, **Cicerōnis** *m.* Cicero (§63)
cīvis, **cīvis**, **-ium** *m.* or *f.* citizen (6)
cīvitās, **cīvitātis** *f.* state, citizenry; citizenship (7)
clārus, **-a**, **-um** bright, clear; famous (4)
Cn. = **Gnaeus**, **Gnaeī** *m.* Gnaeus (§16)
cōgitō (1-tr.) think; ponder (2)
cōnor (1-tr.) try, attempt (8)
cōnsilium, **cōnsiliī** *n.* deliberation; plan, advice; judgment (1)
  cōnsilium capere (idiom) to form a plan (4)
cōnsul, **cōnsulis** *m.* consul (8)
cōpia, **cōpiae** *f.* wealth, abundance; *pl.*, troops, forces (7)
Corinna, **Corinnae** *f.* Corinna (§63)
L. Cornēlius Sulla, **L. Cornēliī Sullae** *m.* Lucius Cornelius Sulla (§16)
corpus, **corporis** *n.* body (6)
cum (prep. + abl.) with (1)
Cupīdō, **Cupīdinis** *m.* Cupid, Amor (§63)
cupidus, **-a**, **-um** desirous (+ gen.) (4)
cupiō, **cupere**, **cupiī/cupīvī**, **cupītus** desire, long for, want (7)
cūr (interrog. adv.) why (2)
cūra, **cūrae** *f.* care, concern; anxiety (2)
Cynthia, **Cynthiae** *f.* Cynthia (§63)

D. = **Decimus**, **Decimī** *m.* Decimus (§16)
dē (prep. + abl.) (down) from; about, concerning (1)
dea, **deae** *f.* goddess (1)
dēbeō, **dēbēre**, **dēbuī**, **dēbitus** owe; ought (2)
Decimus, **Decimī** *m.* Decimus (§16)
deus, **deī** *m.* god (1)
Diāna, **Diānae** *f.* Diana (§63)
dīcō, **dīcere**, **dīxī**, **dictus** say, speak, tell (4)
dictum, **dictī** *n.* word; saying (6)
differō, **differre**, **distulī**, **dīlātus** *intr.*, differ, be different; *tr.*, carry in different directions (7)
difficilis, **difficile** difficult (6)
difficiliter or **difficulter** (adv.) with difficulty (6)
dīligentia, **dīligentiae** *f.* diligence (3)
Dīs, **Dītis** *m.* Dis, Pluto, Hades (§63)
discēdō, **discēdere**, **discessī**, **discessum** go away, depart (5)
dīvīnus, **-a**, **-um** belonging to the gods, divine (§63)
dīvus, **-a**, **-um** deified, divine (§63)
dō, **dare**, **dedī**, **datus** give, grant (2)
  poenās dare (idiom) to pay the penalty (2)
  vēla dare (idiom) to set sail (2)
dominus, **dominī** *m.* master, lord (1)
domus, **domī** *f.* house, home (6)
dōnō (1-tr.) give; present, reward (2)
dōnum, **dōnī** *n.* gift (1)
dūcō, **dūcere**, **dūxī**, **ductus** lead; consider (4)
dūrus, **-a**, **-um** hard; harsh (5)

ē, **ex** (prep. + abl.) (out) from (1)
ecce (interj.) lo! behold! look! (§74)
ego, **meī** (personal pron.) I; me (4)
—, **meī** (reflexive pron.) myself (5)
enim (postpositive conj.) in fact, indeed; for (2)
eō, **īre**, **iī/īvī**, **itum** go (3)
equidem (adv.) indeed, certainly; for my part (4)
errō (1-intr.) wander; err, make a mistake (2)
et (conj.) and; **et** . . . **et** . . . both . . . and . . . ; (adv.) even, also (1)
etenim (conj.) and indeed; for in fact (2)
etiam (adv.) also, even; still (7)
etsī (conj.) although (5)
experior, **experīrī**, **expertus sum** test; try; experience (8)
ex(s)ilium, **ex(s)iliī** *n.* exile, banishment (8)

facile (adv.) easily; readily (6)
facilis, **facile** easy (6)
faciō, **facere**, **fēcī**, **factus** make; do (4)
factum, **factī** *n.* deed (1)
falsus, **-a**, **-um** deceptive, false (7)
fāma, **fāmae** *f.* report, rumor; reputation, fame (1)
fateor, **fatērī**, **fassus sum** confess, admit (8)
fātum, **fātī** *n.* destiny, fate (5)
fēlīx, **fēlīcis** lucky, fortunate, happy (6)
fēmina, **fēminae** *f.* woman; wife (1)
ferō, **ferre**, **tulī**, **lātus** bring, bear, carry; endure; say, report (5)
  lēgem ferre (idiom) to pass a law (8)
  sē ferre (idiom) to proceed (quickly) (5)

ferrum, ferrī *n.* iron; sword (1)
fīlia, fīliae *f.* daughter (1)
fīlius, fīliī *m.* son (1)
fortis, forte brave; strong (6)
fortūna, fortūnae *f.* fortune, chance (7)
forum, forī *n.* public square, marketplace, forum (3)
frāter, frātris *m.* brother (7)
fuga, fugae *f.* flight (8)
fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitūrus flee (7)

Gaius, Gaiī *m.* Gaius (§16)
gaudium, gaudium *n.* joy (8)
gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus bear; manage, conduct; perform (4)
  bellum gerere (idiom) to wage war (4)
gladius, gladiī *m.* sword (1)
glōria, glōriae *f.* renown, glory (4)
Gnaeus, Gnaeī *m.* Gnaeus (§16)
Gracchus, Gracchī *m.* Gracchus (either of the Gracchi brothers) (§16)
Graecia, Graeciae *f.* Greece (§16)
gravis, grave heavy, deep; important, serious; severe (8)

habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus have, hold; consider (2)
Hannibal, Hannibalis *m.* Hannibal (§63)
herc(u)le (interj.) by Hercules! (§74)
heu (interj.) alas! oh! (§74)
hic, haec, hoc (demonstr. adj./pron.) this; these (8)
homō, hominis *m.* human being, man (6)
Q. Horātius Flaccus, Q. Horātiī Flaccī *m.* Quintus Horatius Flaccus, Horace (§16)
hostis, hostis, -ium *m.* (public) enemy (6)

īdem, eadem, idem same (8)
Īlium, Īliī *n.* Ilium, Troy (§16)
ille, illa, illud (demonstr. adj./pron.) that; those (8)
immortālis, immortāle immortal (7)
imperium, imperiī *n.* power, authority, command; empire (3)
impius, -a, -um disloyal, wicked (5)
in (prep. + acc.) into, onto; against; (prep. + abl.) in, on (1)
incertus, -a, -um unsure, uncertain, unreliable (7)
incola, incolae *m.* inhabitant (3)
īnfēlīx, īnfēlīcis unlucky, unfortunate, unhappy (6)
ingenium, ingeniī *n.* nature; disposition; (natural) talent (7)
ingēns, ingentis huge, vast; remarkable (6)
inimīcitia, inimīcitiae *f.* enmity, hostility; *pl.*, unfriendly relations, enmity (5)
inimīcus, -a, -um unfriendly, hostile (+ dat.) (3)
inimīcus, inimīcī *m.* (personal) enemy (3)
inquam (defective verb) say (8)
īnsidiae, īnsidiārum *f. pl.* ambush, plot, treachery (7)
īnsula, īnsulae *f.* island (1)
intellegō, intellegere, intellēxī, intellēctus understand (6)
inter (prep. + acc.) between, among; during (6)
interficiō, interficere, interfēcī, interfectus kill (5)
invidia, invidiae *f.* envy, jealousy; ill-will, resentment (4)
ipse, ipsa, ipsum (intensive adj.) -self, -selves; very (5)
īra, īrae *f.* anger, wrath (2)
is, ea, id (demonstr. adj.) this, that; these, those; (personal pron.) he, she, it; they; him, her, it; them (4)
iste, ista, istud (demonstr. adj./pron.) that (of yours); those (of yours) (8)
ita (adv.) so, thus, in this way, in such a way (7)
Italia, Italiae *f.* Italy (1)
iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussus order (2)
Iūlia, Iūliae *f.* Julia (§16)
C. Iūlius Caesar, C. Iūliī Caesaris *m.* Gaius Julius Caesar (§63)
Iūnō, Iūnōnis *f.* Juno (§63)
Iuppiter, Iovis *m.* Jupiter (§63)
iūre (adv.) rightly, justly (6)
iūs, iūris *n.* right, law; judgment; court (6)

L. = Lūcius, Lūciī *m.* Lucius (§16)
labōrō (1-intr.) work; suffer, be distressed (2)
laetus, -a, -um happy; fertile (3)
laudō (1-tr.) praise (3)
legō, legere, lēgī, lēctus choose; read (6)
Lesbia, Lesbiae *f.* Lesbia (§63)
levis, leve light; trivial; fickle (8)
lēx, lēgis *f.* law (8)
  lēgem ferre (idiom) to pass a law (8)
liber, librī *m.* book (1)
līber, lībera, līberum free (3)
Līber, Līberī *m.* Liber, Bacchus (§63)
līberō (1-tr.) free (6)
lībertās, lībertātis *f.* freedom (8)
Līvia, Līviae *f.* Livia (§16)
locus, locī *m.* place; **loca, locōrum** *n. pl.* places (8)
Lūcius, Lūciī *m.* Lucius (§16)

M. = Marcus, Marcī *m.* Marcus (§16)
M'. = Manius, Maniī, *m.* Manius (§16)
magnus, -a, -um large, big; great (3)
male (adv.) badly (5)
malus, -a, -um bad, evil (3)
maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsūrus remain, stay; *tr.*, await (7)
Manius, Maniī, *m.* Manius (§16)
Marcus, Marcī *m.* Marcus (§16)
mare, maris, *-ium *n.* sea (6)
Mars, Martis *m.* Mars (§63)

māter, **mātris** *f.* mother (6)
mehercule or **mehercules** (interj.) by Hercules! (§74)
—, **meī** (reflexive pron.) myself (5)
meminī, **meminisse** (defective verb) remember (5)
mēns, **mentis**, **-ium** *f.* mind; intention, purpose; attitude (6)
Mercurius, **Mercuriī** *m.* Mercury (§63)
meus, **-a**, **-um** my, mine (4); my (own) (5)
mī, *masc. sing. voc. of* **meus**, **-a**, **-um** (4)
mīles, **mīlitis** *m.* soldier (6)
Minerva, **Minervae** *f.* Minerva (§63)
miser, **misera**, **miserum** wretched, pitiable, miserable (3)
mittō, **mittere**, **mīsī**, **missus** send (4)
modus, **modī** *m.* measure; limit; rhythm, meter; manner, way (8)
  quemadmodum (rel. or interrog. adv.) in the manner in which, as; how (8)
  quō modō (interrog. adv.) in what way, how (8)
moenia, **moenium** *n. pl.* (city) walls (6)
mōnstrō (1-tr.) show, point out (2)
mora, **morae** *f.* delay (3)
morior, **morī**, **mortuus sum** die (8)
mors, **mortis**, **-ium** *f.* death (7)
mortālis, **mortāle** mortal (7)
moveō, **movēre**, **mōvī**, **mōtus** set in motion, stir (up), move (2)
mox (adv.) soon; then (3)
multum (adv.) much, a lot (5)
multus, **-a**, **-um** much, many (3)
mūnus, **mūneris** *n.* service, duty; gift (7)

nam (conj.) for (2)
namque (conj.) for in fact (2)
nātūra, **nātūrae** *f.* nature (7)
nauta, **nautae** *m.* sailor (1)
-ne (interrog. enclitic particle) *added to the first word of a question* (2)
nē (adv.) not (7)
nē . . . quidem not . . . even (4)
nec or **neque** (conj.-adv.) and not; **neque/nec . . . neque/nec . . .** neither . . . nor . . . (2)
Neptūnus, **Neptūnī** *m.* Neptune (§63)
neque or **nec** (conj.-adv.) and not; **neque/nec . . . neque/nec . . .** neither . . . nor . . . (2)
Nerō Claudius Caesar, **Nerōnis Claudiī Caesaris** *m.* Nero Claudius Caesar, Nero (§63)
nihil or **nīl** (indeclinable noun) *n.* nothing (3)
nisi (conj.) if . . . not, unless (5)
nōn (adv.) not (2)
nōn sōlum . . . sed/vērum etiam . . . not only . . . but also . . . (7)
nōs, **nostrum/nostrī** (personal pron.) we; us (4)
noster, **nostra**, **nostrum** our, ours (4); our (own) (5)
——, **nostrum/nostrī** (reflexive pron.) ourselves (5)
novus, **-a**, **-um** new; strange (7)
numquam (adv.) never (6)
nunc (adv.) now (3)

ō (interj.) O (1)
oculus, **oculī** *m.* eye (8)
ōdī, **ōdisse** (defective verb) hate (5)
odium, **odiī** *n.* hatred (3)
omnīnō (adv.) entirely; *in negative or virtual negative statements or questions,* at all (6)
omnis, **omne** every; all (6)
oppidum, **oppidī** *n.* town (1)
optō (1-tr.) desire (2)
Orcus, **Orcī** *m.* Orcus (§63)
P. Ovidius Nāsō, **P. Ovidiī Nāsōnis** *m.* Publius Ovidius Naso, Ovid (§63)

P. = **Publius**, **Publiī** *m.* Publius (§16)
pāreō, **pārēre**, **pāruī**, **pāritūrus** be obedient, obey (+ dat.) (8)
pars, **partis**, **-ium** *f.* part; *sing. or pl.,* (political) faction (7)
parvus, **-a**, **-um** small, little (3)
pater, **patris** *m.* father (6)
patior, **patī**, **passus sum** experience, suffer, endure; permit, allow (8)
patrēs cōnscrīptī *voc. pl.* enrolled fathers, senators (6)
patria, **patriae** *f.* country, homeland (1)
paucī, **paucae**, **pauca** few (4)
pāx, **pācis** *f.* peace; favor (8)
pecūnia, **pecūniae** *f.* money (1)
per (prep. + acc.) through; by (4)
perficiō, **perficere**, **perfēcī**, **perfectus** complete, accomplish (5)
perīculum, **perīculī** *n.* danger (1)
petō, **petere**, **petiī/petīvī**, **petītus** ask (for), seek; attack (7)
pius, **-a**, **-um** dutiful, loyal (5)
placeō, **placēre**, **placuī**, **placitum** be pleasing, please (+ dat.) (8)
poena, **poenae** *f.* punishment, penalty (2)
  poenās dare (idiom) to pay the penalty (2)
poēta, **poētae** *m.* poet (1)
Cn. Pompeius Magnus, **Cn. Pompeiī Magnī** *m.* Gnaeus Pompeius Magnus, Pompey the Great (§16)
pōnō, **pōnere**, **posuī**, **positus** put, place; set aside (4)
populus, **populī** *m.* (the) people; populace (3)
M. Porcius Catō, **M. Porciī Catōnis** *m.* Marcus Porcius Cato, Cato the Elder *or* Cato the Censor (§63)

possum, posse, potuī, —— be able, can (2)
post (adv.) after(ward), later; behind; (prep. + acc.) after; behind (7)
postquam (conj.) after (5)
prō (prep. + abl.) in front of; on behalf of, for; in return for, instead of (3)
proelium, proeliī *n.* battle (5)
Sex. Propertius, Sex. Propertiī *m.* Sextus Propertius (§63)
propter (prep. + acc.) on account of, because of (3)
prōvincia, prōvinciae *f.* province (3)
Publius, Publiī *m.* Publius (§16)
puella, puellae *f.* girl (1)
puer, puerī *m.* boy (1)
pugnō (1-intr.) fight (3)
pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum beautiful, handsome (3)

Q. = **Quintus, Quintī** *m.* Quintus (§16)
quamquam (conj.) although (5)
-que (enclitic conj.) and (1)
quemadmodum (rel. or interrog. adv.) in the manner in which, as; how (8)
quī, quae, quod (interrog. adj.) what, which (8)
quī, quae, quod (rel. pron.) who, which, that (8)
quidem (postpositive adv.) indeed, certainly; at least (4)
  nē . . . quidem not even (4)
Quintus, Quintī *m.* Quintus (§16)
quis, quid (interrog. pron.) who, what (8)
quō modō (interrog. adv.) in what way, how (8)
quoniam (conj.) since, because (5)
quoque (adv.) also, too (8)

redeō, redīre, rediī, reditum go back, return (5)
rēgīna, rēgīnae *f.* queen (1)
regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus rule, control (4)
relinquō, relinquere, relīquī, relictus leave (behind), abandon (8)
Remus, Remī *m.* Remus (§16)
respondeō, respondēre, respondī, respōnsus answer, respond (2)
rēx, rēgis *m.* king (6)
Rōma, Rōmae *f.* Rome (6)
Rōmānī, Rōmānōrum *m. pl.* (the) Romans (3)
Rōmānus, -a, -um Roman (3)
Rōmulus, Rōmulī *m.* Romulus (§16)
rūs, rūris *n. sing. or pl.,* country(side) (6)

saepe (adv.) often (8)
salūs, salūtis *f.* safety; health (§74)
  salūtem dīcere to say "greetings," to say hello (§74)
salvē/salvēte hello! good day! (§74)
sapientia, sapientiae *f.* wisdom (2)
scrībō, scrībere, scrīpsī, scrīptus write (4)
sed (conj.) but (2)
semper (adv.) always (3)
C. Semprōnius Gracchus, C. Semprōniī Gracchī *m.* Gaius Sempronius Gracchus (§16)
Ti. Semprōnius Gracchus, Ti. Semprōniī Gracchī *m.* Tiberius Sempronius Gracchus (§16)
sententia, sententiae *f.* thought, feeling; opinion (4)
sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus perceive; feel (4)
sequor, sequī, secūtus sum follow (8)
Ser. = **Servius, Serviī** *m.* Servius (§16)
L. Sergius Catilīna, L. Sergiī Catilīnae *m.* Lucius Sergius Catilina, Catiline (§16)
servitūs, servitūtis *f.* slavery (6)
Servius, Serviī *m.* Servius (§16)
servus, servī *m.* slave (1)
Sex. = **Sextus, Sextī** *m.* Sextus (§16)
Sextus, Sextī *m.* Sextus (§16)
sī (conj.) if (5)
sīc (adv.) so, thus, in this way, in such a way (5)
sine (prep. + abl.) without (3)
socius, -a, -um allied (4)
socius, sociī *m.* ally, comrade (4)
sōlum (adv.) only (7)
soror, sorōris *f.* sister (7)
Sp. = **Spurius, Spuriī** *m.* Spurius (§16)
Spurius, Spuriī *m.* Spurius (§16)
studium, studiī *n.* zeal, enthusiasm; pursuit, study (2)
sub (prep. + acc.) under; up to; (prep. + abl.) under; at the foot of; near (6)
—, **suī** (reflexive pron.) himself, herself, itself; themselves (5)
Sulla, Sullae *m.* Sulla
sum, esse, fuī, futūrus be; exist (2)
superō (1-tr.) overcome, conquer; surpass (3)
suus, -a, -um his (own), her (own), its (own); their (own) (5)

T. = **Tītus, Tītī** *m.* Titus (§16)
tamen (adv.) nevertheless (5)
tandem (adv.) finally, at last; *in questions and commands,* pray, I ask you, then (8)
templum, templī *n.* temple (7)
teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus hold, grasp; keep, possess; occupy (3)
terra, terrae *f.* land, earth (3)
terreō, terrēre, terruī, territus terrify, frighten (7)
Ti. = **Tiberius, Tiberiī** *m.* Tiberius (§16)
Tiberius, Tiberiī *m.* Tiberius (§16)
timeō, timēre, timuī, —— fear, be afraid (of) (2)
timor, timōris *m.* fear (6)
Tītus, Tītī *m.* Titus (§16)

trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditus hand over, surrender; hand down (7)

Troia, Troiae *f.* Troy (§16)

tū, tuī (personal pron.) you (4)

—, **tuī** (reflexive pron.) yourself (5)

Tullia, Tulliae *f.* Tullia (§16)

M. Tullius Cicerō, M. Tulliī Cicerōnis *m.* Marcus Tullius Cicero (§63)

tuus, -a, -um your, yours (4); your (own) (5)

ubi (conj.) when (5); (interrog. adv.) where, when (5)

umbra, umbrae *f.* shadow, shade (7)

umquam (adv.) ever (6)

urbs, urbis, -ium *f.* city (6)

ut (conj.) as; when (5)

utinam (particle) *introduces an Optative subjunctive* (7)

valdē (adv.) strongly (5)

valē/valēte greetings! farewell! (§74)

valeō, valēre, valuī, valitūrus be strong, be able; be well, fare well (§74)

C. Valerius Catullus, C. Valeriī Catullī *m.* Gaius Valerius Catullus (§16)

validus, -a, -um strong; healthy (4)

vēlum, vēlī *n.* sail (2)

  vēla dare (idiom) to set sail (2)

veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum come (4)

Venus, Veneris *f.* Venus (§63)

verbum, verbī *n.* word (1)

P. Vergilius Marō, P. Vergiliī Marōnis *m.* Publius Vergilius Maro, Vergil (§63)

vērō (adv.) certainly, indeed; but (in fact) (7)

vērum (conj.) but (7)

vērus, -a, -um real, true (7)

Vesta, Vestae *f.* Vesta (§63)

vester, vestra, vestrum your (pl.), yours (pl.) (4); your (pl.) (own) (5)

——, **vestrum/vestrī** (reflexive pron.) yourselves (5)

via, viae *f.* way, road, path, street (1)

videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsus see (2); *passive,* be seen; seem (3)

vincō, vincere, vīcī, victus conquer, overcome; *intr.,* win (7)

vir, virī *m.* man; husband (1)

virtūs, virtūtis *f.* manliness, courage; excellence, virtue (7)

vīs, ——, -ium *f.* force, power; violence; *pl.,* strength (6)

vīta, vītae *f.* life (2)

vīvō, vīvere, vīxī, vīctūrus live, be alive (6)

vocō (1-tr.) call; summon; name (2)

vōs, vestrum/vestrī (personal pron.) you (pl.) (4)

——, **vestrum/vestrī** (reflexive pron.) yourselves (5)

vōx, vōcis *f.* voice; word (7)

Vulcānus, Vulcānī *m.* Vulcan (§63)

ENGLISH TO LATIN VOCABULARY

This English to Latin Vocabulary includes all words from vocabulary lists in Part I of *Learn to Read Latin.* Numbers in parentheses refer to the chapter (e.g., 6) or section (e.g., §16) in which the vocabulary word is introduced. Some additional meanings given in vocabulary notes are included.

? -ne (enclitic) *added to the first word of a question* (2)

a lot multum (adv.) (5)
abandon relinquō, relinquere, relīquī, relictus (8)
about dē (prep. + abl.) (1)
abundance cōpia, cōpiae *f.* (7)
accept accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptus (5)
accomplish perficiō, perficere, perfēcī, perfectus (5)
admit fateor, fatērī, fassus sum (8)
advice cōnsilium, cōnsiliī *n.* (1)
Aeneas Aenēās, Aenēae *m.*; Aenēān = *acc. sing.*; Aenēā = *voc. sing.* (§16)
after post (adv.) (7)
after post (prep. + acc.) (7)
after postquam (conj.) (5)
afterward post (adv.) (7)
against in (prep. + acc.) (1)
aid auxilium, auxiliī *n.* (4)
alas heu (interj.) (§74)
all omnis, omne (6)
allied socius, -a, -um (4)
allow patior, patī, passus sum (8)
ally socius, sociī *m.* (4)
also et (adv.) (1); etiam (adv.) (7); quoque (adv.) (8)
altar āra, ārae *f.* (7)
although etsī (conj.) (5); quamquam (conj.) (5)
always semper (adv.) (3)
ambush īnsidiae, īnsidiārum *f. pl.* (7)
among inter (prep. + acc.) (6)
Amor Amor, Amōris *m.* (§63); Cupīdō, Cupīdinis *m.* (§63)
ancient antīquus, -a, -um (7)
and et (conj.) (1); -que (enclitic conj.) (1)
and (also) atque (conj.) (3); ac (conj.) (3)
and indeed etenim (conj.) (2)
and not neque, nec (conj.-adv.) (2)
anger īra, īrae *f.* (2)
animal animal, animālis, -ium *n.* (6)
answer respondeō, respondēre, respondī, respōnsus (2)
Antony Antōnius, Antōniī *m.* (§16)
anxiety cūra, cūrae *f.* (2)
Apollo Apollō, Apollinis *m.* (§63)
Appius Appius, Appiī *m.* (abbreviation: App.) (§16)
approach accēdō, accēdere, accessī, accessum (5)
arms arma, armōrum *n. pl.* (2)
art ars, artis, -ium *f.* (7)
as ut (conj.) (5); quemadmodum (rel. adv.) (8)
ask (for) petō, petere, petiī/petīvī, petītus (7)
at all omnīnō (adv.) *in negative or virtual negative statements or questions* (6)
at last tandem (adv.) (8)
at least quidem (postpositive adv.) (4); certē (adv.) (7)
at the foot of sub (prep. + abl.) (6)
Athens Athēnae, Athēnārum *f. pl.* (6)
attack petō, petere, petiī/petīvī, petītus (7)
attempt cōnor (1-tr.) (8)
attitude mēns, mentis, -ium *f.* (6)
Augustus Augustus, Augustī *m.* (§63)
Aulus Aulus, Aulī *m.* (abbreviation: A.) (§16)
authority imperium, imperiī *n.* (3)
auxiliary troops auxilia, auxiliōrum *n. pl.* (4)
await maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsūrus (7)
away from ā, ab (prep. + abl.) (1)

Bacchus Bacchus, Bacchī *m.* (§63)
bad malus, -a, -um (3)
badly male (adv.) (5)
banishment ex(s)ilium, ex(s)iliī *n.* (8)
battle proelium, proeliī *n.* (5)
be sum, esse, fuī, futūrus (2)
be able possum, posse, potuī, —— (2); valeō, valēre, valuī, valitūrus (§74)
be afraid (of) timeō, timēre, timuī, —— (2)
be alive vīvō, vīvere, vīxī, vīctūrus (6)
be different differō, differre, distulī, dīlātus (7)
be distressed labōrō (1-intr.) (2)
be free (from) careō, carēre, caruī, caritūrus (+ abl.) (6)
be obedient pāreō, pārēre, pāruī, pāritūrus (+ dat.) (8)
be pleasing placeō, placēre, placuī, placitum (+ dat.) (8)
be strong valeō, valēre, valuī, valitūrus (§74)
be well valeō, valēre, valuī, valitūrus (§74)
be without careō, carēre, caruī, caritūrus (+ abl.) (6)
bear gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus (4); ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus (5)
beautiful pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum (3)
because quoniam (conj.) (5)
because of propter (prep. + acc.) (3)
before ante (adv.) (7)
before ante (prep. + acc.) (7)
behind post (adv.) (7)
behind post (prep. + acc.) (7)
behold! ecce (interj.) (§74)
belonging to the gods dīvīnus, -a, -um (§63)
between inter (prep. + acc.) (6)
big magnus, -a, -um (3)
bitter acerbus, -a, -um (7)
blind caecus, -a, -um (8)
body corpus, corporis *n.* (6)
bold audāx, audācis (8)
boldly audacter *or* audāciter (8)
book liber, librī *m.* (1)
both . . . and . . . et . . . et . . . (1)
boy puer, puerī *m.* (1)
brave fortis, forte (6)
bright clārus, -a, -um (4)
bring ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus (5)
brother frāter, frātris *m.* (7)
but sed (conj.) (2); vērum (conj.) (7)
but (in fact) vērō (adv.) (7)
by ā, ab (prep. + abl.) (3); per (prep. + acc.) (4)
by Hercules! herc(u)le (interj.) (§74); mehercule (interj.) (§74); mehercules (interj.) (§74)

Caesar Caesar, Caesaris *m.* (§63)
call vocō (1-tr.) (2)
can possum, posse, potuī, —— (2)
capture capiō, capere, cēpī, captus (4)
care cūra, cūrae *f.* (2)
carry ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus (5)
carry away auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātus (7)
carry in different directions differō, differre, distulī, dīlātus (7)
Carthage Carthāgō, Carthāginis *f.* (6)
case causa, causae *f.* (4)
Catiline Catilīna, Catilīnae *m.* (§16)
Cato Catō, Catōnis *m.* (§63)
Catullus Catullus, Catullī *m.* (§16)
cause causa, causae *f.* (4)
Ceres Cerēs, Cereris *f.* (§63)
certain certus, -a, -um (7)
certainly equidem (adv.) (4); quidem (postpositive adv.) (4); vērō (adv.) (7)
chance fortūna, fortūnae *f.* (7)
choose legō, legere, lēgī, lēctus (6)
Cicero Cicerō, Cicerōnis *m.* (§63)
citizen cīvis, cīvis, -ium *m.* or *f.* (6)
citizenry cīvitās, cīvitātis *f.* (7)
citizenship cīvitās, cīvitātis *f.* (7)
city urbs, urbis, -ium *f.* (6)
city walls moenia, moenium *n. pl.* (6)
clear clārus, -a, -um (4)
come veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum (4)
come on! age, agite (4)
come to accēdō, accēdere, accessī, accessum (5)
command imperium, imperiī *n.* (3)
complete perficiō, perficere, perfēcī, perfectus (5)
comrade socius, sociī *m.* (4)
concern cūra, cūrae *f.* (2)
concerning dē (prep. + abl.) (1)
conduct agō, agere, ēgī, āctus (4); gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus (4)
confess fateor, fatērī, fassus sum (8)
conquer superō (1-tr.) (3); vincō, vincere, vīcī, victus (7)
consider habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus (2); dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus (4)
consul cōnsul, cōnsulis *m.* (8)
control regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus (4)
Corinna Corinna, Corinnae *f.* (§63)
Cornelius Sulla (L.) Cornēlius Sulla, (L.) Cornēliī Sullae *m.* (§16)
country patria, patriae *f.* (1)
country(side) *sing. or pl.*, rūs, rūris *n.* (6)
courage virtūs, virtūtis *f.* (7)
court iūs, iūris *n.* (6)
Cupid Cupīdō, Cupīdinis *m.* (§63)
Cynthia Cynthia, Cynthiae *f.* (§63)

danger perīculum, perīculī *n.* (1)
dare audeō, audēre, ausus sum (8)
daring audāx, audācis (8)

dark caecus, -a, -um (8)
daughter fīlia, fīliae *f.* (1)
dear (to) cārus, -a, -um (+ dat.) (7)
death mors, mortis, -ium *f.* (7)
deceptive falsus, -a, -um (7)
Decimus Decimus, Decimī *m.* (abbreviation: D.) (§16)
deed factum, factī *n.* (1)
deep altus, -a, -um (4)
deep sea altum, altī *n.* (4)
deified dīvus, -a, -um (§63)
delay mora, morae *f.* (3)
deliberation cōnsilium, cōnsiliī *n.* (1)
depart discēdō, discēdere, discessī, discessum (5)
desire optō (1-tr.) (2); cupiō, cupere, cupiī/cupīvī, cupītus (7)
desirous cupidus, -a, -um (+ gen.) (4)
destiny fātum, fātī *n.* (5)
Diana Diāna, Diānae *f.* (§63)
die morior, morī, mortuus sum (8)
differ differō, differre, distulī, dīlātus (7)
difficult difficilis, difficile (6)
  with difficulty difficiliter *or* difficulter (adv.) (6)
diligence dīligentia, dīligentiae *f.* (3)
Dis Dīs, Dītis *m.* (§63)
disloyal impius, -a, -um (5)
disposition ingenium, ingeniī *n.* (7)
divine dīvīnus, -a, -um (§63); dīvus, -a, -um (§63)
do agō, agere, ēgī, āctus (4); faciō, facere, fēcī, factus (4)
down from dē (prep. + abl.) (1)
drive agō, agere, ēgī, āctus (4)
during inter (prep. + acc.) (6)
dutiful pius, -a, -um (5)
duty mūnus, mūneris n. (8)

earlier ante (adv.) (7)
earth terra, terrae *f.* (3)
easily facile (adv.) (6)
easy facilis, facile (6)
either . . . or . . . aut . . . aut . . . (7)
empire imperium, imperiī *n.* (3)
endure ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus (5); patior, patī, passus sum (8)
(personal) enemy inimīcus, inimīcī *m.* (3)
(public) enemy hostis, hostis, -ium *m.* (6)
enmity inimīcitia, inimīcitiae *f.* (5)
enrolled fathers patrēs cōnscrīptī (voc. pl.) (6)
enthusiasm studium, studiī *n.* (2)
entirely omnīnō (adv.) (6)
envy invidia, invidiae *f.* (4)
err errō (1-intr.) (2)
even et (adv.) (1); etiam (adv.) (7)
  not even nē . . . quidem (4)
ever umquam (adv.) (6)
every omnis, omne (6)
evil malus, -a, -um (3)
excellence virtūs, virtūtis *f.* (7)
exile ex(s)ilium, ex(s)iliī *n.* (8)
exist sum, esse, fuī, futūrus (2)
experience experior, experīrī, expertus sum (8); patior, patī, passus sum (8)
eye oculus, oculī *m.* (8)

(political) faction *sing. or pl.*, pars, partis, -ium *f.* (7)
false falsus, -a, -um (7)
fame fāma, fāmae *f.* (1)
famous clārus, -a, -um (4)
fare well valeō, valēre, valuī, valitūrus (§74)
farewell! valē/valēte (§74)
farmer agricola, agricolae *m.* (1)
fate fātum, fātī *n.* (5)
father pater, patris *m.* (6)
(enrolled) fathers patrēs cōnscrīptī (voc. pl.) (6)
favor pāx, pācis *f.* (8)
fear timeō, timēre, timuī, —— (2)
fear timor, timōris *m.* (6)
feel sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus (4)
feeling sententia, sententiae *f.* (4)
few paucī, paucae, pauca (4)
fickle levis, leve (8)
field ager, agrī *m.* (1)
fierce ācer, ācris, ācre (6)
fight pugnō (1-intr.) (3)
finally tandem (adv.) (8)
flee fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitūrus (7)
flight fuga, fugae *f.* (8)
follow sequor, sequī, secūtus sum (8)
for prō (prep. + abl.) (3)
for enim (postpositive conj.) (2); nam (conj.) (2)
for in fact etenim (conj.) (2); namque (conj.) (2)
for my part equidem (adv.) (4)
force vīs, ——, -ium *f.* (6)
forces cōpiae, cōpiārum *f. pl.* (7)
to form a plan cōnsilium capere (4)
fortunate fēlīx, fēlīcis (6)
fortune fortūna, fortūnae *f.* (7)
forum forum, forī *n.* (3)
free līberō (1-tr.) (6)
free līber, lībera, līberum (3)
freedom lībertās, lībertātis *f.* (8)
friend amīcus, amīcī *m.* (3)
friendly amīcus, -a, -um (+ dat.) (3)
friendship amīcitia, amīcitiae *f.* (5)
frighten terreō, terrēre, terruī, territus (7)
(away) from ā, ab (prep. + abl.) (1)
(down) from dē (prep. + abl.) (1)
(out) from ē, ex (prep. + abl.) (1)

Gaius Gaius, Gaiī *m.* (abbreviation: C.) (§16)
gift dōnum, dōnī *n.* (1); mūnus, mūneris *n.* (8)
girl puella, puellae *f.* (1)
give dō, dare, dedī, datus (2); dōnō (1-tr.) (2)
glory glōria, glōriae *f.* (4)
Gnaeus Gnaeus, Gnaeī *m.* (abbreviation: Gn.) (§16)
go eō, īre, iī/īvī, itum (3); cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessum (5)
go away abeō, abīre, abiī, abitum (5); discēdō, discēdere, discessī, discessum (5)
go back redeō, redīre, rediī, reditum (5)
go to accēdō, accēdere, accessī, accessum (5)
god deus, deī *m.* (1)
goddess dea, deae *f.* (1)
gold aurum, aurī *n.* (1)
good bonus, -a, -um (3)
good day! salvē/salvēte (§74)
Gracchus Gracchus, Gracchī *m.* (§16)
grant dō, dare, dedī, datus (2)
grasp teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus (3)
great magnus, -a, -um (3)
Greece Graecia, Graeciae *f.* (§16)
greetings! valē/valēte (§74)
guile ars, artis, -ium *f.* (7)

Hades Dīs, Dītis *m.* (63)
hand down trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditus (7)
hand over trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditus (7)
handsome pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum (3)
Hannibal Hannibal, Hannibalis *m.* (§63)
happy laetus, -a, -um (3); fēlīx, fēlīcis (6)
hard dūrus, -a, -um (5)
harsh dūrus, -a, -um (5); acerbus, -a, -um (7)
hate ōdī, ōdisse (defective verb) (5)
hatred odium, odiī *n.* (3)
have habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus (2)
he is, ea, id (personal pron.) (4)
health salūs, salūtis *f.* (§74)
healthy validus, -a, -um (4)
hear audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus (4)
hear (of) accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptus (5)
heaven caelum, caelī *n.* (4)
heavy gravis, grave (8)
height altum, altī *n.* (4)
hello! salvē/salvēte (§74)
help auxilium, auxiliī *n.* (4)
her is, ea, id (personal pron.) (4)
her (own) suus, -a, -um (5)
herself —, suī (reflexive pron.) (5)
hidden caecus, -a, -um (8)
high altus, -a, -um (4)
him is, ea, id (personal pron.) (4)
himself —, suī (reflexive pron.) (5)
his (own) suus, -a, -um (5)
hold habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus (2); teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus (3)
home domus, domī *f.* (6)
homeland patria, patriae *f.* (1)
Horace (Q.) Horātius Flaccus, (Q.) Horātiī Flaccī *m.* (§16)
hostile inimīcus, -a, -um (+ dat.) (3)
hostility inimīcitia, inimīcitiae *f.* (5)
house domus, domī *f.* (6)
how quemadmodum (interrog. adv.) (8); quō modō (interrog. adv.) (8)
however autem (postpositive conj.) (6)
huge ingēns, ingentis (6)
human being homō, hominis *m.* (6)
husband vir, virī *m.* (1)

I ego, meī (personal pron.) (4)
I ask you tandem (adv.) (8)
if sī (conj.) (5)
if . . . not nisi (conj.) (5)
Ilium Īlium, Īliī *n.* (§16)
ill-will invidia, invidiae *f.* (4)
immortal immortālis, immortāle (7)
important gravis, grave (8)
in in (prep. + abl.) (1)
in fact enim (postpositive conj.) (2)
in front of prō (prep. + abl.) (3); ante (prep. + acc.) (7)
in return for prō (prep. + abl.) (3)
in such a way sīc (adv.) (5); ita (adv.) (7)
in the manner in which quemadmodum (rel. adv.) (8)
in this way sīc (adv.) (5); ita (adv.) (7)
in what way quō modō (interrog. adv.) (8)
indeed equidem (adv.) (4); quidem (postpositive adv.) (4); vērō (adv.) (7)
indeed enim (postpositive conj.) (2)
inhabitant incola, incolae *m.* (3)
instead of prō (prep. + abl.) (3)
intention mēns, mentis, -ium *f.* (6)
into in (prep. + acc.) (1)
iron ferrum, ferrī *n.* (1)
island īnsula, īnsulae *f.* (1)
it is, ea, id (personal pron.) (4)
Italy Italia, Italiae *f.* (1)
its (own) suus, -a, -um (5)
itself —, suī (reflexive pron.) (5)

jealousy invidia, invidiae *f.* (4)
joy gaudium, gaudiī *n.* (8)
judgment cōnsilium, cōnsiliī *n.* (1); iūs, iūris *n.* (6)
Julia Iūlia, Iūliae *f.* (§16)

Julius Caesar (C.) Iūlius Caesar, (C.) Iūliī Caesaris *m.* (§63)
Juno Iūnō, Iūnōnis *f.* (§63)
Jupiter Iuppiter, Iovis *m.* (§63)
justly iūre (adv.) (6)

keen ācer, ācris, ācre (6)
keep teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus (3)
kill interficiō, interficere, interfēcī, interfectus (5)
king rēx, rēgis *m.* (6)

lack careō, carēre, caruī, caritūrus (+ abl.) (6)
land terra, terrae *f.* (3)
large magnus, -a, -um (3)
law iūs, iūris *n.* (6); lēx, lēgis *f.* (8)
  to pass a law lēgem ferre (8)
lead dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus (4)
learn (of) accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptus (5)
leave (behind) relinquō, relinquere, relīquī, relictus (8)
Lesbia Lesbia, Lesbiae *f.* (§63)
Liber Līber, Līberī *m.* (§63)
life vīta, vītae *f.* (2)
life force anima, animae *f.* (1)
light levis, leve (8)
limit modus, modī *m.* (8)
listen (to) audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus (4)
little parvus, -a, -um (3)
live vīvō, vīvere, vīxī, vīctūrus (6)
Livia Līvia, Līviae *f.* (§16)
lo ecce (interj.) (§74)
long for cupiō, cupere, cupiī/cupīvī, cupītus (7)
look ecce (interj.) (§74)
lord dominus, dominī *m.* (1)
a lot multum (adv.) (5)
love amō (1-tr.) (2)
love amor, amōris *m.* (6)
Love Amor, Amōris *m.* (§63)
loyal pius, -a, -um (5)
Lucius Lūcius, Lūciī *m.* (abbreviation: L.) (§16)
lucky fēlīx, fēlīcis (6)

make faciō, facere, fēcī, factus (4)
make a mistake errō (1-intr.) (2)
man vir, virī *m.* (1); homō, hominis *m.* (6)
manage gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus (4)
Manius Manius, Maniī *m.* (abbreviation: M'.) (§16)
manliness virtūs, virtūtis *f.* (7)
manner modus, modī *m.* (8)
many multus, -a, -um (3)
Marcus Marcus, Marcī *m.* (abbreviation: M.) (§16)
Marcus Antonius (Marc Antony) Marcus Antōnius, Marcī Antōniī *m.* (§16)
marketplace forum, forī *n.* (3)
Mars Mars, Martis *m.* (§63)
master dominus, dominī *m.* (1)
me ego, meī (personal pron.) (4)
measure modus, modī *m.* (8)
Mercury Mercurius, Mercuriī *m.* (§63)
meter modus, modī *m.* (8)
mind animus, animī *m.* (2); mēns, mentis, -ium *f.* (6)
mine meus, -a, -um (4)
Minerva Minerva, Minervae *f.* (§63)
miserable miser, misera, miserum (3)
money pecūnia, pecūniae *f.* (1)
moreover autem (postpositive conj.) (6)
mortal mortālis, mortāle (7)
mother māter, mātris *f.* (6)
move moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus (2); cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessum (5)
much multus, -a, -um (3)
much multum (adv.) (5)
my meus, -a, -um (4)
my (own) meus, -a, -um (5)
myself —, meī (reflexive pron.) (5)

name vocō (1-tr.) (2)
(natural) talent ingenium, ingeniī *n.* (7)
nature ingenium, ingeniī *n.* (7); nātūra, nātūrae *f.* (7)
near sub (prep. + abl.) (6)
neither . . . nor . . . neque/nec . . . neque/nec . . . (2)
Neptune Neptūnus, Neptūnī *m.* (§63)
Nero Nerō, Nerōnis *m.* (§63)
Nero Claudius Caesar Nerō Claudius Caesar, Nerōnis Claudiī Caesaris *m.* (§63)
never numquam (adv.) (6)
nevertheless tamen (adv.) (5)
new novus, -a, -um (7)
not nōn (adv.) (2); nē (adv.) (7)
not even nē . . . quidem (4)
not only . . . but also . . . nōn sōlum . . . sed/vērum etiam . . . (7)
nothing nihil, nīl (indeclinable noun) *n.* (3)
now nunc (adv.) (3)

O ō (interj.) (1)
obey pāreō, pārēre, pāruī, pāritūrus (+ dat.) (8)
occupy teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus (3)
often saepe (adv.) (8)
oh heu (interj.) (§74)
old antīquus, -a, -um (7)
on in (prep. + abl.) (1)
on account of propter (prep. + acc.) (3)
on behalf of prō (prep. + abl.) (3)
only sōlum (adv.) (7)
onto in (prep. + acc.) (1)
opinion sententia, sententiae *f.* (4)
or aut (conj.) (7)

Orcus Orcus, Orcī *m.* (63)
order iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussus (2)
ought dēbeō, dēbēre, dēbuī, dēbitus (2)
our noster, nostra, nostrum (4)
our (own) noster, nostra, nostrum (5)
ours noster, nostra, nostrum (4)
ourselves ——, nostrum/nostrī (reflexive pron.) (5)
out from ē, ex (prep. + abl.) (1)
overcome superō (1-tr.) (3); vincō, vincere, vīcī, victus (7)
Ovidius Naso (Ovid) (P.) Ovidius Nasō, (P.) Ovidius Nasōnis *m.* (§63)
owe dēbeō, dēbēre, dēbuī, dēbitus (2)

part pars, partis, -ium *f.* (7)
to pass a law lēgem ferre (8)
path via, viae *f.* (1)
to pay the penalty poenās dare (2)
peace pāx, pācis *f.* (8)
penalty poena, poenae *f.* (2)
to pay the penalty poenās dare (2)
(the) people populus, populī *m.* (3)
perceive sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus (4)
perform gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus (4)
permit patior, patī, passus sum (8)
personal enemy inimīcus, inimīcī *m.* (3)
pitiable miser, misera, miserum (3)
place pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus (4)
place locus, locī *m.; pl.,* loca, locōrum *n. pl. or sometimes* locī, locōrum *m. pl.* (8)
plan cōnsilium, cōnsiliī *n.* (1)
to form a plan cōnsilium capere (4)
to plead a case causam agere (4)
please placeō, placēre, placuī, placitum (+ dat.) (8)
plot īnsidiae, īnsidiārum *f. pl.* (7)
Pluto Dīs, Dītis *m.* (§63)
poem carmen, carminis *n.* (6)
poet poēta, poētae *m.* (1)
point out mōnstrō (1-tr.) (2)
political faction *sing. or pl.,* pars, partis, -ium *f.* (7)
Pompeius Magnus (Pompey the Great) (Cn.) Pompeius Magnus, (Cn.) Pompeiī Magnī *m.* (§16)
ponder cōgitō (1-tr.) (2)
populace populus, populī *m.* (3)
Porcius Cato (M.) Porcius Catō, (M.) Porciī Catōnis *m.* (§63)
possess teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus (3)
power imperium, imperiī *n.* (3); vīs, ——, -ium *f.* (6)
praise laudō (1-tr.) (3)
pray tandem (adv.) (8)
precious cārus, -a, -um (+ dat.) (7)
present dōnō (1-tr.) (2)
previously ante (adv.) (7)
to proceed (quickly) sē ferre (5)
province prōvincia, prōvinciae *f.* (3)
public enemy hostis, hostis, -ium *m.* (6)
public square forum, forī *n.* (3)
Publius Publius, Publiī *m.* (abbreviation: P.) (§16)
punishment poena, poenae *f.* (2)
purpose mēns, mentis, -ium *f.* (6)
pursuit studium, studiī *n.* (2)
put pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus (4)

queen rēgīna, rēgīnae *f.* (1)
Quintus Quintus, Quintī *m.* (abbreviation: Q.) (§16)

rational soul animus, animī *m.* (2)
read legō, legere, lēgī, lēctus (6)
readily facile (adv.) (6)
real vērus, -a, -um (7)
reason causa, causae *f.* (4)
receive accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptus (5)
reckless audāx, audācis (8)
recklessly audacter *or* audāciter (adv.) (8)
reliable certus, -a, -um (7)
remain maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsūrus (7)
remarkable ingēns, ingentis (6)
remember meminī, meminisse (defective verb) (5)
remove auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātus (7)
Remus Remus, Remī *m.* (§16)
renown glōria, glōriae *f.* (4)
report ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus (5)
report fāma, fāmae *f.* (1)
reputation fāma, fāmae *f.* (1)
resentment invidia, invidiae *f.* (4)
respond respondeō, respondēre, respondī, respōnsus (2)
return redeō, redīre, rediī, reditum (5)
reward dōnō (1-tr.) (2)
rhythm modus, modī *m.* (8)
right iūs, iūris *n.* (6)
rightly iūre (adv.) (6)
road via, viae *f.* (1)
Roman Rōmānus, -a, -um (3)
(the) Romans Rōmānī, Rōmānōrum *m. pl.* (3)
Rome Rōma, Rōmae *f.* (6)
Romulus Rōmulus, Rōmulī *m.* (§16)
rule regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus (4)
rumor fāma, fāmae *f.* (1)

safety salūs, salūtis *f.* (§74)
sail vēlum, vēlī *n.* (2)
to set sail vēla dare (2)
sailor nauta, nautae *m.* (1)
same īdem, eadem, idem (8)

say dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictus (4); ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus (5)
to say "greetings" or **hello** salūtem dīcere (§74)
saying dictum, dictī *n.* (6)
sea mare, maris, *-ium *n.* (6)
secret caecus, -a, -um (8)
see videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsus (2)
seek petō, petere, petiī/petīvī, petītus (7)
seem *passive,* videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsus (3)
-self, -selves ipse, ipsa, ipsum (5)
Sempronius Gracchus (C. or Ti.) Semprōnius, (C. or Ti.) Semprōniī Gracchī *m.* (§16)
senators patrēs cōnscrīptī (voc. pl.) (6)
send mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus (4)
Sergius Catilina (Catiline) (L.) Sergius Catilīna, (L.) Sergiī Catilīnae *m.* (§16)
serious gravis, grave (8)
service mūnus, mūneris *n.* (8)
Servius Servius, Serviī *m.* (abbreviation: Ser.) (§16)
set aside pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus (4)
set in motion moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus (2)
to set sail vēla dare (2)
severe gravis, grave (8)
Sextus Sextus, Sextī *m.* (abbreviation: Sex.) (§16)
shade umbra, umbrae *f.* (7)
shadow umbra, umbrae *f.* (7)
sharp ācer, ācris, ācre (6)
she is, ea, id (personal pron.) (4)
show mōnstrō (1-tr.) (2)
since quoniam (conj.) (5)
sing (of) canō, canere, cecinī, cantus (4)
sister soror, sorōris *f.* (7)
skill ars, artis, -ium *f.* (7)
sky caelum, caelī *n.* (4)
slave servus, servī *m.* (1)
slavery servitūs, servitūtis *f.* (6)
small parvus, -a, -um (3)
so sīc (adv.) (5); ita (adv.) (7)
soldier mīles, mīlitis *m.* (6)
son fīlius, fīliī *m.* (1)
song carmen, carminis *n.* (6)
soon mox (adv.) (3)
soul anima, animae *f.* (1)
(rational) soul animus, animī *m.* (2)
speak dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictus (4)
spend agō, agere, ēgī, āctus (4)
spirit animus, animī *m.* (2)
Spurius Spurius, Spuriī *m.* (abbreviation: Sp.) (§16)
state cīvitās, cīvitātis *f.* (7)
stay maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsūrus (7)
still etiam (adv.) (7)
stir (up) moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus (2)
strange novus, -a, -um (7)
street via, viae *f.* (1)
strength vīrēs, vīrium *f. pl.* (6)
strong validus, -a, -um (4); fortis, forte (6)
strong feelings animī, animōrum *m. pl.* (2)
strongly valdē (adv.) (5)
study studium, studiī *n.* (2)
suffer labōrō (1-intr.) (2); patior, patī, passus sum (8)
Sulla Sulla, Sullae *m.* (§16)
summon vocō (1-tr.) (2)
sure certus, -a, -um (7)
surpass superō (1-tr.) (3)
surrender trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditus (7)
sword ferrum, ferrī *n.* (1); gladius, gladiī *m.* (1)

take (up) capiō, capere, cēpī, captus (4)
take away auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātus (7)
(natural) talent ingenium, ingeniī *n.* (7)
tall altus, -a, -um (4)
tell dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictus (4)
temple templum, templī *n.* (7)
terrify terreō, terrēre, terruī, territus (7)
test experior, experīrī, expertus sum (8)
that is, ea, id (demonstr. adj.) (4)
that ille, illa, illud (demonstr. adj./pron.) (8)
that quī, quae, quod (rel. pron.) (8)
that (of yours) iste, ista, istud (demonstr. adj./pron.) (8)
their (own) suus, -a, -um (5)
them is, ea, id (personal pron.) (4)
themselves —, suī (reflexive pron.) (5)
then mox (adv.) (3); tandem (adv.) (8)
these is, ea, id (demonstr. adj.) (4)
these hic, haec, hoc (demonstr. adj./pron.) (8)
they is, ea, id (personal pron.) (4)
think cōgitō (1-tr.) (2)
this is, ea, id (demonstr. adj.) (4)
this hic, haec, hoc (demonstr. adj./pron.) (8)
those is, ea, id (demonstr. adj.) (4)
those ille, illa, illud (demonstr. adj./pron.) (8)
those (of yours) iste, ista, istud (demonstr. adj./pron.) (8)
thought sententia, sententiae *f.* (4)
through per (prep. + acc.) (4)
thus sīc (adv.) (5); ita (adv.) (7)
Tiberius Tiberius, Tiberiī *m.* (abbreviation: Ti.) (§16)
Titus Tītus, Tītī *m.* (abbreviation: T.) (§16)
to ad (prep. + acc.) (1)
too quoque (adv.) (8)
toward ad (prep. + acc.) (1)
town oppidum, oppidī *n.* (1)
treachery īnsidiae, īnsidiārum *f. pl.* (7)
trick ars, artis, -ium *f.* (7)
trivial levis, leve (8)
troops cōpiae, cōpiārum *f. pl.* (7)
Troy Īlium, Īliī *n.* (§16); Troia, Troiae *f.* (§16)

true vērus, -a, -um (7)
try cōnor (1-tr.) (8); experior, experīrī, expertus sum (8)
Tullius Cicero (M.) Tullius Cicerō, (M.) Tulliī Cicerōnis *m.* (§63)

uncertain incertus, -a, -um (7)
under sub (prep. + abl.) (6); sub (prep. + acc.) (6)
understand intellegō, intellegere, intellēxī, intellēctus (6)
unfortunate īnfēlīx, īnfēlīcis (6)
unfriendly inimīcus, -a, -um (+ dat.) (3)
unhappy īnfēlīx, īnfēlīcis (6)
unless nisi (conj.) (5)
unlucky īnfēlīx, īnfēlīcis (6)
unreliable incertus, -a, -um (7)
unsure incertus, -a, -um (7)
up to sub (prep. + acc.) (6)
us nōs, nostrum/nostrī (personal pron.) (4)

Valerius Catullus (C.) Valerius Catullus, (C.) Valeriī Catullī *m.* (§16)
vast ingēns, ingentis (6)
Venus Venus, Veneris *f.* (§63)
Vergilius Maro (Vergil) P. Vergilius Marō, P. Vergiliī Marōnis *m.* (§63)
very ipse, ipsa, ipsum (5)
Vesta Vesta, Vestae *f.* (§63)
violence vīs, ——, -ium *f.* (6)
virtue virtūs, virtūtis *f.* (7)
voice vōx, vōcis *f.* (7)
Vulcan Vulcānus, Vulcānī *m.* (§63)

to wage war bellum gerere (4)
walk ambulō (1-intr.) (2)
(city) walls moenia, moenium *n. pl.* (6)
wander errō (1-intr.) (2)
want cupiō, cupere, cupiī/cupīvī, cupītus (7)
war bellum, bellī *n.* (1)
  to wage war bellum gerere (4)
way via, viae *f.* (1); modus, modī *m.* (8)
we nōs, nostrum/nostrī (personal pron.) (4)
weapons arma, armōrum *n. pl.* (2)
well bene (adv.) (5)
what quī, quae, quod (interrog. adj.) (8)
what quis, quid (interrog. pron.) (8)
when ubi (interrog. adv.) (5)
when ubi (conj.) (5); ut (conj.) (5)
where ubi (interrog. adv.) (5)
which quī, quae, quod (interrog. adj.) (8)
which quī, quae, quod (rel. pron.) (8)
who quī, quae, quod (rel. pron.) (8); quis, quid (interrog. pron.) (8)
why cūr (interrog. adv.) (2)
wicked impius, -a, -um (5)
wife fēmina, fēminae *f.* (1)
win capiō, capere, cēpī, captus (4); *intr.,* vincō, vincere, vīcī, victus (7)
wisdom sapientia, sapientiae *f.* (2)
with cum (prep. + abl.) (1)
with difficulty difficiliter *or* difficulter (adv.) (6)
withdraw cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessum (5)
without sine (prep. + abl.) (3)
woman fēmina, fēminae *f.* (1)
word verbum, verbī *n.* (1); dictum, dictī *n.* (6); vōx, vōcis *f.* (7)
work labōrō (1-intr.) (2)
wrath īra, īrae *f.* (2)
wretched miser, misera, miserum (3)
write scrībō, scrībere, scrīpsī, scrīptus (4)

yield cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessum (5)
you tū, tuī (personal pron.) (4)
you (pl.) vōs, vestrum/vestrī (personal pron.) (4)
your tuus, -a, -um (4)
your (pl.) vester, vestra, vestrum (4)
your (own) tuus, -a, -um (5)
your (pl.) (own) vester, vestra, vestrum (5)
yours tuus, -a, -um (4)
yours (pl.) vester, vestra, vestrum (4)
yourself —, tuī (reflexive pron.) (5)
yourselves ——, vestrum/vestrī (reflexive pron.) (5)

zeal studium, studiī *n.* (2)

Learn to Read Latin (Second Edition), Workbook

Answer Key

Copyright © 2015 by Andrew Keller and Stephanie Russell
All rights reserved. This answer key may not be reproduced or transmitted in any form without the expressed permission of the authors.

Introduction: Drill A (pages 1-4)

x
9. ta/men

x
10. quae/que

x
11. hō/rum

x
12. op/tant

x
13. flūc/tus

x
14. ge/runt

˘x
15. lau/dā/tur

x
16. ha/ben/tur

x
17. mi/se/rae

x
18. quae/sī/vē/runt

x
19. gla/di/ōs

x
20. coe/pe/rant

x
21. ob/ti/ne/ō

22. urbs

x
23. lī/ber/tās

x
24. ser/vi/tūs

x
25. in/quit

x
26. nau/tā/rum

x
27. poe/nās

x
28. pa/tri/am

x
29. sae/vae

x
30. ī/ram

x
31. me/mo/rem

x
32. Iū/nō/nis

x
33. Iup/pi/ter

x
34. se/nā/tūs

x
35. sen/ten/ti/ā

x
36. am/bu/lā/vē/re

x
37. au/rēs

x
38. cae/cō

x
39. lau/dā/ta

x
40. pe/rī/cu/lō/sī

41. mo/ri/$\overset{x}{\text{en}}$/tem

42. $\overset{x}{\text{ia}}$/ci/et

43. $\overset{x}{\text{ia}}$/ci/unt

44. $\overset{x}{\text{dein}}$/de

45. ge/re/$\overset{x}{\text{ren}}$/tur

46. lae/$\overset{x}{\text{tis}}$/si/mus

47. $\overset{x}{\text{iū}}$/ra

48. iam

49. am/bu/$\overset{x}{\text{lā}}$/ve/ris

50. con/vo/cā/$\overset{x}{\text{vē}}$/runt

51. is/$\overset{x}{\text{tī}}$/us

52. es/$\overset{x}{\text{sē}}$/tis

53. cē/$\overset{x}{\text{pis}}$/tī

54. ce/ci/$\overset{x}{\text{dis}}$/sent

55. $\overset{x}{\text{san}}$/gui/ne

56. $\overset{x}{\text{an}}$/ gui/bus

57. cōn/$\overset{x}{\text{suēs}}$/cō

58. per/suā/$\overset{x}{\text{dē}}$/re

59. $\overset{x}{\text{su}}$/mus

60. $\overset{x}{\text{a}}$/gunt

61. in/$\overset{x}{\text{tel}}$/le/git

62. quem

63. haec

64. $\overset{x}{\text{ae}}$/quo/ra

65. ma/$\overset{x}{\text{gis}}$/trōs

66. pe/cū/ni/$\overset{x}{\text{ō}}$/sum

67. cōn/$\overset{x}{\text{si}}$/li/ō

68. $\overset{x}{\text{ver}}$/ba

69. $\overset{x}{\text{a}}$/quā

70. $\overset{x}{\text{a}}$/qua

71. ter/ru/$\overset{x}{\text{ē}}$/re

72. au/di/en/$\overset{x}{\text{dō}}$/rum

Chapter I: Drill 1 (pages 7-8)

A. gender, number, and case.

C.

Nom.	Nominative	Subject; Predicate Nominative
Gen.	Genitive	"of;" Possession
Dat.	Dative	"to" or "for;" Reference; Indirect Object
Acc.	Accusative	Direct Object; with certain prepositions
Abl.	Ablative	"from," "with," "in," "by," "on"; Separation; Instrument/Association; Location
Voc.	Vocative	Direct Address

D.

1. nominative
2. separation; ablative
3. of
4. Ablative of Means; would not
5. dative
6. Predicate Nominative; nominative
7. Ablative of Accompaniment; would
8. accusative
9. from, with, in, by, and on
10. Dative of Indirect Object; Accusative, Direct Object
11. Direct Address
12. Predicate Nominative

Chapter I: Drill 2-3 (pages 9-14)

A.

1. five; declensions
2. nominative singular, genitive singular, gender, and English meaning(s)
3. a. the ending indicates the declension to which the noun belongs
   b. the stem is found by dropping the genitive singular ending
4. decline
5. drop the ending of the genitive singular form

C.

	Singular	*Plural*
Nom.	anima	animae
Gen.	animae	animārum
Dat.	animae	animīs
Acc.	animam	animās
Abl.	animā	animīs
Voc.	anima	animae

	Singular	*Plural*
Nom.	poēta	poētae
Gen.	poētae	poētārum
Dat.	poētae	poētīs
Acc.	poētam	poētās
Abl.	poētā	poētīs
Voc.	poēta	poētae

	Singular	*Plural*
Nom.	via	viae
Gen.	viae	viārum
Dat.	viae	viīs
Acc.	viam	viās
Abl.	viā	viīs
Voc.	via	viae

D. 1. nautam
2. viā
3. agricolās
4. animae
5 puella
6. īnsulae
7. viīs
8. patriae
9. pecūniam
10. nautae
11. patriīs
12. fāmae
13. deārum
14. puellam
15. rēgīnā
16. poētae
17. Italiae
18. agricolīs
19. fēminās
20. fīliae
21. pecūniā
22. īnsulīs

E. 1. acc. pl.: the girls (d.o.)
2. gen. pl.: of the women
3. nom. sing.: girl (subj., pred. nom.)
voc. sing.: girl (d.a.)

4. gen. sing.: of the woman
dat. sing.: to the woman
nom. pl.: women (subj., pred. nom.)
voc. pl.: women (d.a.)
5. acc. sing.: soul (d.o.)
6. acc. pl.: homelands (d.o.)
7. gen. pl.: of souls
8. dat. pl.: to/for the homelands
abl. pl.: from/with/in/by/on the homelands
9. abl. sing.: from/with/in/by/on the island
10. dat. pl.: to/for the farmers
abl. pl.: from/with/in/by/on the farmers
11. nom. sing.: farmer (subj., pred. nom.)
voc. sing.: farmer (d.a.)
12. acc. sing.: island (d.o.)

F.
1. fēminārum
2. poētīs
3. fāmā
4. animārum
5. rēgīnae
6. agricolae
7. puellae
8. patriae
9. deās
10. (cum) pecūniā
11. īnsulae
12. puellae
13. viīs
14. nautās
15. animae
16. patria
17. agricolae
18. dea
19. fīliam
20. Italiae

G.
1. out from the country
2. against the poet
3. out from Italy
4. with the farmers
5. into the street
6. about the soul
7. against the queen
8. toward Italy
9. toward the queen
10. away from the island
11. concerning fame
12. toward the island
13. with the poets
14. in Italy

15. away from the country
16. with a woman
17. away from Italy
18. against the sailors
19. with the girl
20. in the country
21. away from Italy with the sailors
22. both about money and about fame
23. in the homeland of the queen
24. out from the homeland of the women
25. into the streets with the farmers
26. with the poets of Italy
27. into the homeland of the poets
28. against the daughter of the farmer
29. concerning the sailor and the queen
30. out from the soul of the girl

H. 1. fāma, fāmae *f.*
2. fēmina, fēminae *f.*
3. poēta, poētae *m.*
4. īnsula, īnsulae *f.*
5. fīlia, fīliae *f.*
6. dea, deae *f.*
7. via, viae *f.*
8. Italia, Italiae *f.*
9. pecūnia, pecūniae *f.*
10. rēgīna, rēgīnae *f.*
11. agricola, agricolae *m.*
12. puella, puellae *f.*
13. nauta, nautae *m.*
14. patria, patriae *f.*

Chapter I: Drill 4 (pages 15-21)

B.

	Singular	*Plural*
Nom.	ager	agrī
Gen.	agrī	agrōrum
Dat.	agrō	agrīs
Acc.	agrum	agrōs
Abl.	agrō	agrīs
Voc.	ager	agrī

	Singular	*Plural*
Nom.	fīlius	fīliī
Gen.	fīliī/fīlī	fīliōrum
Dat.	fīliō	fīliīs
Acc.	fīlium	fīliōs
Abl.	fīliō	fīliīs
Voc.	fīlī	fīliī

	Singular	*Plural*
Nom.	dominus	dominī
Gen.	dominī	dominōrum
Dat.	dominō	dominīs
Acc.	dominum	dominōs
Abl.	dominō	dominīs
Voc.	domine	dominī

D.

	Singular	*Plural*
Nom.	dōnum	dōna
Gen.	dōnī	dōnōrum
Dat.	dōnō	dōnīs
Acc.	dōnum	dōna
Abl.	dōnō	dōnīs
Voc.	dōnum	dōna

	Singular	*Plural*
Nom.	cōnsilium	cōnsilia
Gen.	cōnsiliī/cōnsilī	cōnsiliōrum
Dat.	cōnsiliō	cōnsiliīs
Acc.	cōnsilium	cōnsilia
Abl.	cōnsiliō	cōnsiliīs
Voc.	cōnsilium	cōnsilia

	Singular	*Plural*
Nom.	verbum	verba
Gen.	verbī	verbōrum
Dat.	verbō	verbīs
Acc.	verbum	verba
Abl.	verbō	verbīs
Voc.	verbum	verba

E.

1. domine
2. agrōs
3. dōnōrum
4. servō
5. librī
6. vir
7. dīs
8. puerum
9. virum
10. cōnsilia
11. verbīs
12. dominōs
13. cōnsiliī/cōnsilī
14. ferrīs
15. fīlī
16. bellōrum
17. perīcula
18. dīs
19. gladiīs
20. deōrum/deum
21. oppidum
22. factum
23. dī
24. aurō

F.

1. gen. sing.: of the son
   voc. sing.: son (d.a.)
2. acc. sing.: master (d.o.)
3. acc. pl.: sons (d.o.)

4. gen. sing.: of the master
   nom. pl.: masters (subj., pred. nom.)
   voc. pl.: masters (d.a.)
5. nom. pl.: plans (subj., pred. nom.)
   voc. pl.: plans (d.a.)
   acc. pl.: plans (d.o.)
6. nom. pl.: gods (subj., pred.nom.)
   voc. pl.: gods (d.a.)
7. acc. pl.: books (d.o.)
8. acc. sing.: field (d.o.)
9. dat. sing.: to/for a gift
   abl. sing.: from/with/in/by/on a gift
10. gen. pl.: of the plans
11. dat. pl.: to/for the men
    abl. pl.: from/with/in/by/on the men
12. nom. pl.: words (subj., pred.nom.)
    voc. pl.: words (d.a.)
    acc. pl.: words (d.o.)
13. gen. sing.: of a slave
    nom. pl.: slaves (subj., pred. nom.)
    voc. pl.: slaves (d.a.)
14. dat. sing.: to/for iron
    abl. sing.: from/with/in/by/on iron
15. gen. pl.: of the slaves
16. nom. sing.: sword (subj., pred.nom.)
    voc. sing.: sword (d.a.)
    acc. sing.: sword (d.o.)
17. nom. sing.: boy (subj., pred. nom.)
    voc. sing.: boy (d.a.)
18. dat. pl.: to/for the swords
    abl. pl.: from/with/in/by/on the swords
19. acc. pl.: fields (d.o.)

20. gen. sing.: of a sword
    nom. pl.: swords (subj., pred. nom.)
    voc. pl.: swords (d.a.)
21. voc. sing.: master (d.a.)
22. gen. sing.: of a plan

G.
1. puerō
2. cōnsilia
3. ferrum
4. agrum
5. aurō
6. bella
7. cum virīs
8. cōnsiliī/cōnsilī
9. domine
10. fīliōs
11. dōnum
12. verbīs
13. librōrum
14. perīculum
15. puerīs
16. ager
17. (cum) dōnō
18. ferrī/gladiī/gladī
19. oppidum
20. servīs
21. deōrum/deum
22. dī

H.
1. in war
2. with the master
3. against the boy
4. away from the fields
5. out from dangers
6. toward the slave
7. about words
8. into the field
9. with a sword
10. in the book
11. into dangers
12. out from the field
13. in the fields
14. about the deeds
15. to wars
16. out from gold
17. about a plan
18. toward the boys
19. away from the town
20. about the book
21. out from the town
22. with a sword
23. in danger
24. in the fields
25. with the sons into the fields
26. books (d.o.) about the gods
27. plans (subj., d.a., d.o.) of the gods

28. away from the field of the man
29. about the words of the master
30. out from the books of the boy
31. toward the town; away from the town
32. words (subj., d.a., d.o.) of the slave against masters

I. 1. fīlius, fīliī *m.*
2. deus, deī *m.*
3. verbum, verbī *n.*
4. factum, factī *n.*
5. ager, agrī *m.*
6. aurum, aurī n.
7. oppidum, oppidī *n.*
8. puer, puerī *m.*
9. servus, servī *m.*
10. perīculum, perīculī *n.*
11. ferrum, ferrī *n.*
12. vir, virī *m.*
13. gladius, gladiī *m.*
14. bellum, bellī *n.*
15. dominus, dominī *m.*
16. dōnum, dōnī *n.*
17. liber, librī *m.*
18. cōnsilium, cōnsiliī *n.*

Exercises, Chapter I (pages 23-35)

A. 1. to/for the girl and the boy
2. to/for/by the plan of the gods
3. both of a book and of a sword; both books and swords (subj.. pred. nom., [d.a.])
4. gods and goddesses (subj., pred. nom., d.a.)
5. toward the islands with the sailors
6. into the town; in the town
7. gifts (subj., pred. nom., d.o., [d.a.]) of/for the woman
8. words and deeds (subj., pred. nom., d.o., [d.a.])

9. about the books of the poets
10. into the street; in the street
11. out from Italy
12. away from the field with the farmer
13. a plan (subj., pred. nom., d.o., [d.a.]) about war
14. out from the country of the queen
15. of/for the daughter of the man; daughters (subj., pred. nom., d.a.) of the man
16. of the poet and of the sailor; to/for the poet and the sailor;
    poets and sailors (subj., pred. nom., d.a.)
17. man and boy (subj., pred. nom., d.a.)
18. away from the island of the queen
19. the way (d.o.) toward the town
20. about the deeds of the gods
21. a woman and a man (d.o.)
22. into the fields of the homeland
23. O son; O sons
24. books and swords (d.o.)
25. the fame (subj., pred. nom., [d.a.]) of/for the goddess
26. to war
27. O gods and goddesses (d.a.)
28. with the women of the islands
29. about the soul of the poet
30. the roads (d.o.) of the towns
31. the money (d.o.) of the boy
32. both iron and gold (subj., pred. nom., d.o., [d.a.])
33. for/[from] the gods of the island
34. with the sailors
35. O slave (d.a.)
36. by/[for] word and deed
37. gifts (subj., pred. nom., d.o., [d.a.]) of the gods
38. with/[for] gold and iron

B. 1. agricolās Italiae
2. ad agrōs cum puellā
3. et fīliōrum et fīliārum
4. in oppidīs rēgīnae
5. servō et dominō
6. cōnsilia puerōrum
7. et aurum et ferrum
8. (cum) librīs dē animā
9. in viam cum fēminīs
10. et virīs et puerīs
11. facta deōrum/deum
12. ad īnsulam cum servō
13. in patriā nautārum
14. liber dē perīculīs bellī
15. ō virī fēminaeque
16. ab oppidō in īnsulā
17. fāmam puellae
18. ad Italiam cum nautīs
19. cōnsiliō deae
20. verbīs factīsque
21. virum in oppidō
22. fīlī
23. serve
24. et in īnsulā et in Italiā
25. pecūniam virīs
26. ex agrīs agricolae
27. dē fāmā rēgīnae
28. ad Italiam cum puerīs
29. virī
30. servīs patriae
31. ab agrīs agricolārum
32. domine
33. fēminīs īnsulārum

34. dōna aurī
35. vir fēminaque
36. puer cum virīs
37. dōnum fēminae
38. verba in rēgīnam
39. cum puerō puellāque
40. fīliās

C. 1.

Syntax:	subj. nom. pl.	prep. + abl. of accomp. sing.	prep. + abl. sing.
Sentence:	*The women* were walking	*with the men*	*in the street.*
Translation:	Fēminae	cum virīs	in viā

2.

Syntax:	subj. nom. pl.	prep. + abl. sing.		pred. nom. pl.
Sentence:	*The men*	*on the island*	are	*sailors.*
Translation:	Virī	in īnsulā		nautae.

3.

Syntax:	subj. nom. pl.		d.o., acc. sing.	i.o. dat. pl.
Sentence:	*The gods*	gave	*advice*	*to the men.*
Translation:	Dī		cōnsilium	virīs

4.

Syntax:	conj.	subj. nom. pl.	conj.	subj. nom. pl.		prep. + acc. sing.
Sentence:	*Both*	*men*	*and*	*boys*	are going	*into war*.
Translation:	Et	virī	et	puerī		in bellum

5.

Syntax:	d.a. voc. sing.		prep. + abl. pl.
Sentence:	*Slave,*	run	*away from the fields.*
Translation:	Serve		ab agrīs

6.

Syntax:	subj. nom. sing.	gen. sing.		i.o. dat. pl.	d.o. acc. sing.
Sentence:	The queen	of the island	gave	the women	gold.
Translation:	Rēgīna	īnsulae		fēminīs	aurum

7.

Syntax:	subj. nom. sing.		prep. + abl. sing.	prep. + abl. of accomp. pl.
Sentence:	*The farmer*	walked	*in the field*	*with (his) sons*.
Translation:	Agricola		in agrō	cum fīliīs

8.

Syntax:	subj. nom. sing.		abl. of means sing.
Sentence:	*The slave*	was fighting	*with a sword*.
Translation:	Servus		gladiō

9.

Syntax:		d.o. acc. sing.	prep. + abl. sing.	d.a. voc. sing.	
Sentence:	I have written	*a book*	*about the soul.*	*Son,*	read it!
Translation:		librum	dē animā	Fīlī	

10. Syntax:	subj. nom. pl.		d.o. acc. pl.	gen. sing.
Sentence:	*The girls*	fear	*the dangers*	*of war*.
Translation:	Puellae		perīcula	bellī

11. Syntax:	d.a. voc. pl.	conj.	d.a. voc. pl.		d.o. acc. sing.	i.o. dat. pl.prep. +	prep. +abl. pl.
Sentence:	O *gods*	*and*	*goddesses*,	give	*fame*	*to the sailors*	*on the islands.*
Translation:	Ō dī	et	deae		fāmam	nautīs	in īnsulīs

12. Syntax:	dat. of ref. pl.	conj.	dat. of ref. pl.	subj. nom. pl.	gen. pl.
Sentence:	*To women*	*and*	*to girls*	*the gifts*	*of the gods* are dear.
Translation:	Fēminīs	et	puellīs	dōna	deōrum

13. Syntax:	d.a. voc. sing.		prep. + acc. sing.
Sentence:	*Daughter*,	let us walk	*toward the town.*
Translation:	Fīlia		ad oppidum

14. Syntax:	subj. nom. sing.		pred. nom. sing.	gen. sing.
Sentence:	*The woman*	is	*the queen*	*of the country*.
Translation:	Fēmina		rēgīna	patriae

15. Syntax:		d.o. acc. pl.	prep. + abl. sing.	gen. of poss. sing.
Sentence:	We saw	*the streets*	*in the country*	*of the queen*.
Translation:		viās	in patriā	rēgīnae

16. Syntax:	subj. nom. pl.		prep. + abl. sing.	prep. + acc. sing.
Sentence:	*The sailors*	walked	*out from the field*	*into the town*.
Translation:	Nautae		ex agrō	in oppidum

17. Syntax:	subj. nom. pl.		d.o. acc. sing.	conj.	abl. of means sing.	conj.	abl. of means sing.
Sentence:	*The poets*	bribed	*the man*	*both*	*with money*	*and*	*with books.*
Translation:	Poētae		virum	et	pecūniā	et	librīs

18. Syntax:		subj. nom. pl.		pred. nom. pl.
Sentence:	Many	*poets*	are	*farmers*.
Translation:		poētae		agricolae

19. Syntax:	subj. nom. pl.		d.o. acc. pl.	prep. + acc. sing.
Sentence:	*The goddesses*	sent	*gifts*	*into the homeland*.
Translation:	Deae		dōna	in patriam

20. Syntax:	subj. nom. sing.		pred. nom. sing.
Sentence:	*The girl*	will become	*a woman*.
Translation:	Puella		fēmina

21. Syntax:	d.a. voc.sing.		i.o. dat. pl.	d.o. acc. sing.	gen. of poss. pl.
Sentence:	*Boy*,	show	*the slaves*	*the money*	*of the masters*.
Translation:	Puer		servīs	pecūniam	dominōrum

22.	Syntax:	subj. nom. sing.		d.o. acc. sing.	abl. of means pl.
	Sentence:	*The woman*	persuaded	*the man*	*with words*.
	Translation:	Fēmina		virum	verbīs

23.	Syntax:	subj. nom. sing.		pred. nom. sing.
	Sentence:	*The slave*	became	a *master*.
	Translation:	Servus		dominus

24.	Syntax:	subj. nom. sing.	d.o. acc. pl.	prep. + abl. sing.	prep. + abl. sing.
	Sentence:	*The men* were making	*plans*	*about war*	*in Italy*.
	Translation:	Virī	cōnsilia	dē bellō	in Italiā

25.	Syntax:	dat. of ref. pl.	gen. sing.	subj. nom. sing.	
	Sentence:	*To the women*	*of the island*	*the sailor*	seemed friendly.
	Translation:	Fēminīs	īnsulae	nauta	

26.	Syntax:	d.a. voc. pl.	d.o. acc. pl.	gen. of poss. pl.
	Sentence:	*Boys*, did you hear	*the words*	*of the women*?
	Translation:	Puerī	verba	fēminārum

27.	Syntax:	subj. nom. pl.	prep. + abl. sing.	prep. + abl. of accomp. pl.
	Sentence:	*The girls* were walking	*in the street*	*with the boys*.
	Translation:	Puellae	in viā	cum puerīs

28.	Syntax:	subj. nom. sing.	gen. of poss. sing.		pred. nom. sing.
	Sentence:	*The homeland*	*of the man*	is	*Italy*.
	Translation:	Patria	virī		Italia

29.	Syntax:	subj. nom. pl.		prep. + abl. pl.
	Sentence:	*The sailors*	will sail	*away from the islands*.
	Translation:	Nautae		ab īnsulīs

30.	Syntax:	subj. nom. sing.	prep. + abl. sing.	prep. + acc. pl.	gen. sing.
	Sentence:	*A rumor*	*about the queen* flew	*into the towns*	*of Italy*.
	Translation:	Fāma	dē rēgīnā	in oppida	Italiae

31.	Syntax:	subj. nom. pl.	d.o. acc. sing.	conj.	d.o. acc. sing.
	Sentence:	*Poets* desire	*fame*	*and*	*money*.
	Translation:	Poētae	fāmam	et	pecūniam

32.	Syntax:	conj.	d.o. acc. sing.	conj.	d.o. acc. sing.	prep. + abl. sing.
	Sentence:	I see *both*	*a sailor*	*and*	*a farmer*	*in the field*.
	Translation:	et	nautam	et	agricolam	in agrō

33.	Syntax:	subj. nom. sing.		d.o. acc. pl.	abl. of means sing.
	Sentence:	*The poet*	teaches	*(his) sons*	*with a book*.
	Translation:	Poēta		fīliōs	librō

34.

Syntax:		d.o. acc. pl.	gen. of sing.	i.o. dat. pl.	gen. of poss. sing.
Sentence:	Did you show	*the gifts*	*of gold*	*to the sons*	*of the queen*?
Translation:		dōna	aurī	fīliīs	rēgīnae

35.

Syntax:	subj. nom. sing.		prep. + acc. sing.	prep. + abl. of accomp. sing.
Sentence:	*The man*	was going	*to Italy*	*with (his) daughter*.
Translation:	Vir		ad Italiam	cum fīliā

36.

Syntax:	subj. nom. pl.		abl. of means pl.
Sentence:	*The men*	are fighting	with swords.
Translation:	Virī		ferrīs

37.

Syntax:	subj. nom. pl.	gen. of poss. pl.	
Sentence:	*The fields*	*of the farmers*	are broad.
Translation:	Agrī	agricolārum	

38.

Syntax:		d.a. voc. sing.	prep. + abl. sing.
Sentence:	Were you walking,	*son,*	*in the street*?
Translation:		fīlī	in viā

39.

Syntax:	subj. nom. sing.		d.o. acc. sing.	abl. of means sing.
Sentence:	*The queen*	rules	*the country*	*by the sword*.
Translation:	Rēgīna		patriam	gladiō

40.

Syntax:	dat. of ref. pl.	subj. nom. pl.	gen. pl.	conj.	gen. pl.
Sentence:	*To men*	*the deeds*	*of gods*	*and*	*goddesses* are terrifying.
Translation:	Virīs	facta	deōrum	et	deārum

Chapter II: Drill 5-6 (pages 37-39)

A.

1. person, number, tense, voice, and mood.
2. active and passive
3. indicative, imperative, and subjunctive
4. present, imperfect, future, perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect

B.

Imperfect:	past time with progressive/repeated aspect
Future:	future time with simple OR progressive/repeated aspect
Perfect:	present time with completed aspect OR past time with simple aspect
Pluperfect:	past time with completed aspect
Future Perfect:	future time with completed aspect

C.

	Time	*Aspect*	*Tense Name*
1.	future	simple	future
2.	past	repeated	imperfect
3.	present	progressive	present
4.	present	completed	perfect
5.	past	simple	perfect
6.	future	completed	future perfect
7.	present	simple	present
8.	past	completed	pluperfect
9.	present	progressive	present
10.	future	completed	future perfect
11.	past	repeated	imperfect
12.	past	simple	perfect
13.	past	completed	pluperfect
14.	past	progressive	imperfect
15.	present	progressive	present
16.	past	repeated	imperfect
17.	future	simple	future
18.	present	completed	perfect
19.	future	completed	future perfect
20.	past	completed	pluperfect

Chapter II: Drill 7-8 (pages 41-43)

A.

1. principal parts
2. four; conjugations
3. present active infinitive; “to”
4. principal part two ending in **-āre**
5. principal part two ending in **-ēre**
6. drop the ending **-re** from principal part two

B.

1. errō, errāre, errāvī, errātum
2. iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussus
3. timeō, timēre, timuī, ——
4. dēbeō, dēbēre, dēbuī, dēbitus
5. moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus
6. labōrō, labōrāre, labōrāvī, labōrātum
7. sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
8. dō, dare, dedī, datus
9. ambulō, ambulāre, ambulāvī, ambulātum
10. dōnō, dōnāre, dōnāvī, dōnātus
11. videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsus
12. possum, posse, potuī, ——
13. amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus
14. optō, optāre, optāvī, optātus
15. respondeō, respondēre, respondī, respōnsus
16. habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus
17. cōgitō, cōgitāre, cōgitāvī, cōgitātus
18. mōnstrō, mōnstrāre, mōnstrāvī, mōnstrātus

C.

1	*2*	*3*	*4*	*Meaning*
mōnstrō	mōnstrāre	mōnstrāvī	mōnstrātus	show
sum	esse	fuī	futūrus	*be; exist*
videō	vidēre	vīdī	*vīsus*	see
iubeō	iubēre	*iussī*	iussus	order
dēbeō	*dēbēre*	dēbuī	dēbitus	owe; ought
dō	dare	*dedī*	datus	give, grant

1	*2*	*3*	*4*	*Meaning*
timeō	timēre	timuī	———	*fear*
possum	posse	potuī	———	be able
amō	amāre	amāvī	*amātus*	love
respondeō	*respondēre*	respondī	respōnsus	answer

Chapter II: Drill 9 (pages 45-52)

A. 1. respondeō, respondēre, respondī, respōnsus

Present	respondent	they are answering
Imperfect	respondēbant	they were answering
Future	respondēbunt	they will answer

2. dō, dare, dedī, datus

Present	dās	you are giving
Imperfect	dabās	you were giving
Future	dabis	you will give

3. dēbeō, dēbēre, dēbuī, dēbitus

Present	dēbēs	you owe
Imperfect	dēbēbās	you used to owe
Future	dēbēbis	you will owe

4. errō, errāre, errāvī, errātum

Present	errāmus	we are wandering
Imperfect	errābāmus	we were wandering
Future	errābimus	we shall wander

5. iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussus

Present	iubēmus	we order
Imperfect	iubēbāmus	we used to order
Future	iubēbimus	we shall order

6. labōrō, labōrāre, labōrāvī, labōrātum

Present	labōrat	he is working
Imperfect	labōrābat	he was working
Future	labōrābit	he will work

7. amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus

Present	amat	she loves
Imperfect	amābat	she used to love
Future	amābit	she will love

8. habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus

Present	habētis	you (pl.) have
Imperfect	habēbātis	you (pl.) were having
Future	habēbitis	you (pl.) will have

9. optō, optāre, optāvī, optātus

Present	optō	I am desiring
Imperfect	optābam	I was desiring
Future	optābō	I shall desire

10. videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsus

Present	vident	they see
Imperfect	vidēbant	they were seeing
Future	vidēbunt	they will see

B. 1. 1st sing. pres. act. indic.; I fear
2. 1st pl. fut. act. indic.; we shall order
3. 3rd sing. fut. act. indic.; he will give
4. 3rd pl. imperf. act. indic.; they used to wander
5. 2nd sing. imperf. act. indic.; you were moving
6. 2nd pl. fut. act. indic.; you (pl.) will love
7. 1st sing. fut. act. indic.; I shall call
8. 1st pl. pres. act. indic.; we are answering
9. 2nd pl. pres. act. indic.; you (pl.) are pointing out

10. 1st sing. imperf. act. indic.; I was presenting
11. 1st pl. pres. act. indic.; we see
12. 2nd sing. fut. act. indic.; you will desire
13. 3rd pl. imperf. act. indic.; they were suffering
14. 3rd pl. fut. act. indic.; they will have
15. 2nd sing. pres. act. indic.; you are walking
16. 1st pl. pres. act. indic.; we grant
17. 3rd pl. fut. act. indic.; they will fear
18. 2nd pl. imperf. act. indic.; you (pl.) used to consider
19. 1st sing pres. act. indic.; I ought
20. 2nd pl. pres. act. indic.; you (pl.) are ordering

C.
1. vocābitis
2. timēbat
3. vidētis
4. ambulō
5. dēbēbis
6. dat
7. mōnstrābam
8. cōgitāmus
9. amat
10. iubēbunt
11. datis
12. habeō
13. movēbunt
14. timēbās
15. habētis
16. vidēmus
17. dōnābāmus
18. dabant
19. errābimus
20. moveō

D.

	Tense	*Form*
1.	future	respondēbō
2.	present	habeō
3.	present	cōgitat
4.	future	optābis
5.	imperfect	optābāmus
6.	imperfect	dabant
7.	present	ambulātis
8.	present	errātis
9.	imperfect	vidēbam
10.	future	movēbit
11.	future	iubēbunt
12.	imperfect	mōnstrābāmus
13.	present	dēbēs
14.	present	dōnat
15.	imperfect	timēbātis
16.	future	vidēbimus
17.	present	vocāmus
18.	present	vocō
19.	imperfect	amābat
20.	imperfect	cōgitābās

E.

1. vocābam
2. cōgitātis
3. vidēbat
4. dōnābis
5. ambulāmus
6. respondēbant
7. dās
8. labōrābit
9. movēbāmus
10. errō
11. optābitis
12. timent

13. iubēbās
14. amābimus
15. movet
16. mōnstrābant
17. dōnābō
18. dēbēs
19. vocābat
20. amant

Chapter II: Drill 10 (pages 53-56)

A. 1. sum, esse, fuī, futūrus

Present	es	you exist
Imperfect	erās	you were existing
Future	eris	you will exist

2. possum, posse, potuī, ——

Present	possunt	they are able
Imperfect	poterant	they used to be able
Future	poterunt	they will be able

3. sum, esse, fuī, futūrus

Present	est	he is
Imperfect	erat	he used to be
Future	erit	he will be

4. possum, posse, potuī, ——

Present	possum	I am able
Imperfect	poteram	I was able
Future	poterō	I shall be able

5. sum, esse, fuī, futūrus

Present	estis	you (pl.) are
Imperfect	erātis	you (pl.) were
Future	eritis	you (pl.) will be

B. 1. 2nd sing. pres. act. indic.; you are able
2. 1st pl. pres. act. indic.; we are able
3. 3rd sing. imperf. act. indic.; he was
4. 1st sing. imperf. act. indic.; I was able
5. 3rd pl. pres. act. indic.; they are
6. 1st sing. pres. act. indic.; I am
7. 1st sing. fut. act. indic.; I shall be able
8. 1st pl. imperf. act. indic.; we used to be
9. 2nd pl. fut. act. indic.; you (pl.) will be
10. 3rd pl. fut. act. indic.; they will be able
11. 2nd sing. pres. act. indic.; you are
12. 2nd pl. pres. act. indic.; you (pl.) are
13. 3rd pl. imperf. act. indic.; they were able
14. 2nd pl. imperf. act. indic.; you (pl.) were
15. 1st pl. pres. act. indic.; we are
16. 1st sing. pres. act. indic.; I am able
17. 3rd pl. pres. act. indic.; they are able
18. 2nd sing. imperf. act. indic.; you were able
19. 3rd pl. fut. act. indic.; they will be
20. 2nd sing. fut. act. indic.; you will be

C.	*Tense*	*Form*
1.	future	eritis
2.	imperfect	erant
3.	imperfect	poteram
4.	present	potest
5.	imperfect	erat
6.	present	sumus
7.	present	potes
8.	future	poterit
9.	present	est
10.	future	erō
11.	present	possumus
12.	imperfect	erātis

	Tense	*Form*
13.	future	erunt
14.	imperfect	poterat
15.	present	sum
16.	future	poteris
17.	future	erimus
18.	present	es
19.	present	potestis
20.	imperfect	erant

Chapter II: Drill 11 (pages 57-59)

A. 1. a verb that can take a direct object
2. a verb that cannot take a direct object
3. intransitive

B. 1. intransitive; expresses motion
2. intransitive; expresses motion
3. transitive
4. transitive
5. intransitive; copulative
6. intransitive; copulative
7. intransitive; copulative
8. intransitive; copulative
9. transitive; used absolutely
10. intransitive
11. transitive
12. transitive; used absolutely
13. transitive; used absolutely
14. intransitive; expresses motion
15. transitive

C. 1. mōnstrō, mōnstrāre, mōnstrāvī, mōnstrātus; transitive
2. videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsus; transitive
3. sum, esse, fuī, futūrus; intransitive

4. possum, posse, potuī, ——; intransitive
5. habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus; transitive
6. amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus; transitive
7. moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus; transitive
8. respondeō, respondēre, respondī, respōnsus; transitive
9. errō, errāre, errāvī, errātum; intransitive
10. ambulō, ambulāre, ambulāvī, ambulātum; intransitive
11. labōrō, labōrāre, labōrāvī, labōrātum; intransitive
12. optō, optāre, optāvī, optātus; transitive

Chapter II: Drill 12-15 (pages 61-66)

1. The woman was giving the girl money.

   fēmina, Nominative, Subject
   puellae, Dative of Indirect Object
   pecūniam, Accusative, Direct Object

2. The daughter of the poet was wandering in the streets.

   poētae, Genitive of Possession

3. You will be able to see the towns on the island.

   oppida, Accusative, Direct Object
   vidēre, Complementary Infinitive

4. With the women I shall give gifts to the gods.

   dōna, Accusative, Direct Object
   dīs, Dative of Indirect Object
   fēminīs, Ablative of Accompaniment

5. To the man there was gold. OR: The man had (was having) gold.

   virō, Dative of the Possessor
   aurum, Nominative, Subject

6. The farmers are ordering the slaves to work in the fields.

   labōrāre, Object Infinitive

7. The man moves the boys with a word.

   verbō, Ablative of Means

8. You ought to think about the words of the men.

virōrum, Genitive of Possession
cōgitāre, Complementary Infinitive

9. The slave has iron, but he desires to have gold.

servus, Nominative, Subject
ferrum, Accusative, Direct Object
habēre, Object Infinitive

10. The slave has a sword. OR: There is to the slave a sword.

servō, Dative of the Possessor
ferrum, Nominative, Subject

11. The men with the women fear war.

fēminīs, Ablative of Accompaniment
bellum, Accusative, Direct Object

12. The sailor was the son of the queen.

fīlius, Predicate Nominative
rēgīnae, Genitive of Possession
nauta, Nominative, Subject

13. They will reward the queen with gold.

rēgīnam, Accusative, Direct Object
aurō, Ablative of Means

14. The girls will have books.

puellīs, Dative of the Possessor

15. The man fears for (his) son.

fīliō, Dative of Reference

16. We shall point out the danger to the sailors.

perīculum, Accusative, Direct Object
nautīs, Dative of Indirect Object

17. I am ordering the girl to move the swords out from the field.

gladiōs, Accusative, Direct Object
movēre, Object Infinitive

18. The boy will be a farmer.

agricola, Predicate Nominative
puer, Nominative, Subject

19. The slave is not able to answer the master.

    dominō, Dative of Indirect Object
    respondēre, Complementary Infinitive

20. The men had (were having) a plan about war.

    virīs, Dative of Possessor
    cōnsilium, Nominative, Subject

Exercises, Chapter II (pages 67-82)

A. 1. The farmer will give (his) son gold.
Gold the farmer will give (his) son.
To (his) son the farmer will give gold.

2. The poet was moving the women with words about the soul.
With words about the soul the poet was moving the women.

3. The men do not fear the arms of the queen.
The men *do not fear* the arms of the queen.

4. The poet moves the mind of (his) son with words about life.

5. Why does the boy desire the gold of the man? The boy does not have money.

6. The men of the island will present the goddess with gifts. For they are distressed about the danger of war.

7. To the women there were anxieties about war. And indeed I was pondering with (my) mind the anxieties of the women.

8. We are pondering the deeds of the sailors. For the sailors will have fame.

9. Why was he setting sail away from Italy? For Italy was the homeland of the poet.

10. Wisdom is a gift of the goddess.

11. There was a god in the town, master.

12. There is gold on the island, O farmers.

13. Into the street you (pl.) will walk.
Out from the street you (pl.) were walking.
In the street you (pl.) are walking.

14. I am wandering toward the town. I shall be in the town.
I was wandering away from the town.
I shall wander out from the town.

15. The girl and the boy ought to pay the penalty.
The girl and the boy do not desire to pay the penalty.
Both the girl and the boy will pay the penalty.

16. The man has the zeal of a farmer and the mind (of a farmer).
To the man there was the zeal of a farmer and the mind (of a farmer).

17. To the boy there is gold, iron (there is) to the girl. (The boy has gold, the girl (has) iron). The boy has gold, the girl (has) iron.

18. Does the god have anger against the farmers of the island? Does he love the farmers?

19. Daughters the sailor was having, but (he was) not (having) sons. For in fact the gods were not loving the sailor.

20. Neither the men of Italy nor the women (of Italy) I was able to see.

21. The daughters of the queen will be able to reward both the sailors with swords and the poets with books.

22. Do you fear the anger of the gods? The gods indeed are able to see the deeds both of men and of women.

23. I shall work in the fields with the slaves. For I owe a man money, and I do not desire to owe (him) (my) life.

24. Are you able, slave, to work in the homeland? Do you desire to set sail away from the homeland?

25. Do you love, son, the girl on the island? Will you answer?

26. The girl desires to walk in the street with the son of the queen. Why is she walking with a sailor?

27. You were showing, the cares of (your) mind from (your) deeds, O girl.

28. The cares of war are summoning the men away from the country.

29. The farmer was not desiring to work with (his) son in the field.

30. The poet was thinking about the deeds of the gods, but he was not able to respond to the sailor.

31. Why were the women fearing punishments? The goddess was showing anger to the women.

32. The slave owes money to the master, but he will not give (it to him).

33. The men with the boys were able to move the weapons out from the field.

34. The poet with (his) words is able to move the minds of men and women.

35. Will the queen order (her) daughter, not (her) son, to walk in the streets of the town? Will the daughter respond to the queen?

36. The queen was not making a mistake. For in fact she was ordering the farmers to work in the fields.

37. You are not working in the fields, O boys. You will stir up the anger of the farmer, and you will pay the penalty.

38. Neither the sailors fear wars nor the women (fear wars).
The sailors fear neither wars nor weapons.
The sailors fear neither wars nor weapons.

39. The queen was pondering both the anger of the gods and the wisdom (of the gods).
The queen was pondering the anger of the gods, the poet (was pondering) the wisdom (of the gods).
The queen (was pondering) the anger of the gods, of the poets the wisdom (the queen) was pondering.

40. Why was the poet showing the boys the book about the mind and the soul? The boys were desiring wisdom.

41. The queen is giving the men of the island swords. For there will be a war on the island.

42. The woman fears about the life of (her) husband. For in fact he will set sail to war.

43. Will you give a book to the woman, O queen?
Will you reward the woman with a book?

44. The master was ordering the slaves to work in the fields.
The master will not order the slaves to work in the fields.

45. Why are you (pl.) not giving the boys weapons? You ought to ponder, O men, the dangers of war.

46. Why are the slaves thinking about the reputation of the master?

47. You are able to think about the concerns of the slaves, and you ought (to do so).

48. Are you pondering the plans of the gods, O poets?

49. I see arms and a man, but you are able to see neither arms nor a man.

50. The queen fears war. She orders the men to be in arms.

51. To the gods are there souls? OR: Do the gods have souls?
Do the gods have souls?

52. The sailors on the island (used to have) swords, but they did not use to have books.
The sailors on the island (used to have) swords, they did not use to have books.
To the sailors on the island there were swords, (there were) not books.

53. The queen (desires) to give weapons to the sailors, (she) desires (to give) gifts to the gods.

54. The slave neither with iron was able to move the master nor with gold.

55. Do you see, gods and goddesses, the gifts of the women?

56. I am a farmer. Are you a sailor?
We used to be slaves. Were you a master?

57. There are both poets in the street and farmers.

58. The mind of the man is making a mistake about the words of the poet.

59. Both the words of the poet and the gifts of the queen will stir the men into arms.

60. The girl and the boy are not able to show the master the way.

61. Rumor was wandering toward the towns.
There was a rumor about the daughter of the queen.

62. The queen is distressed not about money, but about (her) reputation.

63. Even the girls will desire wisdom. For they are wandering (down) from the way.

64. You will see the enthusiasm of the boy from (his) deeds.

65. We are wandering, but you will show the way toward the town.

66. The poet will wander into Italy. For in fact he loves (his) homeland and desires to see (it).

67. The slave was desiring to be a master, but he was not able (to be one).

68. The sailors are giving the men weapons and the women gold and the boys books.

69. Not gold do I desire nor gifts nor money, but (I desire) wisdom.

70. Are you presenting the girls with gifts? Why, O poet, (are you) not (presenting) the boys (with gifts)?

71. The master was calling the slaves, but the slaves were not responding to the master.

72. The man used to call the boy (his) son.

73. The women call Italy (their) homeland.

74. To the boy he will give gifts, to the girl (he will give) books.

75. The minds even of farmers, O poet, you are able to move.

76. We shall summon the woman away from the town toward the field; for she will be able to show the farmers wisdom and judgment about the anger of the queen.

77. The gods will give the girl advice; for in fact the gods have concern about (her) reputation.

78. We shall have to show the sailors the plans of the queen. For the queen desires to give weapons to the slaves of the islands. The sailors will have to set sail.

B. 1. Fīlia poētae fīliīs rēgīnae dōna dat.

2. Cūr dominus et servīs aurum mōnstrābat?

3. Poteruntne fēminae in īnsulā nautam verbīs movēre? Ad Italiam vēla dabit?

4. Animus virī errāre potest, sed dī poētīs sapientiam dant.

5. Rēgīna facta fīliae cōgitābat, sed verba fīliī.

6. Iubēbātisne, fēminae, puerōs in viā verbīs rēgīnae respondēre?

7. Fīliōs fīliāsque dē vītā animae cōgitāre et īram deum timēre iubēbō.

8. Puerī aurum habēbant, sed poētae librōs.
Puerīs erat aurum, sed poētīs (erant) librī.

9. Agricolae cūrās dē perīculīs bellī habent.
Agricolīs sunt cūrae dē perīculīs bellī.

10. Puellīs dea erat rēgīna.

11. Rēgīnae dōnum deōrum erat vīta.

12. Servī cum fīliīs dominō fīliaeque studium mōnstrāre optābant.

13. Virī Italiae poenās dabunt; est enim īra in animīs deum.

14. Cūr in agrīs, fīlī, nōn labōrābās? Sapientiam agricolārum cōgitāre dēbēs.

15. Nōn erunt nautae in oppidō; nam perīcula bellī timent.

Chapter III: Drill 17-18 (pages 83-86)

A.

		Singular	*Plural*
1.	Nom.	parva īnsula	parvae īnsulae
	Gen.	parvae īnsulae	parvārum īnsulārum
	Dat.	parvae īnsulae	parvīs īnsulīs
	Acc.	parvam īnsulam	parvās īnsulās
	Abl.	parvā īnsulā	parvīs īnsulīs
	Voc.	parva īnsula	parvae īnsulae
2.	Nom.	poēta Rōmānus	poētae Rōmānī
	Gen.	poētae Rōmānī	poētārum Rōmānōrum
	Dat.	poētae Rōmānō	poētīs Rōmānīs
	Acc.	poētam Rōmānam	poētās Rōmānōs
	Abl.	poētā Rōmānō	poētīs Rōmānīs
	Voc.	poēta Rōmāne	poētae Rōmānī
3.	Nom.	dōnum pulchrum	dōna pulchra
	Gen.	dōnī pulchrī	dōnōrum pulchrōrum
	Dat.	dōnō pulchrō	dōnīs pulchrīs
	Acc.	dōnum pulchrum	dōna pulchra
	Abl.	dōnō pulchrō	dōnīs pulchrīs
	Voc.	dōnum pulchrum	dōna pulchra
4.	Nom.		multa arma
	Gen.		multōrum armōrum
	Dat.		multīs armīs
	Acc.		multa arma
	Abl.		multīs armīs
	Voc.		multa arma

B. 1. bonō, bonō
2. bonī, bonī
3. bonam
4. bonum, bonum, bonum
5. bonī, bonō, bonī, bonī

6. bonō, bonō
7. bona, bona, bona
8. bonum
9. bonīs, bonīs
10. bonō, bonō
11. bonus, bone
12. bonī, bonī, bonī
13. bonōrum
14. bonī, bonō, bonī, bonī
15. bonum
16. bonās
17. bonus, bone
18. bonum, bonum, bonum
19. bonās
20. bonārum

C. 1. into the beautiful fields
2. for the great poet
3. a big sword (d.o.)
4. away from the small island
5. for the friendly son, from the friendly son
6. much money (d.o.)
7. for the wretched slaves, from the wretched slaves
8. O bad master (d.a.)
9. great gifts (subj., d.o., [d.a.])
10. of an unfriendly sailor, unfriendly sailors (subj., d.a.)
11. many daughters (d.o.)
12. with much money
13. of the miserable farmers
14. of the miserable girl, for the miserable girl, miserable girls (subj., d.a.)
15. of an unfriendly master, unfriendly masters (subj., d.a.)
16. a friendly girl (d.o.)
17. about the bad book
18. a good mind (d.o.)

19. great gods (subj., d.a.)
20. Roman town (subj., d.o., [d.a.])
21. for the free farmer
22. for good gifts, with good gifts
23. bad boy (d.a.)
24. in great danger
25. of a happy man, happy men (subj., d.a.)
26. for the free towns, from the free towns
27. in a small town
28. toward the fertile field
29. of a free farmer, free farmers (subj., d.a.)
30. free woman (subj., d.a.)
31. bad deed (subj., d.o., [d.a.])
32. of the beautiful goddess, for the beautiful goddess, beautiful goddesses (subj., d.a.)
33. for much iron, with much iron
34. of the Roman poets
35. to the Roman towns
36. for the good gods, from the good gods
37. great poet (d.a.)
38. a bad reputation (d.o.)
39. to many lands
40. about good plans

Chapter III: Drill 19 (pages 87-90)

1. **miserō**, masculine singular dative
   I shall give the miserable man money.
2. **laetae**, feminine plural nominative
   The happy women are walking in the street.
3. **multa**, neuter plural accusative
   The poet was pointing out many things to the girls.
4. **līberō**, masculine singular dative
   The free man will have much money.
5. **līber**, masculine singular nominative
   The slave is not a free man.

6. **malīs**, neuter plural ablative
I am giving the queen a book about the evil things (evils) of war.

7. **magnum**, masculine/neuter singular accusative
I used to see a big man/big thing in the small town.

8. **bona**, neuter plural accusative
Do you desire good things?

9. **malum**, masculine/neuter singular accusative
Do you love a bad man/thing?

10. **amīcō**, masculine singular dative
She is giving gifts to (her) friend (friendly man).

11. **amīcīs**, masculine plural ablative
We shall walk with (our) friends (friendly men).

12. **Rōmānī**, masculine plural nominative
The Romans were setting sail away from Italy.

13. **parvae**, feminine singular dative
To the small woman there was a great soul.

14. **parvum**, neuter singular accusative; **multa**, neuter plural accusative
I have a small thing (a little), but I desire many things.

15. **inimīcōs**, masculine plural accusative
We do not love (our) enemies (unfriendly men).

16. **pulchra**, feminine singular nominative; **multa**, neuter plural accusative
The beautiful woman was giving the slave many things.

17. **malus**, masculine singular nominative; **bonum**, neuter singular accusative
The bad man will not be able to desire a good thing.

18. **malīs**, masculine/feminine/neuter plural dative
I shall respond to the bad men/women/things.

19. **Rōmānī**, masculine plural nominative; **magna**, neuter plural accusative
The Romans were desiring great things.

20. **pulchra**, neuter plural accusative
You will see beautiful things on the islands.

Chapter III: Drill 19-20 (pages 91-92)

A. 1. Pulchra erunt dōna.

2. Mala erat fāma virī.

3. Magnum erit bellum in patriā.

4. Amīcī sunt poētae īnsulae.

5. Anima virī nōn est pulchra.

6. Magnane erat rēgīna?

7. Agricolaene erant pulchrī?

8. Et virī et puerī sunt laetī.

B. 1. The slaves were answering miserable things to the master.
2. I was seeing a bad thing/man in the street.
3. The woman was beautiful to many men/women/people.
4. Do you love a beautiful woman?
5. The good woman will give the boys many things.
6. Are the farmers free men?
7. I shall give many and beautiful things to the good poet.
8. The free man has much wisdom. And indeed wisdom is a beautiful thing.

Chapter III: Drill 21 (pages 93-95)

A. eō, īre, iī/īvī, itum

	Translation	*Change of Number*
1.	they are going	it
2.	they will go	ībit
3.	you are going	ītis
4.	they were going	ībat
5.	you used to go	ībātis
6.	we are going	eō
7.	we shall go	ībō
8.	I used to go	ībāmus

B. 1. ībant
2. ībō
3. ībunt
4. ībam
5. eunt
6. eō
7. ībis
8. ībat
9. ītis
10. īre

C. 1. Are you going with the good men into war?
2. Both slaves and free men are going into the fields.
3. Were you (pl.) going with the women out from the country?
4. I am ordering the farmers to go to the island with the sailors.
5. The happy woman will go with the wretched man into the town.
6. Both the master and the slave were going out from the dangers.

7. By the road to the town I am going with (my) son.
8. The wretched girl is going out from life.

Chapter III: Drill 22 (pages 97-99)

A.
1. you (pl.) are called
2. they will be feared
3. he is being ordered
4. I am being chosen
5. they will be pointed out
6. you were being presented
7. he is considered
8. you (pl.) are pointed out
9. we used to be loved
10. I shall be seen
11. you will be rewarded
12. she was moved (repeatedly)
13. we are being seen
14. you (pl.) will be considered
15. he is moved
16. they were being ordered
17. you will be desired
18. she is loved
19. we used to be feared
20. I shall be moved

B.
1. imperfect active
2. future passive
3. future active
4. present active
5. imperfect passive
6. imperfect active
7. present active
8. future passive
9. imperfect active
10. imperfect passive
11. present passive
12. present passive
13. present active
14. future active
15. present passive
16. imperfect passive
17. present active
18. future passive
19. imperfect active
20. imperfect active

Chapter III: Drill 23-24 (pages 101-106)

A. 1. optō, optāre, optāvī, optātus

	Active	*Translation*	*Passive*	*Translation*
Present	optās	you desire	optāris/optāre	you are desired
Imperfect	optābās	you were desiring	optābāris/optābāre	you were being desired
Future	optābis	you will desire	optāberis/optābere	you will be desired

2. iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussus

	Active	*Translation*	*Passive*	*Translation*
Present	iubēmus	we order	iubēmur	we are ordered
Imperfect	iubēbāmus	we used to order	iubēbāmur	we used to be ordered
Future	iubēbimus	we shall order	iubēbimur	we shall be ordered

3. moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus

	Active	*Translation*	*Passive*	*Translation*
Present	movent	they are moving	moventur	they are being moved
Imperfect	movēbant	they were moving	movēbantur	they were being moved
Future	movēbunt	they will move	movēbuntur	they will be moved

4. mōnstrō, mōnstrāre, mōnstrāvī, mōnstrātus

	Active	*Translation*	*Passive*	*Translation*
Present	mōnstrat	she is showing	mōnstrātur	she is being shown
Imperfect	mōnstrābat	she was showing	mōnstrābātur	she was being shown
Future	mōnstrābit	she will show	mōnstrābitur	she will be shown

5. amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus

	Active	*Translation*	*Passive*	*Translation*
Present	amō	I love	amor	I am loved
Imperfect	amābam	I used to love	amābar	I used to be loved
Future	amābō	I shall love	amābor	I shall be loved

6. habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus

	Active	*Translation*	*Passive*	*Translation*
Present	habētis	you (pl.) consider	habēminī	you (pl.) are considered
Imperfect	habēbātis	you (pl.) used to consider	habēbāminī	you(pl.) used to be considered
Future	habēbitis	you (pl.) will consider	habēbiminī	you (pl.) will be considered

B.

	Tense and Voice	*Translation*
1.	present active	he owes
2.	present passive	it is owed

	Tense and Voice	*Translation*
3.	imperfect passive	you were being considered
4.	present passive	you are being considered
5.	future active	I shall fear
6.	future passive	I shall be feared
7.	future passive	we shall be called
8.	imperfect passive	we were being called
9.	present passive	you are seen; you seem
10.	future passive	you will be seen; you will seem
11.	present passive	you are being ordered
12.	present active	you are ordering
13.	imperfect passive	they were being moved
14.	future passive	they will be moved
15.	imperfect passive	you (pl.) used to be considered
16.	present active	you (pl.) have
17.	present active	we are ordering
18.	present passive	we are being ordered
19.	present active	I love
20.	present passive	I am loved
21.	future active	I shall desire
22.	future passive	we shall be desired
23.	present active	he gives
24.	present passive	it is given
25.	imperfect active	she was pondering
26.	future active	he will ponder
27.	imperfect active	you were moving
28.	imperfect passive	you were being moved
29.	present passive	you (pl.) are called
30.	present passive	we are being called
31.	future passive	they will be seen; they will seem
32.	present passive	we are seen; we seem
33.	imperfect passive	they used to be loved
34.	present passive	they are loved
35.	future active	you will fear

	Tense and Voice	*Translation*
36.	present passive	you are being feared
37.	present passive	I am being rewarded
38.	future passive	I shall be rewarded
39.	present active	they ought/they owe
40.	present passive	they are owed

C.

	Tense and Voice	*Translation*
1.	future passive	vocābuntur
2.	present active	errās
3.	imperfect passive	habēbāmur
4.	present active	habet
5.	imperfect active	labōrābant
6.	present passive	amor
7.	future active	poterimus
8.	present passive	iubētur
9.	present passive	optāminī
10.	imperfect passive	vidēbātur
11.	future passive	movēberis, movēbere
12.	imperfect active	erant
13.	future passive	vidēbor
14.	present active	dōnat
15.	imperfect passive	iubēbāminī
16.	future passive	cōgitābitur
17.	present active	cōgitant
18.	present passive	movēris, movēre
19.	imperfect passive	timēbāmur
20.	future active	dabit, dōnābit

D.

	Translation	*Voice Change*
1.	I am being called	vocō
2.	they were giving	dōnābantur
3.	it is being thought	cōgitat
4.	you used to see	vidēbāris, vidēbāre
5.	you (pl.) will be desired	optābitis

	Translation	*Voice Change*
6.	we are being moved	movēmus
7.	you will love	amāberis, amābere
8.	they will be shown	mōnstrābunt
9.	she has	habētur
10.	you (pl.) were being ordered	iubēbātis
11.	I used to fear	timēbar
12.	they are given	dant

E.

1. errābātis
2. optātur
3. movēbimur
4. ambulābant
5. erās
6. vidēmur
7. poterat
8. iubēbor
9. vocābāminī
10. dant
11. habēberis, habēbere
12. labōrāmus
13. amābātur
14. erunt
15. timeor
16. dōnābātis
17. cōgitābitur
18. potestis
19. optābāmur
20. mōnstrantur

Chapter III: Drill 25-29 (pages 107-112)

1. The queen is loved by the good man.
   bonō, Ablative of Personal Agent

2. The boy seems good to many men, but he is bad.

   multīs, Dative of Reference
   bonus, Predicate Adjective (in the Nominative case)

3. A good man is seen by many men.

   bonus, Nominative, Subject
   multīs, Ablative of Personal Agent

4. With great enthusiasm I shall ponder the words of the poets.

   studiō, Ablative of Manner

5. You ought to ponder with (your) mind the wisdom of the poets.

   animō, Ablative of Means

6. To give gifts to the gods is (a) good (thing). To pay the penalty is (a) bad (thing).

   bonum, Predicate Adjective (in the Nominative case) *or* Predicate Nominative
   dare, Subject Infinitive

7. Why are the slaves being summoned by the master?

   dominō, Ablative of Personal Agent

8. The danger of war will be great.

   magnum, Predicate Adjective (in the Nominative case)

9. Wisdom is a beautiful thing.

   pulchrum, Predicate Nominative

10. I have books, gifts for friends but not for enemies.

    dōna, Accusative in Apposition to *librōs*

11. You seem miserable to (your) friends, O woman.

    misera, Predicate Adjective (in the Nominative case)
    amīcīs, Dative of Reference

12. I shall order the girl to be good.

    bonam, Predicate Adjective (in the Accusative case)

13. The good man was friendly to the farmer.

    agricolae, Dative of Reference
    amīcus, Predicate Adjective (in the Nominative case)

14. To ponder the cares of the soul is (a) beautiful (thing).

    pulchrum, Predicate Adjective (in the Nominative case) *or* Predicate Nominative
    cōgitāre, Subject Infinitive

15. We were walking out from danger very carefully.

    cūrā, Ablative of Manner

16. The poet ponders good things and is considered (a) good (man).

    bonus, Predicate Adjective (in the Nominative case) *or* Predicate Nominative

17. Why were the books being moved by the girls with care?

    puellīs, Ablative of Personal Agent
    cūrā, Ablative of Manner

18. The slaves are hostile to the masters.

    dominīs, Dative of Reference
    inimīcī, Predicate Adjective (in the Nominative case)

19. Many are the cares of farmers.

    multae, Predicate Adjective (in the Nominative case)

20. The farmer is considered a bad master by the slaves.

    dominus, Predicate Nominative
    servīs, Ablative of Personal Agent
    agricola, Nominative, Subject

21. To the boys money seems to be good, to the girls wisdom (seems to be good).

    puerīs, Dative of Reference
    bona, Predicate Adjective (in the Nominative case)

22. We fear great wars, the punishments of the gods.

    poenās, Accusative in apposition to *bella*

Exercises, Chapter III (pages 113-125)

A. 1. We love (our) friends.
We are loved by (our) friends.
To love (one's) friends is (a) beautiful (thing).

2. The happy boy was calling the miserable girl.
The happy boy was being called by the miserable girl.

3. You will see many men.
You will be seen by many men/people.
You will seem good to many men/people.

4. Both free men and slaves will soon praise the good poets on account of (their) zeal.
The good poets will soon be praised by free men and slaves on account of (their) zeal.

5. Lucius, a good man, holds a big sword.
A big sword is held by Lucius, a good man.

6. Now I am going out from the forum toward the fertile fields.
I was going into the forum with friends.
Are the farmers going out from the fields?

7. You will go to the small town with friends. For a life without friends will be miserable.

8. Many are the pursuits of a good life. You ought, friend, to think diligently about the good things of life.

9. The Romans used to overcome the inhabitants of Italy by the sword. For in fact they were desiring to hold power in many lands.

10. Miserable is the poet Catullus; for he loves a beautiful girl, but the girl is unfriendly to Catullus.

11. It is (a) bad (thing) to wander without a plan, but we shall wander out from the land without a plan and weapons.

12. Why do you fear, O sons? Always good things are given by the good gods. Soon you will be rewarded with good things.

13. Many words both good and bad about the power of the Roman people we were pondering.

14. The inhabitants of the island praise the good things of life always with happy words. For in fact a beautiful queen on the island holds great power very diligently.

15. Evil men will stir up wars even against good men. The inhabitants without arms will be distressed, but to be distressed on behalf of the country is (a) good (thing).

16. To the people power in the lands was being shown by the goddess.

17. Why will men and boys fight? On account of the zeal of bad men in the province there will be a great war. And indeed many men will pay the penalty.

18. You are going into war with swords, O Romans. WIll you give (your) life in return for fame?

19. The man and the woman with (their) son will go without delay out from the land. For they desire to occupy a free town.

20. The gods will give many good things to the inhabitants of the town. For by the inhabitants the great deeds of the gods are being praised with diligence.

21. Beautiful gifts, books of Catullus and Horace, will be given to the son of the poet.

22. I shall go into the forum with (my) small daughter. Will you be able to go with (your) son?

23. You are beautiful, Quintus, and you have a beautiful soul.

24. Many men in war with a sword I shall overcome. And indeed I shall stir up the anger of (my) enemies.

25. The man (husband) will give (his) life in return for the life of the woman (his wife).

26. Deeds without judgment and wisdom are bad, small boy.

27. A great book, a gift of a great poet, we shall give to (our) friend in the small town.

28. The towns of Italy were being occupied by many slaves with (their) masters.

29. Why are you (pl.) praising the boy? You (pl.) ought to praise the girl on behalf of (her) wisdom.

30. The inhabitants are not friendly to the sailors. Soon they will fight with/against the sailors.

31. Much money is owed to the farmers by the bad inhabitants, but nothing will be given.

32. The beautiful deeds of men in war will be pointed out to both the boys and the girls.

33. Soon you will be summoned into the forum, Horace, by (your) enemies. For always bad men have great anger on account of the diligence of good men.

34. The free men of the province were being praised by the Romans on account of (their) diligence in war.

35. Why will many sailors go out from the town? They are being ordered by the queen to set sail without delay.

36. The good poet will be rewarded by the queen with a book, then with gold.

37. Will you order, Tiberius, the wretched slaves to go into the fields without delay?

38. Great was the anger of the god, and many bad things were being given to the Romans.

39. On account of (our) hatred of authority we shall fight with/against the Romans in the province. And indeed we shall overcome the Romans with great zeal.

40. Free men with slaves were being held in the unfriendly land on account of the war in the province.

41. The Romans used to hold power in many lands. For in fact great was the power of the Roman people.

42. You give good advice, and you are considered a good friend. Why do you seem miserable?

43. I have nothing bad in (my) happy mind. And indeed I am not able to be unfriendly. For (my) zeal and care about the soul I am being praised by the good poet; soon I shall be praised by many men.

44. The Roman populace is praised by many men for (its) deeds. For the deeds of the Romans seem great to many men.

45. To a bad man nothing is good, and great always is (his) hatred of good men/things. Soon he will pay the penalty for (his) bad soul.

46. On behalf of the homeland and (our) sons, O inhabitants, we shall fight with/against the Romans. It is (a) good (thing) and (a) beautiful (thing) to fight for (one's) country.

47. The small books of Catullus and Horace, great poets, will always be praised.

48. Are you going, friends, on account of the danger of war to the small island? Are you setting sail now?

49. He seems happy to many men, (but) (he seems) miserable to friends.
We were seeming friendly to good men, (we were seeming) unfriendly to bad men.

50. The wisdom of the gods is being very carefully pondered by Horace the poet. For in fact it is (a) good (thing) to ponder the wisdom of the gods.

51. The great gods are considered friendly to men and women, but we shall always fear the anger and hatred of the gods.

52. You will be called to the forum by the queen, men, and you will go without delay.

53. Without cares I was wandering in the streets with good friends.

54. Now both farmers and inhabitants of the province are fighting with/against the Romans. Will they be able to conquer (them)?

55. Toward the flourishing fields I was walking; for I was being called by friends.

56. Even into the dangers of war on behalf of friends we shall go, and we shall overcome the inhabitants of the province by the sword.

57. Why are you going to the forum? You will see nothing good, Julia, nothing beautiful.

58. The men of the province used to be considered unfriendly to the Roman people. Why were many men going to the province?

59. The Romans used to seem to many men to love war and weapons.

60. Soon Marcus will fight with/against Publius with a sword. For always Marcus used to have great hatred against Publius.

61. The Romans are going with arms out from the homeland into the land of a hostile people.

62. Not on account of money, men of the province, but on behalf of the homeland we ought to fight with/against the bad men.

63. The great queen was ordering the sailors to set sail toward war on behalf of the people. Why was there a delay for the sailors?

64. Horace, a great and good poet, used to ponder without hatred the deeds and words of (his) enemies.

65. The plans of the queen about the punishment of the slaves seem good to the free men.

66. You were not answering the unfriendly queen, and you were stirring up great anger.

67. It is (a) miserable (thing) to desire to fight and not to have weapons.

B. 1. Cūr nautae laetī ab īnsulā parvā magnō cum studiō vēla dabant?

2. Parva puella in forum ībat. Nam amīcōs vidēre optābat.

3. Propter magnam dīligentiam, Līvia, ā poētīs verbīs pulchrīs laudāberis.

4. Nōn, Rōmānī, superābimur ab incolīs malīs oppidōrum līberōrum.

5. Habentne inimīcī multōs gladiōs?
Inimīcīsne sunt multī gladiī?

6. Rōmānī imperium magnum habēbant.
Rōmānīs erat imperium magnum.

7. Laetī videntur agricolae in Italiā, sed miserī sunt servī. Nam semper malum est servōs habēre.

8. Magna multīs vidēbātur sapientia Horātī, poētae bonī. Cūr verbīs , amīce, nōn movēris?

9. Dōna pulchra prō factīs pulchrīs virōrum ā dīs semper dōnantur. Dī enim bonōs esse virōs optant.

10. Ē forō ad agrōs ībam atque ab inimīcīs vidēbar.

11. Nunc, Tīte, ad oppidum inimīcum īmus, sed mox cum incolīs verbīs armīsque pugnābimus.

12. Nihil sine cōnsiliō ā bonō laudātur. Nam dī bonīs sapientiam dant.

Chapter IV: Drill 30 (pages 127-141)

A.

1. dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictus
2. faciō, facere, fēcī, factus
3. audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus
4. sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus
5. canō, canere, cecinī, cantus
6. agō, agere, ēgī, āctus
7. scrībō, scrībere, scrīpsī, scrīptus
8. regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus
9. capiō, capere, cēpī, captus
10. pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus
11. mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus
12. dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus
13. veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum
14. gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus

B.

1	*2*	*3*	*4*	*Meaning*
canō	canere	cecinī	cantus	sing (of)
dūcō	dūcere	dūxī	*ductus*	lead; consider
gerō	gerere	gessī	gestus	*manage*
faciō	*facere*	fēcī	factus	make, do
veniō	venīre	*vēnī*	ventum	come
audiō	audīre	audīvī	audītus	hear, listen (to)
dīcō	dīcere	dīxī	dictus	*say, tell*
agō	agere	*ēgī*	āctus	do, drive, discuss
sentiō	sentīre	sēnsī	*sēnsus*	feel, perceive
scrībō	*scrībere*	scrīpsī	scrīptus	write

C.

1. 1st sing. imperf. act. indic.; I was driving
2. 1st sing. fut. pass. indic.; I shall be led
3. 2nd sing. pres. act. indic.; you are taking
4. 1st pl. imperf. act. indic.; we were doing
5. 2nd pl. fut. act. indic.; you (pl.) will come
6. 1st sing. pres. act. indic.; I perceive

7. 1st pl. fut. act. indic.; we shall say
8. 3rd pl. imperf. act. indic.; they used to come
9. 2nd pl. fut. pass. indic.; you (pl.) will be sent
10. 3rd sing. pres. act. indic.; she is writing
11. 3rd pl. pres. act. indic.; they are writing
12. 3rd pl. imperf. pass. indic.; they were being managed
13. 2nd pl. pres. act. indic.; you (pl.) hear
14. 2nd sing. imperf. act. indic.; you were leading
15. 2nd sing. fut. act. indic.; you will perceive
16. 1st pl. pres. act. indic.; we sing
17. 1st sing. fut. act. indic.; I shall put
18. 3rd pl. pres. pass. indic.; they are being done
19. 2nd sing. pres. pass. indic.; you are being ruled
20. 3rd sing. pres. act. indic.; he is coming

D. 1. dīcuntur
2. agētis
3. faciēbās
4. mittō
5. mittimur
6. audiēbar
7. regitis
8. pōnēris/ pōnēre
9. venit
10. dūcimus
11. sentiō
12. geram
13. mittēbāmur
14. audiēminī
15. canēbātis
16. faciēmus
17. dīcit
18. venītis
19. scrībimus
20. agēbam

E.

	Tense and Voice	*Translation*
1.	future passive	I shall be perceived
2.	present active	they perceive
3.	future passive	they will be sent
4.	present active	I am sending
5.	imperfect passive	you were being put
6.	present active	he is putting
7.	future active	you (pl.) will capture
8.	present active	they capture
9.	future active	we shall sing
10.	present active	you (pl.) are singing
11.	future passive	I shall be driven
12.	present active	we drive
13.	present passive	we are being heard
14.	imperfect passive	you used to be heard
15.	imperfect passive	you (pl.) were being perceived
16.	future active	he will feel
17.	present active	he makes
18.	future active	you will make
19.	present passive	it is being written
20.	future active	you (pl.) will write
21.	present active	you are coming
22.	present active	he is coming
23.	future active	you (pl.) will manage
24.	present active	we are managing
25.	imperfect passive	we were being captured
26.	future active	you will capture
27.	present passive	you are being led
28.	future active	I shall lead
29.	imperfect active	I was saying
30.	present active	you (pl.) are saying
31.	present active	she takes
32.	future active	I shall take
33.	present active	we are ruling

	Tense and Voice	*Translation*
34.	future passive	you will be ruled
35.	present passive	I am being heard
36.	present passive	you are being heard
37.	future active	I shall write
38.	future passive	it will be written
39.	future passive	they will be sent
40.	present active	they are sending

F. 1. veniēbat
2. audiunt
3. faciam
4. canitis
5. audiēbāmur
6. mittētur
7. sentiēris/sentiēre
8. veniunt
9. capimus
10. scrībētur
11. dūcēbāminī
12. pōnam
13. audiēbant
14. dīcis
15. agēmus
16. gerere, gereris
17. scrībunt
18. regēbat
19. mittō
20. audiēris/audiēre
21. venient
22. sentiēbat
23. faciēbātis
24. mittēmur
25. agēbar
26. scrībō
27. dīcit
28. capient
29. canēbāmus
30. agit, gerit
31. capis
32. pōnēbās
33. capiar
34. sentīmur
35. dūcunt
36. veniētis
37. gerēbat
38. faciam
39. regēre/regēris
40. audiēbātur

G. 1. Is the poet writing good things about the son of the queen? WIll he say beautiful things about the queen?

2. The Romans will zealously wage war in the province.

3. I am being led by wisdom, Marcus, but you are ruled by anger. And indeed you ought to set aside (your) anger.

4. The inhabitants of the town are being placed in danger by the bad men.
5. You will come into the forum, and you will hear the words of great men.
6. The poet was singing of the fertile fields with beautiful words. The farmers were listening.
7. I shall take the money of the master, and I shall send (it) to the slaves.
8. The good sailor is conducting a miserable life; for he will soon be sent away from the beautiful island.
9. We were waging wars in many lands, and we were capturing the wretched inhabitants.
10. A beautiful book is being written with enthusiasm by the good poet. Soon we shall sing the words of the poet.
11. You will be driven into danger by the men, O boys, but I shall lead the girls out from danger.
12. You will do many good things for the people, O Gracchi (brothers), and you will be praised.

H.

	Tense and Voice	*Translation*
1.	present active	they owe; they ought
2.	future active	they will do
3.	present passive	we are seen; we seem
4.	future passive	we shall be placed
5.	present passive	you are being summoned
6.	future passive	you will be captured
7.	present active	I am pointing out
8.	present active	I am making
9.	future active	I shall order
10.	future active	I shall manage
11.	imperfect active	they were considering
12.	imperfect active	they were doing
13.	imperfect passive	we were being moved
14.	imperfect active	we were coming
15.	present active	you (pl.) are
16.	imperfect active	you (pl.) were
17.	future active	they will answer
18.	future active	they will listen
19.	present passive	it is being taken
20.	present active	she is wandering

21.	future active	you will love
22.	present active	you sing
23.	present passive	you (pl.) are being conquered
24.	future active	you (pl.) will make
25.	imperfect active	I used to be
26.	future active	I shall be
27.	imperfect active	they were wandering
28.	imperfect active	they were capturing
29.	present active	I am erring
30.	present active	I am writing
31.	present active	you (pl.) are able
32.	future active	you (pl.) will be able
33.	future passive	he will be led
34.	present passive	it is being considered
35.	present active	you fear
36.	future active	you will send
37.	present active	they are able
38.	present active	they are putting
39.	present passive	you (pl.) are being heard
40.	present passive	you (pl.) are being captured
41.	present passive	it is being waged
42.	present passive	it is granted
43.	present passive	they are being written
44.	future passive	they will be written
45.	imperfect active	you were going
46.	present active	you are going
47.	present active	we are going
48.	present active	we are

I. 1. poterant
2. laudāberis/laudābere
3. facimus
4. mittētis
5. habēbātur

6. dūcor
7. regēbāminī
8. erimus
9. superātur
10. tenēberis/tenēbere
11. sentiunt
12. veniēbam
13. ībis
14. gerēbāmur
15. agēminī
16. dīcitur
17. iubēbam
18. amant
19. capiēbāris/capiēbāre
20. canētur
21. pōnimus
22. faciēs
23. audiō
24. scrībēbantur

Chapter IV: Drill 31-33 (pages 143-147)

A. 1. canō, canere, cecinī, cantus

		Active	*Translation*	*Passive*	*Translation*
Indicative					
	Present	canunt	they sing	canuntur	they are sung
	Imperfect	canēbant	they were singing	canēbantur	they were being sung
	Future	canent	they will sing	canentur	they will be sung
Infinitive					
	Present	canere	to sing	canī	to be sung
Imperative					
	Singular	cane	sing	canere	be sung
	Plural	canite	sing (pl.)	caniminī	be sung (pl.)

2. audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus

	Active	*Translation*	*Passive*	*Translation*
Indicative				
Present	audīmus	we are hearing	audīmur	we are being heard
Imperfect	audiēbāmus	we were hearing	audiēbāmur	we were being heard
Future	audiēmus	we shall hear	audiēmur	we shall be heard
Infinitive				
Present	audīre	to hear	audīrī	to be heard
Imperative				
Singular	audī	listen	audīre	be heard
Plural	audīte	listen (pl.)	audīminī	be heard (pl.)

3. capiō, capere, cēpī, captus

	Active	*Translation*	*Passive*	*Translation*
Indicative				
Present	capis	you capture	caperis/capere	you are captured
Imperfect	capiēbās	you used to take	capiēbāris/capiēbāre	you used to be taken
Future	capiēs	you will take	capiēris/capiēre	you will be taken
Infinitive				
Present	capere	to capture	capī	to be captured
Imperative				
Singular	cape	capture	capere	be captured
Plural	capite	capture (pl.)	capiminī	be captured (pl.)

4. moveō, movēre. mōvī, mōtus

	Active	*Translation*	*Passive*	*Translation*
Indicative				
Present	moveō	I am moving	moveor	I am being moved
Imperfect	movēbam	I was moving	movēbar	I was being moved
Future	movēbō	I shall move	movēbor	I shall be moved
Infinitive				
Present	movēre	to move	movērī	to be moved
Imperative				
Singular	movē	move	movēre	be moved
Plural	movēte	move (pl.)	movēminī	be moved (pl.)

5. pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus

	Active	*Translation*	*Passive*	*Translation*
Indicative				
Present	pōnitis	you (pl.) put	pōniminī	you (pl.) are being put
Imperfect	pōnēbātis	you (pl.) used to put	pōnēbāminī	you (pl.) used to be put
Future	pōnētis	you (pl.) will put	pōnēminī	you (pl.) will be put
Infinitive				
Present	pōnere	to put	pōnī	to be put
Imperative				
Singular	pōne	put	pōnere	be put
Plural	pōnite	put (pl.)	pōniminī	be put (pl.)

6. sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus

	Active	*Translation*	*Passive*	*Translation*
Indicative				
Present	sentit	he perceives	sentītur	he is perceived
Imperfect	sentiēbat	he was perceiving	sentiēbātur	he was being perceived
Future	sentiet	he will perceive	sentiētur	he will be perceived
Infinitive				
Present	sentīre	to perceive	sentīrī	to be perceived
Imperative				
Singular	sentī	perceive	sentīre	be perceived
Plural	sentīte	perceive (pl.)	sentīminī	be perceived (pl.)

7. mōnstrō, mōnstrāre, mōnstrāvī, mōnstrātus

	Active	*Translation*	*Passive*	*Translation*
Indicative				
Present	mōnstrat	he shows	mōnstrātur	he is shown
Imperfect	mōnstrābat	he was showing	mōnstrābātur	he was being shown
Future	mōnstrābit	he will show	mōnstrābitur	he will be shown
Infinitive				
Present	mōnstrāre	to show	mōnstrārī	to be shown
Imperative				
Singular	mōnstrā	show	mōnstrāre	be shown
Plural	mōnstrāte	show (pl.)	mōnstrāminī	be shown (pl.)

8. amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus

	Active	Translation	Passive	Translation
Indicative				
Present	amō	I love	amor	I am loved
Imperfect	amābam	I was loving	amābar	I was being loved
Future	amābō	I shall love	amābor	I shall be loved
Infinitive				
Present	amāre	to love	amārī	to be loved
Imperative				
Singular	amā	love	amāre	be loved
Plural	amāte	love (pl.)	amāminī	be loved (pl.)

9. gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus

	Active	Translation	Passive	Translation
Indicative				
Present	geritis	you (pl.) manage	geriminī	you (pl.) are being managed
Imperfect	gerēbātis	you (pl.) were managing	gerēbāminī	you (pl.) were being managed
Future	gerētis	you (pl.) will manage	gerēminī	you (pl.) will be managed
Infinitive				
Present	gerere	to manage	gerī	to be managed
Imperative				
Singular	gere	manage	gerere	be managed
Plural	gerite	manage (pl.)	geriminī	be managed (pl.)

10. sum, esse, fuī, futūrus

	Active	Translation
Indicative		
Present	sunt	they are
Imperfect	erant	they were
Future	erunt	they will be
Infinitive		
Present	esse	to be

11. veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum

	Active	Translation
Indicative		
Present	venīmus	we are coming
Imperfect	veniēbāmus	we were coming
Future	veniēmus	we shall come
Infinitive		
Present	venīre	to come
Imperative		
Singular	venī	come
Plural	venīte	come (pl.)

12. eō, īre, iī/īvī, itum

	Active	Translation
Indicative		
Present	īs	you are going
Imperfect	ībās	you were going
Future	ībis	you will go
Infinitive		
Present	īre	to go
Imperative		
Singular	ī	go
Plural	īte	go (pl.)

B. 1. Slave, bring gifts!

2. Answer the man!

3. Come on, sing, poet. Listen, girls; for the poet ought to be heard.

4. Walk, O boys, into the street.

5. I shall order Catiline to be ruled by the authority of the Roman people. Be ruled, Catiline, by the authority of the people.

6. Show the women the books of the poet.

7. Come on, man, speak about the deeds of the gods.

8. See now the queen of the island.

9. Give gifts to the gods!

10. Do good things and be considered (a) good (man).

11. Marcus ought to be sent to Italy. Marcus, go to Italy.

12. Why are you walking in the streets? Walk in the fields.

13. Bring weapons, O sailors, to the inhabitants.

14. Are you (pl.) able to be moved by the words of the poet? Be moved, O Gracchi.

15. Give money, O master.
16. Give money both to the boy and to the girl.
17. Sailors are able to be seen in the street. See (pl.) the sailors in the street.
18. Come (pl.) to the town with (your) son.
19. Lead into war, O queen, the men and the women!
20. Go now, O sons, to war and fight for the homeland.
21. Listen, O son! The queen is ordering the island to be held with arms.
22. Make arms from iron, not from gold.
23. Form a plan, inhabitant!
24. Come on, take up arms, O sailors!
25. Listen, slaves, to the words of the master!
26. Be led, sailors, by the good advice of the queen.

C. 1. Malī ē terrā agī dēbent.
2. Venī, Lūcī, in forum; Marcus enim causam agricolae miserī agit.
3. Audīte, puellae, cōnsilium bonum poētārum; poenam deōrum timēte.
4. Cūr librum dē bellō scrībēbās? Dīc, poēta magne.
5. Nautae ad īnsulam mittī dēbent. Vēla date, nautae.
6. Bonum est ā populō amārī.

Chapter IV: Drill 34-37 (pages 149-151)

1. Why were many of the women going away from the island?
fēminārum, Partitive Genitive
2. There will be war on account of the zeal for/of gold.
aurī, Objective Genitive
3. You ought to listen to the man great in respect to (his) opinions.
sententiīs, Ablative of Respect
4. Great was the hatred of the people against the queen.
populī, Subjective Genitive
5. I shall order the good ones of the sailors to set sail.
nautārum, Partitive Genitive
6. The miserable queen will surpass (her) sons in respect to life.
vītā, Ablative of Respect

7. To (my) sons I am able to give nothing (of) good.

bonī, Partitive Genitive

8. Were you pondering the queen's hatred of war?

rēgīnae, Subjective Genitive
bellī, Objective Genitive

9. The poet is considered good in respect to judgment by the people.

cōnsiliō, Ablative of Respect

10. Without care for/of (her) sons she was going out from the country.

fīliōrum, Objective Genitive

11. You will be moved by the girl's pursuit of wisdom.

puellae, Subjective Genitive
sapientiae, Objective Genitive

12. Why was the slave surpassing the master in fame?

fāmā, Ablative of Respect

Chapter IV: Drill 38-39 (pages 153-159)

A.
1. tibi
2. nōs
3. meī
4. vōbīscum
5. ego
6. vōs
7. mēcum
8. nostrum, nostrī
9. tū
10. tuī
11. mihi
12. vestrum, vestrī
13. nōs
14. nōbīscum
15. vōs
16. vōbīs
17. mē
18. vōs
19. nōbīs
20. tēcum

B.
1. Our slaves will be praised by us.

   nostrī, poss. adj.; **nōbīs**, pers. pron.

2. I desire to give the sword to him/her, but you have it.

   eī, pers. pron.; **eum**, pers. pron.

3. Your friend loves me, but I do not love him.

   tuus, poss. adj.; **mē**, pers. pron.; **eum**, pers. pron.

4. We fear those enemies. For they are able to conquer us.

   eōs, demonstr. adj.; **nōs**, pers. pron.

5. Are you pondering his/her words? Answer me.
eius, pers. pron.; **mihi**, pers. pron.
6. Why is the daughter of my friend walking toward me?
meī, poss. adj.; **mē**, pers. pron.
7. That woman used to have great care for/of me and my men.
eī, demonstr. adj.; **meī**, pers. pron.; **meōrum**, poss. adj.
8. It will move them (f.), (it will) not (move) us.
id, pers. pron.; **eās**, pers. pron.; **nōs**; pers. pron.
9. You have much wisdom. I desire to walk with you.
tibi, pers. pron.; **tē**, pers. pron.
10. Do you see the swords, my Spurius? Our sons will hold those weapons.
mī, poss. adj.; **nostrī**, poss. adj.; **ea**, demonstr. adj.
11. Our men were fighting with/against your (pl.) men.
nostrī, poss. adj.; **vestrīs**, poss. adj.
12. There were many of you in the forum.
vestrum, pers. pron.
13. They used to have a hatred of us.
eīs, pers. pron.; **nostrī**, pers. pron.
14. Your (pl.) queen is ordering us to fight. On account of this war many men will suffer.
vestra, poss. adj.; **nōs**, pers. pron.; **id**, demonstr. adj.
15. Great is my care for/of you.
mea, poss. adj.; **tuī**, pers. pron.
16. They (m.) will go with us to the town.
iī, pers. pron.; **nōbīs**, pers. pron.
17. You ought to praise the wisdom of that man.
tū, pers. pron.; **eius**, demonstr. adj.
18. Were the plans of them (m.) (their plans) seeming good to you (pl.)?
eōrum, pers. pron.; **vōbīs**, pers. pron.
19. I desire your book. Do you (desire) mine?
ego, pers. pron.; **tuum**, poss. adj.; **tū**, pers. pron.; **meum**, poss. adj.
20. Were you giving gifts to those gods? I was giving nothing.
eīs, demonstr. adj.; **ego**, pers. pron.
21. She will go with you to your men.
ea, pers. pron.; **tē**, pers. pron.; **tuōs**, poss. adj.

22. Do you have a hatred of me? I love you.

meī, pers. pron.; **ego**, pers. pron.; **tē**, pers. pron.

23. Is the gold yours?

tuum, poss. adj.

24. Do you desire to go with me to their (m.) country?

mē, pers. pron.; **eōrum**, pers. pron.

25. Our men, my son, are fighting in war on behalf of you and your men.

nostrī, poss. adj.; **mī**, poss. adj.; **tē**, pers. pron.; **tuīs**, poss. adj.

26. Do I seem wretched to you?

ego, pers. pron.; **tibi**, pers. pron.

C. 1. ego, tuōs, mī, eōs, tibi
2. eī/iī, nostrā
3. tū, eius, eam
4. nostrum, eam, eius
5. meī, mēcum, eum
6. Ea, meī, meōrum
7. tibi, tua, nostrā
8. id, vestrā, vestrum
9. Eae, nostrōs, nōs, eārum
10. nostrī, mihi, eī
11. tuōrum, ā mē, meīs
12. eī/iī, nōbīscum, eius
13. eī, vestrī, vestrōs
14. nostrī, tuā, tū, eōs
15. is, mea, ea, eum, ea, mihi
16. ego, eōrum, eī/iī, meum
17. vōs, nōbīscum, mihi
18. nostrī, eō
19. eī, mihi, vestrī
20. vestrum, nōs, nostram

Exercises, Chapter IV (pages 161-176)

A. 1. Come with me to the forum.
Send them (m.) out from the forum.
Lead the friends through the forum.
Go into the forum with that girl.

2. Bring aid to us, O boy.
Romans, send our auxiliary troops to the allies.
Be led into war with us, men.

3. Do you have money, Sextus?
They have much gold.
Many of them are giving gold.
Give me his/her money.

4. Many of you (desire) money, few indeed desire wisdom.

5. Pompeius was famous in (his) opinions, but (he was) not (famous) in (his) deeds.

6. I am ordering you (pl.) with your allies to overcome the unfriendly inhabitants of the province. Why are you making a delay? It is (a) beautiful (thing) indeed to overcome very gloriously.

7. You, at least, are conducting a good life without cares, my Lucius. I am always distressed about money.

8. Come on, speak, my son. Do you hear the not happy words of the master? He is saying nothing (of) good. For the master has a hatred of you.

9. We certainly are taking up arms against the Romans. For it is good to fight on behalf of our homeland. And indeed we are desirous of glory.

10. Clear indeed is the opinion of Lucius Cornelius Sulla. For he feels great anger in his deep mind, but he controls it carefully.

11. The good sailor not without reason was being led by the gods to the homeland Italy.

12. Bring help, Titus, to these wretched women. For you ought to give aid to them.

13. You on account of (your) zeal for war will be sent into the province with the auxiliary troops. And indeed friend (will fight) with/against friend, cause will fight with/against cause.

14. The queen says, "O sailors (for you are friends of the Roman people), go without delay out from the province and set sail onto the deep sea! Be moved by the great danger of war!"

15. The free man will say (his) opinion about the plans of the Gracchi. For free men are able to say (their) opinions without care, and they do not fear the ill-will of the people.

16. Will I be able to lead you and your men, Quintus, toward the opinion of the allies? For in fact the populace was able to be led by me.

17. I shall send (my) small daughter with you, boys, into the forum. For she desires to hear the words of the great poet. Do you also (desire to hear) his words?

18. The poet will sing of the great deeds of the gods, and the men and women will listen. You will gloriously sing of the deeds also of men, our poet; for you will be moved by the gods.

19. The sailors say, “Form a plan, O queen, about the war in the provinces.” The queen answers, "Set aside arms, O strong sailors. For neither in Italy will there be a war nor in the provinces."

20. Now I do not fear the great anger of the gods; for in fact the sky is clear.

21. A great book, a gift of the famous poet, will be sent by us to (our) friend in the small town.

22. Very zealously the farmer (praises) the fields, (very zealously) the sailor praises the sea.

23. The Romans were sending much aid to the allies; for they were surpassing them indeed in arms.

24. Why were many of you being ordered by the queen to set aside (your) weapons without delay?

25. I say nothing about the delay of the slaves, nothing (of) good am I able to say, but they will pay the penalty, and soon they will be distressed.

26. On account of envy I was saying many bad things against that friend. For I was having great anger.

27. Perceive, O girls, the envy of Julia, but praise her wisdom. For nothing bad about the daughter of the queen is able to be said.

28. You were making a delay for the slaves in the field. They were able not even to work.

29. Nothing indeed the masters will say, they will do nothing for the slaves, but to do many and good things for wretched men/people is wisdom.

30. Control, O Livia, (your) strong feelings. For a woman strong in mind ought to be ruled not by anger but by wisdom.

31. You have a hatred of me. I for my part consider you an enemy. Why are we not able to be friends?

32. Not without a plan was that war able to be waged through/by the allies in Italy.

33. To our province the Romans (are sending) weapons, their allies are sending gold.

34. Not even (a) few of the women were able to go to Italy with us.

35. A good queen rules and will rule your (pl.) homeland. For in fact this happy woman is zealously loved by the people.

36. You bear great care for me, my Quintus; I shall do great things for you.

37. The poet is writing a book about the soul; we certainly will write many (books).

38. We shall always love you on account of your concern for/of us. *You* will be presented with many gifts by us.

39. Give, gods in the sky, good advice and aid. For the land is suffering on account of war, and not few men are being placed in danger.

40. Why are you (pl.) not desiring to come to Italy with those women? Come on, O girls, come!

41. Miserable will be the man desirous of gold. Life without the pursuit of good things is nothing. And indeed much zeal ought to be put in the care of the soul.

42. I for my part was ordering the men to set aside (their) weapons. And (there was) not a delay; they were putting them aside.

43. “I owe nothing to the gods,” says the boy.
I say to the boy, "You are making a mistake. For you owe (them) (your) soul (life)."

44. The slaves without delay are coming to these fertile fields. For in fact they will soon work with the farmers.

45. Gods in the sky, do you perceive not even the danger of our queen? Sailors and inhabitants, bring aid to (our) wretched queen.

46. Your slave was saying nothing, but he was pondering life. His zeal was being praised by you.

47. You have a mind strong in respect to wisdom, my Lucius. Few good men surpass you in judgment.

48. The poet is able both to sing and to move men with (his) words.

49. Will you (pl.) lead strong men to war without weapons? Bring (pl.) swords!

50. I certainly neither desire nor am able to conduct life without a plan.

51. The wisdom of the poets ought to rule the soul and the mind. Do you perceive, my Marcus, their wisdom?

52. Those slaves are being summoned out from the field by the farmer, but they are not listening to his words.

53. War now is being waged in the streets of our town by the hostile inhabitants. Lead, Marcus, us and our men out from danger.

54. With many words indeed I shall plead a case in the forum on behalf of (my) friends, and I shall overcome the opinions of many men. Not even the ill-will of the people shall I fear.

55. Why are war and weapons being pondered by you (pl.)? You ought to desire wisdom, O allies. For it is a gift of the gods.

56. Many of us perceive the queen’s hatred of war, but you will lead her toward our opinion. This good thing will be able to be done through/by you.

57. Form a plan about that war, my son. Will auxiliary troops be sent with you to the allies in the provinces? In my opinion, at least, our men will wage war gloriously.

58. Gaius Gracchus always used to both say and do good things on behalf of the people; not even by the dangers of ill-will was he being moved.

59. Land from the deep sea is seen by the happy sailors. Will the gods lead them through the sea toward the land?

60. The sailor will come from the deep sea toward Italy. For he is being led by the good gods.

61. Desirous of glory and gold, the famous sailor zealously is desiring to set sail, but for him I shall make causes of delay. For many are the dangers on the deep sea.

62. The man surpasses the girls in judgment. For they have nothing of judgment.

63. My friend is writing a book about the causes of war. He ought to write many books, in my opinion. For in fact war is always a great evil (thing) both for men and for women.

64. The poet says, "I shall sing of the gods in the sky and through/by myself (I shall sing of) the famous deeds of the gods." He has a beautiful plan.

65. Your friend is doing many bad deeds, Marcus Licinius. Soon you will have to plead his case in front of the Roman people.

66. You indeed on account of the hatred and envy of a few men were not able to lead the allies into war.

67. The poet was singing of the famous deeds of the Romans, and we were listening to him in the forum. Now their fame is sung of through the lands.

68. Our queen, desirous of glory and fame, will soon order your husbands, O women of the island, to take up arms and make war.

69. The great gods hold power both in the sky and on the earth. For in fact the gods surpass men and women in respect to wisdom.

70. Not without punishment will you make arms from gold. Indeed you ought to make them from iron.

71. We certainly were being driven through the deep sea by unfriendly gods, and we were wandering through many lands.

72. Marcus Crassus, a man famous in respect to war, at least, was saying (his) opinion in the forum with zeal, and he was not fearing the anger of the people.

73. You on account of (your) zeal for/of bad things we do not consider a good man. You ought to be desirous of wisdom.

74. The inhabitants are afraid, and they do not desire to go into war. With a few words the queen says, "Not without cause shall I order you and your men to pay the penalty, O evil inhabitants."

B. 1. Fēminae aurī cupidae dē fāmā glōriāque rēgīnae dīcēbant. Eam cum studiō laudābant.

2. Pauca dē eō bellō dīcam: multa auxilia et multa pecūnia ā nōbīs ad Rōmānōs in eā prōvinciā mittī dēbēbunt.

3. Ī, serve bone, in agrum et verba dominī magnā dīligentiā audī. Cōnsiliō eius dūcere.

4. Nē tua verba quidem dē causīs bellī, Marce Antōnī, ā populō audientur?

5. Pulchrum quidem est multōs glōriā bellī superāre.

6. Bonum est verba pulchra scrībere, Horātī. Verba clāra cane nostrōrum.

7. Marcus verbīs clārus causam sociōrum nostrōrum prō populō Rōmānō agit.

8. Cupidus quidem es, puer, magnae glōriae, sed sunt multa perīcula in altō. Cum cūrā vēla dā.

9. Regitur quidem odiō animus meī amīcī. Dī in caelō, eī sapientiam date.

10. Nōbīscum venī, mī fīlī, per viās ad forum et multōs fer gladiōs. Nam per arma malī superārī poterunt.

11. Pōnite odium et invidiam, Rōmānī. Dēbētis, meā quidem sententiā, dē cūrīs populī cōgitāre.

12. Equidem ā sociīs tuīs dūcēbar, mī Tīte, sed paucī meōrum nōbīscum ībant.

13. Age, Marce, dūc in forum virōs imperī cupidōs et eīs dīc cōnsilia Antōniī dē bellō.

14. Malum rēgīnae nostrae est ā populō timērī.

Chapter V: Drill 40-42 (pages 177-188)

A. 1. amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus

	Active	*Translation*	*Passive*	*Translation*
Indicative				
Present	amant	they love	amantur	they are loved
Imperfect	amābant	they were loving	amābantur	they were being loved
Future	amābunt	they will love	amābuntur	they will be loved
Perfect	amāvērunt/ amāvēre	they (have) loved		
Pluperfect	amāverant	they had loved		
Future Perfect	amāverint	they will have loved		
Infinitive				
Present	amāre	to love	amārī	to be loved
Imperative				
Singular	amā	love	amāre	be loved
Plural	amāte	love (pl.)	amāminī	be loved (pl.)

2. videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsus

	Active	*Translation*	*Passive*	*Translation*
Indicative				
Present	vidēs	you see	vidēris/vidēre	you are seen, you seem
Imperfect	vidēbās	you were seeing	vidēbāris/ vidēbāre	you were being seen, you were seeming
Future	vidēbis	you will see	vidēberis/ vidēbere	you will be seen, you will seem
Perfect	vīdistī	you saw, you have seen		
Pluperfect	vīderās	you had seen		
Future Perfect	vīderis	you will have seen		
Infinitive				
Present	vidēre	to see	vidērī	to be seen, to seem
Imperative				
Singular	vidē	see	vidēre	be seen, seem
Plural	vidēte	see (pl.)	vidēminī	be seen, seem (pl.)

3. habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus

	Active	Translation	Passive	Translation
Indicative				
Present	habēmus	we have	habēmur	we are considered
Imperfect	habēbāmus	we used to have	habēbāmur	we used to be considered
Future	habēbimus	we shall have	habēbimur	we shall be considered
Perfect	habuimus	we (have) had		
Pluperfect	habuerāmus	we had had		
Future Perfect	habuerimus	we shall have had		
Infinitive				
Present	habēre	to have	habērī	to be considered
Imperative				
Singular	habē	have	habēre	be considered
Plural	habēte	have (pl.)	habēminī	be considered (pl.)

4. audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus

	Active	Translation	Passive	Translation
Indicative				
Present	audiō	I am listening	audior	I am being heard
Imperfect	audiēbam	I was listening	audiēbar	I was being heard
Future	audiam	I shall listen	audiar	I shall be heard
Perfect	audīvī	I (have) listened		
Pluperfect	audīveram	I had listened		
Future Perfect	audīverō	I shall have listened		
Infinitive				
Present	audīre	to listen	audīrī	to be heard
Imperative				
Singular	audī	listen	audīre	be heard
Plural	audīte	listen (pl.)	audīminī	be heard (pl.)

5. pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus

	Active	*Translation*	*Passive*	*Translation*
Indicative				
Present	pōnitis	you (pl.) put	pōniminī	you (pl.) are being put
Imperfect	pōnēbātis	you (pl.) used to put	pōnēbāminī	you (pl.) were being put
Future	pōnētis	you (pl.) will put	pōnēminī	you (pl.) will be put
Perfect	posuistis	you (pl.) (have) put		
Pluperfect	posuerātis	you (pl.) had put		
Future Perfect	posueritis	you (pl.) will have put		
Infinitive				
Present	pōnere	to put	pōnī	to be put
Imperative				
Singular	pōne	put	pōnere	be put
Plural	pōnite	put (pl.)	pōniminī	be put (pl.)

6. mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus

	Active	*Translation*	*Passive*	*Translation*
Indicative				
Present	mittit	she is sending	mittitur	she is being sent
Imperfect	mittēbat	she was sending	mittēbātur	she was being sent
Future	mittet	she will send	mittētur	she will be sent
Perfect	mīsit	she (has) sent		
Pluperfect	mīserat	she had sent		
Future Perfect	mīserit	she will have sent		
Infinitive				
Present	mittere	to send	mittī	to be sent
Imperative				
Singular	mitte	send	mittere	be sent
Plural	mittite	send (pl.)	mittiminī	be sent (pl.)

7. sum, esse, fuī, futūrus

	Active	*Translation*
Indicative		
Present	est	he is
Imperfect	erat	he used to be
Future	erit	he will be
Perfect	fuit	he was, he has been
Pluperfect	fuerat	he had been
Future Perfect	fuerit	he will have been
Infinitive		
Present	esse	to be

8. capiō, capere, cēpī, captus

	Active	*Translation*	*Passive*	*Translation*
Indicative				
Present	capitis	you (pl.) are taking	capiminī	you (pl.) are being taken
Imperfect	capiēbātis	you (pl.) were taking	capiēbāminī	you (pl.) were being taken
Future	capiētis	you (pl.) will take	capiēminī	you (pl.) will be taken
Perfect	cēpistis	you (pl.) took, you (pl.) have taken		
Pluperfect	cēperātis	you (pl.) had taken		
Future Perfect	cēperitis	you (pl.) will have taken		
Infinitive				
Present	capere	to capture	capī	to be captured
Imperative				
Singular	cape	capture	capere	be captured
Plural	capite	capture (pl.)	capiminī	be captured (pl.)

9. veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum

	Active	*Translation*
Indicative		
Present	veniō	I am coming
Imperfect	veniēbam	I was coming
Future	veniam	I shall come
Perfect	vēnī	I came, I have come
Pluperfect	vēneram	I had come
Future Perfect	vēnerō	I shall have come
Infinitive		
Present	venīre	to come
Imperative		
Singular	venī	come
Plural	venīte	come (pl.)

10. possum, posse, potuī, ——

	Active	*Translation*
Indicative		
Present	possumus	we are able
Imperfect	poterāmus	we were able
Future	poterimus	we shall be able
Perfect	potuimus	we were able, we have been able
Pluperfect	potuerāmus	we had been able
Future Perfect	potuerimus	we shall have been able
Infinitive		
Present	posse	to be able

11. eō, īre, iī/īvī, itum

	Active	Translation
Indicative		
Present	īs	you are going
Imperfect	ībās	you were going
Future	ībis	you will go
Perfect	īstī/īvistī	you went, you have gone
Pluperfect	ierās/īverās	you had gone
Future Perfect	ieris/īveris	you will have gone
Infinitive		
Present	īre	to go
Imperative		
Singular	ī	go
Plural	īte	go (pl.)

12. superō, superāre, superāvī, superātus

	Active	Translation	Passive	Translation
Indicative				
Present	superant	they overcome	superantur	they are being overcome
Imperfect	superābant	they were overcoming	superābantur	they were being overcome
Future	superābunt	they will overcome	superābuntur	they will be overcome
Perfect	superāvērunt/ superāvēre	they overcame, they have overcome		
Pluperfect	superāverant	they had overcome		
Future Perfect	superāverint	they will have overcome		
Infinitive				
Present	superāre	to overcome	superārī	to be overcome
Imperative				
Singular	superā	overcome	superāre	be overcome
Plural	superāte	overcome (pl.)	superāminī	be overcome (pl.)

B.

	Tense	Translation
1.	pluperfect	you had captured
2.	perfect	they came/they have come
3.	future perfect	I shall have moved
4.	future perfect	you (pl.) will have heard
5.	perfect	she showed, she has shown
6.	pluperfect	they had sung
7.	perfect	you sent, you have sent

	Tense	*Translation*
8.	future perfect	we shall have been
9.	future perfect	he will have gone
10.	pluperfect	I had been able
11.	pluperfect	I had put
12.	perfect	we took, we have taken
13.	future perfect	he will have perceived
14.	perfect	I loved, I have loved
15.	perfect	they feared, they have feared
16.	pluperfect	she had come
17.	future perfect	they will have given
18.	pluperfect	we had spoken
19.	perfect	I managed, I have managed
20.	perfect	you (pl.) answered, you(pl.) have answered

C.

	Tense	*Translation*
1	future perfect	labōrāverō
2.	pluperfect	fuerāmus
3.	perfect	vīdit
4.	perfect	errāvistis
5	pluperfect	dūxerant
6.	future perfect	fēcerit
7.	perfect	dōnāvistī
8.	pluperfect	vocāveram
9.	perfect	iimus, īmus, īvimus
10.	future perfect	ēgerint
11.	perfect	potuit
12.	perfect	cecinistis
13.	perfect	audīvit
14.	pluperfect	mīseram
15.	perfect	fuimus
16.	perfect	īstī, īvistī
17.	future perfect	iusserimus
18.	pluperfect	potuerant

	Tense	*Translation*
19.	perfect	vocāvī
20.	perfect	scrīpsit

D. 1. I ordered/have ordered the men to set aside (their) weapons. They set/have set them aside.

2. The Romans, certainly desirous of power, conquered/have conquered and ruled/have ruled many lands.

3. Why did you zealously plead the case of Marcus Antonius? For that man had done many bad things on account of (his) hatred of the Roman people.

4. Our queen soon will have praised in the forum the famous poet on account of (his) beautiful words.

5. To those men gifts of gold were being sent. For they had waged war on behalf of the country.

6. Aeneas was the son of a goddess, and he led the people through the deep sea to Italy.

7. Did you see the slaves in the fields of the farmers? For I had sent them out from the town.

8. This woman has won glory on account of (her) diligence. Soon our poet will have sung of her.

9. Did you write/Have you written a book about the souls of the poets? Give it to me without delay!

10. Concerning that war he has carefully thought, and now he desires to fight.

11. We had conducted a good life on the island, but because of the danger of war we came to the province.

12. Listen, men and women, to the words of the queen: “Your (pl.) sons in the province with the allies have been able/were able to overcome the hostile inhabitants. They ought to be praised by you (pl.) with great enthusiasm."

E. 1. Poēta Rōmānus facta deōrum cecinit, et eum multō aurō dōnāvimus.

2. In bellum, Lūcī, dūcēris moxque et dīligentiam et studium mōnstrāveris.

3. Rēgīna valida fīliōs nostrōs īre ad prōvinciam iusserat, et eōs per multa perīcula in altō dūxit.

4. Ea fēmina puellās laudāvit. Verba enim eārum dē sapientiā deum audīverat.

5. Sēnsistisne populī odium bellī?

6. Fīliōs meōs ad forum vocāvistī, sed errāvistī; nam eōs ab oppidō mīseram.

F.	*Tense*	*Translation*
1.	perfect	we rewarded, we have rewarded
2.	present	we are rewarding
3.	pluperfect	I had managed
4.	future	I shall manage
5.	future	you (pl.) will order
6.	perfect	you (pl.) ordered, you (pl.) have ordered
7.	present	he leads
8.	perfect	he led, he has led
9.	imperfect	we used to be
10.	pluperfect	we had been
11.	present	they are writing
12.	perfect	they wrote, they have written
13.	present	she is answering
14.	perfect	she answered, she has answered
15.	present	you drive
16.	future perfect	you will have driven
17.	future	I shall be able
18.	future perfect	I shall have been able
19.	pluperfect	I had walked
20.	future perferct	they will have walked
21.	present	you are pondering
22.	perfect	you pondered, you have pondered
23.	imperfect	I used to have
24.	perfect	I had, I have had
25.	future	they will perceive
26.	perfect	they perceived, they have perceived
27.	pluperfect	he had gone
28.	imperfect	he was going
29.	present	we say
30.	perfect	we said, we have said
31.	present	he is placing
32.	perfect	he placed, he has placed
33.	present	you are listening

	Tense	*Translation*
34.	perfect	you listened, you have listened
35.	pluperfect	I had made
36.	future perfect	I shall have made
37.	imperfect	you (pl.) were working
38.	future perfect	you (pl.) will have worked
39.	imperfect	they were able
40.	pluperfect	they had been able
41.	present	she is coming
42.	perfect	she came, she has come
43.	imperfect	you used to give
44.	perfect	you gave, you have given
45.	present	they are capturing
46.	future	they will capture
47.	perfect	they captured, they have captured
48.	perfect	he moved, he has moved
49.	present	he moves
50.	imperfect	he was moving
51.	present	she is going
52.	perfect	she went, she has gone
53.	perfect	she went, she has gone
54.	perfect	they were, they have been
55.	perfect	they were, they have been
56.	future perfect	they will have been

G.

	Tense	*Translation*
1.	perfect	dedī
2.	present	pōnis
3.	future perfect	mōnstrāverimus
4.	pluperfect	vīderat
5.	perfect	mōvit
6.	present	veniunt
7.	pluperfect	dūxerātis
8.	imperfect	canēbam

	Tense	*Translation*
9.	future perfect	vēnerint
10.	perfect	mīsistis
11.	imperfect	ībam
12.	perfect	audīvimus
13.	perfect	cecinit
14.	perfect	rēxit
15.	present	amat
16.	pluperfect	mīserās
17.	future	superābimus
18.	future	dēbēbitis
19.	perfect	fuērunt/fuēre
20.	perfect	cōgitāvimus
21.	future perfect	audīverint
22.	present	possum
23.	imperfect	labōrābat
24.	future perfect	dīxerō
25.	perfect	ēgit
26.	perfect	fuistī
27.	pluperfect	scrīpserāmus
28.	perfect	vocāvī
29.	perfect	iērunt/iēre/īvērunt/īvēre
30.	pluperfect	dīxerātis
31.	imperfect	poterāmus
32.	perfect	scrīpsit
33.	imperfect	respondēbat
34.	future perfect	vīderis
35.	future	iubēbunt
36.	imperfect	pugnābam
37.	future perfect	ēgeris
38.	pluperfect	timuerat
39.	future perfect	potuerint
40.	future	erimus

Chapter V: Drill 43 (pages 189-191)

A. 1. ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus

	Active	*Translation*	*Passive*	*Translation*
Indicative				
Present	fert	he is bearing	fertur	it is being endured
Imperfect	ferēbat	he was bearing	ferēbātur	it was being endured
Future	feret	he will bear	ferētur	it will be endured
Perfect	tulit	he bore, he has borne		
Pluperfect	tulerat	he had borne		
Future Perfect	tulerit	he will have borne		
Infinitive				
Present	ferre	to bear	ferrī	to be endured
Imperative				
Singular	fer	bear	ferre	be endured
Plural	ferte	bear (pl.)	feriminī	be endured (pl.)

1. he brings
2. he carried, he has carried
3. to bear, you are borne, be borne
4. bring
5. I shall carry
6. they will have carried
7. you are bearing
8. you will bear
9. they are bringing
10. you bore, you have borne
11. they are being endured
12. you are being carried
13. they were being brought
14. you had carried
15. they endured, they have endured
16. to be borne
17. it is being carried
18. she will bear
19. it will be borne
20. we are being carried

B.
1. Have you brought/Did you bring weapons? We have not even swords.
2. Those dangers of war will not be able to be endured by you.
3. Bring help! For we are enduring many bad things.
4. The good men were being praised by us; for they had brought gifts and money.
5. Marcus bears hatred for/of many men, and he is considered an enemy by many (men).
6. Are you bringing aid to the allies?
7. The inhabitants of the province were happy. For we had brought them both iron and gold.

8. The fame of the poet will be borne into many lands.

C. 1. Tūne librōs puerīs fers? Ego aurum feram.
2 Invidiam populī tulerāmus, et ē forō ībāmus.
3. Mox Rōmānī auxilium tulerint ad sociōs, nunc animā animōque miserōs.
4. Ferte arma, virī. Nam ad bellum ferimur.

Chapter V: Drill 44-46 (pages 193-199)

1. The girl sees herself. The boy sees himself. They see themselves.
   sē, reflexive pron.; **sē**, reflexive pron.; **sē**, reflexive pron.
2. I myself (f.) used to see him in the town.
   ipsa, intensive adj.; **eum**, personal pron.
3. Our son is going to the town with us.
   noster, possessive adj.; **nōbīs**, personal pron.
4. The woman loves her (own) homeland. The women love their (own) homeland.
   suam, reflexive-possessive adj.; **suam**: reflexive-possessive adj.
5. The poet was pondering many things with himself.
   sē, reflexive pron.
6. Why were the women saying many things to their very selves?
   sibi, reflexive pron. **ipsīs**, intensive adj.
7. I love his/her friend. Do you love mine (my [friend])?
   eius, personal pron.; **meum**, possessive adj.
8. Why was the wretched poet having great hatred of himself?
   suī, reflexive pron.
9. He is taking our things. We are taking our own things.
   nostra, possessive adj.; **nostra**, reflexive-possessive adj.
10. I desire to send money to my own men.
    meōs, reflexive-possessive adj.
11. The queen was sending her own son to war. The queen was sending his/her son to war.
    suum, reflexive-possessive adj.; **eius**, personal pron.
12. The girl will give you a gift.
    tibi, personal pron.
13. The girl will give herself a gift. The girl will give him/her a gift.
    sibi, reflexive pron.; **eī**, personal pron.

14. I am going into his/her fields. We are going into their (m.) field.
eius, personal pronoun; **eōrum**, personal pronoun
15. He is going into your fields. You yourself (m.) are going into your own fields.
tuōs, possessive adj.; **ipse**, intensive adj.; **tuōs**, reflexive-possessive adj.
16. He/She is going into his/her own fields. He/She is going into their (m.) fields.
suōs, reflexive-possessive adj.; **eōrum**, personal pronoun
17. We love our own homeland.
nostram, reflexive-possessive adj.
18. The woman was walking with her own men.
suīs, reflexive-possessive adj.
19. I am fighting for me myself, not for you (pl.) and your (pl.) men.
mē, reflexive pron.; **ipsō**, intensive adj.; **vōbīs**, personal pron.; **vestrīs**: possessive adj.
20. Are you keeping the gold for your very self? Are you ordering the gold to be kept by me?
tū, personal pron.; **tibi**, reflexive pron.; **ipsī**: intensive adj.; **mē**, personal pron.

B. 1. ego, ipse, mēcum
2. is, meā
3. eae, et tibi et mihi
4. ipsī, suum
5. eōs, nostrō
6. sua, tua
7. vōs, ipsā
8. nostram
9. nostrum, tēcum
10. tua, meī, mē
11. nōs, eius
12. prō sē, suīs
13. nostrī, tuā
14. sibi ipsī, eam, eīs
15. ipsae, vōbīscum, meōs
16. sē, eum
17. ea, suī, ea, suōs (suum)
18. tū, prō tē ipsō
19. ego, meam, is, suam

20. nōs ipsae, eīs, eīs
21. nostrō, sē, suīs
22. ipsōs, suā
23. eī/iī, tibi, tū, eum
24. vestrā, sibi ipsīs
25. ego, meōs, tū, eius, tibi
26. ea, sē, suum
27. ego ipse, tuō, meō
28. nōs, ipsōs, eī/iī, suīs
29. vestrae, nōbīs ipsīs
30. ipsum, is, prō sē, suīs

Chapter V: Drill 47 (pages 201-202)

A.	1.	miserē	wretchedly
	2.	bene	well
	3.	pulchrē	beautifully
	4	male	badly
	5.	altē	deeply
	6.	multum	much
	7.	līberē	freely
	8.	validē/valdē	strongly

B. 1. The queen summoned her own daughters to herself; for she was loving them much/a lot.
2. A man ought to endure his own fate miserably. I myself have a harsh fate.
3. We ourselves (m.) went away from our own country and we were happily setting sail toward your island.
4. The poet sang his own words well, (he sang) mine (my words) badly.
5. To the gods themselves I was dutifully giving dutiful gifts.
6. You are badly putting yourselves in danger, slaves, but I myself (m.) shall bring aid to you.
7. The wretched inhabitant was not loving himself and his own people. He was erring much.
8. I shall speak freely: I strongly love a harsh girl. She does not love me, but (she loves) her very self.

Chapter V: Drill 48 (pages 203-206)

A.

1. I took an umbrella because it was raining. (causal)
2. After he read the weather report, he looked for his umbrella. (temporal)
3. When she asked me that question, I didn't know what to say. (temporal)
4. I like you although you don't like me. (concessive)
5. So now I shall help you as you used to help me. (comparative)
6. He started driving more carefully after he had an accident. (temporal)
7. If you give me some money, I'll buy lunch. (conditional)
8. As the leaders advise, so the soldiers do. (comparative)
9. Although vegetables are good for us, we don't eat enough of them. (concessive)
10. Since they are blocking the exit, you will have to wait. (causal)
11. He climbed up on a chair when he saw a mouse. (temporal)
12. Because we couldn't hear, we moved closer to the stage. (causal)
13. The child cries if his diaper is wet. (conditional)
14. I'm not going to give him a gift since he didn't give me one. (causal)
15. We shall do as you say. (comparative.)

B.

1. When the poet came into the forum, I was desiring to hear his words. (temporal)
2. Your husband will pay the penalty because he has done many and bad things to the people. (causal)
3. As men do, so boys (do). (comparative)
4. Although the resentment will be great, nevertheless I shall rule the people with zeal. (concessive)
5. I am able to give nothing although you desire my money. (concessive)
6. So we shall take up arms as you will order, O queen. (comparative)
7. We shall answer when you will have said a word. (temporal)
8. Since you were saying bad words, I was not listening. (causal)
9. Although the sailors fear danger, they will set sail. (concessive)
10. After the Romans conquered the inhabitants, they ruled (them)with authority. (temporal)
11. As the ill-will of the people is, so you perceive it. (comparative)
12. Although war was being waged by many men, nevetheless the town was not able to be taken. (concessive)
13. After the boy saw her, he loved (her). (temporal)
14. Although the slaves ought to work very diligently, nevertheless they are doing nothing. (concessive)

15. When we came into the fields, we called the slaves. (temporal)
16. For me there was great danger when my enemies came into the forum. (temporal)
17. I am saying nothing since you are not able to be moved by (my) words. (causal)
18. So the poet will write as the populace will desire. (comparative)

Chapter V: Drill 49 (pages 207-210)

1. present simple
   If you call the girl, she comes without delay.
   venit, present indicative in the apodosis of a present simple conditional sentence
2. past simple
   If we were on the island, we feared the inhabitants.
   erāmus, imperfect indicative in the protasis of a past simple conditional sentence
3. future more vivid with emphatic protasis (FMVE)
   If a few of the sailors set sail, they will come to our land.
   dederint, future perfect indicative in the protasis of a FMVE
4. future more vivid (FMV)
   If you fear the weapons in our town, farmer, go to the fields.
   ī, present imperative (substituted) in the apodosis of a FMV
5. present simple
   I do not praise the women unless they do good things.
   faciunt, present indicative in the apodosis of a present simple conditional sentence
6. FMV
   She will be famous if she writes a great book.
   scrībet, future indicative in the protasis of a FMV
7. FMVE
   If the poet sings beautiful things, he will be praised by the people.
8. FMV
   If sailors are led into the province by the queen, we shall fight very zealously with/against them.
9. past simple
   If we set sail to the island, we were happy.
10. FMVE
    We shall fear much if you, Marcus, do not lead us.
11. present simple
    Sī sunt dī in caelō, facta virōrum fēminārumque vident.
12. FMV (or FMVE)
    Incolae superārī nōn poterunt nisi rēgīna arma mittet (mīserit).
13. FMV (or FMVE)
    Sī malī terram regent (rēxerint), miserī erunt incolae.
14. FMV (or FMVE)
    Rēgīna, sī populum bene reget (rēxerit), ā poētīs laudābitur.

15. FMV (or FMVE)
Auxilia mittēmus sī sociī bellum in prōvinciā gerent (gesserint).

16. FMV (or FMVE)
Īte ad agrōs sine morā, servī, sī vōs labōrāre iubēbō (iusserō).

17. past simple
Semper audiēbam sī cecinit poēta.

18. FMV (or FMVE)
Nisi pugnāre poterō (potuerō), dā fīliō meum gladium.

19. present simple
Sī puellae canunt, puerī audiunt.

20. FMV (or FMVE)
Arma capite, virī, sī īre in bellum iubēbiminī (iussī eritis).

Exercises, Chapter V (pages 211-225)

A. 1. After I completed a book about friendship, I gave it without delay to my friend.
If I do not complete a book about friendship, I shall stir up great resentment for myself.

2. If the sailors perceive dangers, they depart away from the island.
When the sailors perceived dangers, they proceeded out from the town.

3. The inhabitants of the island learned from the queen of the miserable fates of the sailors: wicked men had killed them.

4. The master said, "I am ordering gifts to be carried on behalf of me to our queen."
"As you will say, so I shall do," the slave dutifully said to his master.

5. Have you seen Livia, Julia? Tell me: Where is she now? When will she come to us?

6. Although the son of Antony had not come to the island, (his) daughter was coming.

7. We ourselves (m.) had departed out from the province, and we were happily approaching/ going to our own town.

8. Not gold but iron is hard, as it seems to me, at least.

9. Unless Gnaeus leads his own men well, in the battle itself he will be killed with his own men.

10. I shall lead my own men into war by/through myself without help. The fame of my deeds will go to the sky.

11. Since the Romans had managed great things in the province through/by their very selves, the allies did not send auxiliary troops.

12. Marcus badly hates me, but he has much care for himself. Not a friend but his very self he loves.

13. When I saw you in battle, you were not bearing arms; but if you were able to walk, you were also able to hold a sword.

14. We shall always love you because of your dutiful concern for us, we shall always praise (you).

15. When you sang of the good things of the gods, poets, you did well, when (you sang of) the bad things (of the gods), (you did) badly.

16. When we shall have captured the islands, the loyal inhabitants (we shall overcome) with words, the disloyal (inhabitants) we shall overcome with arms.

17. After the famous woman beautifully sang of the fates of the gods, she received gifts from the inhabitants and went away out from the town.

18. Why was dutiful Aeneas wandering much through the lands? Thus for him the fate had been, as it seems, to come to Italy.

19. There were in Italy famous towns and famous inhabitants.

20. Even to our very selves we seem disloyal if we do not do and say and think loyally.

21. A dutiful man ponders much the fate of (his) country. He will lead the people well, as it seems to us, at least.

22. If you plead well the case of your own men in the forum, my Titus, you will surpass many men in glory.

23. Your friend has conducted himself well on behalf of wretched men. Soon his fame will be borne through the lands. It is good to be praised by many men.

24. If the fate for you is to go out from our land, go away without delay. Come on, move yourself.

25. The women will put themselves in danger if with (their) husbands they go out from their own country. And indeed few women will be able to return.

26. If Marcus killed many men in battle, he won great glory for himself.

27. The happy women (had received) money from the sailors, they had received friendship from the inhabitants.

28. If you were strongly desiring to be a sailor, you were not on the land, but always on the sea.

29. If the queen soon goes out from life and I receive (the) power, I shall rule the people well with (my) sons.

30. The queen will not be able to rule her own people well; for she is not able to rule her very self.

31. As you give, so you receive. Good gifts return to good men. Remember my words, my son.

32. I remember, friend, when you were seeming to me to be erring much and badly, but now you are thinking clearly.

33. “Did the wretched slave go out from life by the sword?”
“It is as the master himself said: he killed his own son, then his very self. So it was in the fates.”

34. “Great, as I have heard, is the battle in the fields and harsh,” said Titus.
“Always in battle the fates of men are bad,” Spurius answered.
I myself said, “Why do men fight with/against men? When shall we have to proceed into war? When shall we return?"

35. As men are able to bear arms, so (are) boys. Boys fight because men fight. Women indeed both fear and hate war and weapons.

36. "When you will go away from our town, my sons, bring with you my books about friendship." So said Gaius, but they were not remembering his words. Without those books they went away.

37. "I am dutiful Aeneas, and I am being carried by the fates," he said to the queen. "Out from my homeland to your land I have come through the deep sea. I strongly desire to be received by you without enmity/hostilities."

38. Your son did not return out from war. For in fact he had given (his) life for the homeland. Now he ought to be considered loyal not by few men. Always we shall remember his deeds.

39. Although I myself was desiring to seem dutiful, nevertheless I was wickedly doing many things against the gods. And indeed if the gods see our dutiful deeds, also (our) wicked (deeds) they see.

40. I was pondering with myself the girl hard in mind: although I love her a lot, I hate (her). I hate and I love.

41. Why did the farmers of this land come into the friendship of the Roman people after we took the fields of those very men by war and weapons?

42. The sailors ought to depart from the island since they are doing by themselves nothing for the inhabitants, they are giving them nothing, they are receiving nothing from them.

43. If the good man accomplishes good things, he will be loved by the gods. Soon he will be received in the sky.

44. The queen came into the forum and spoke to the people with a few words: "Learn from me, O inhabitants, of the harsh battle and the harsh fates of your men."

45. After Tiberius Sempronius beautifully spoke dutiful words, the farmers departed away from the forum and happily returned to their own fields.

46. Although I was strongly desiring to rule the lands with the queen, nevertheless I was not able (to do so). For the son of the queen was hating me and ordered (me) to be driven out from the land. I went away to a beautiful island, and I shall not return to that land.

47. You are working a lot, O Romulus, since you desire to accomplish many things. A good and beautiful life—unless the gods hate you—very gloriously you will complete.

48. We have hostilities with the evil inhabitants of the province since they wrongfully killed our men without reason. We shall always hate them.

49. When I heard in the forum the words of the dutiful poet, I was pondering with myself the causes of war. Always, in my opinion, at least, men will kill men.

50. Although our son completed many things well in (his) life, nevertheless he went away wretchedly to his fates.

51. The girl will consider the boy a friend if she is able to be led out from danger by him. And indeed they will have a great friendship.

52. Lucius bears badly the ill-will and enmity of the people. For in fact he has heard many harsh things in the forum about his very self. Why does the populace hate him so?

53. The Romans were going away from Italy on account of (their) zeal for war. They were carrying with themselves nothing if not/unless (they were carrying) arms and spirit.

54. Friendship is given and received by itself and on account of itself.

55. "Have my dutiful sons gone away to battle?"
"So it is as I say. For Pompey himself led them with himself."
"If they return to me, they will be received happily."

56. Horace used to be loved by me from many and great causes. And indeed great with him to me was the friendship, loyal were (his) deeds, beautiful (were) (his) words.

57. With reason I approached/went toward that battle. For those wicked men had ordered my wife and my sons to be killed.

58. It is beautiful to remember friends. You will always, friend, be in (my) mind for me. If you are called into danger, I myself shall go with you.

59. With wicked words Catiline overcame the minds of the inhabitants, with wicked deeds he took their gold. With reason we hate and shall hate that wicked man.

60. Although the allies had approached the battle very zealously, (a) few of them nevertheless departed when they themselves saw the harsh things of war.

61. Go, wretched men, with (your) wives and depart out from the country if you fear for yourselves and your own men.

62. It is a bad thing to hate good things, it is good (to hate) nothing. Tell me, Marc Antony: do you hate me? Do you have a cause for hostility? In my opinion, at least, you yourself have a hatred of yourself.

63. In this way in the forum Marcus (spoke) after he learned of the bad fate of Gaius: "I have a friendship with Gaius, and I myself shall plead his case. For I am strongly moved, O Romans, by your resentment and hatred of a good man."

64. The farmer was conducting (his) life in the fields without danger. For he was hating war and weapons a lot.

65. After the Romans killed many of our men, I proceeded to the allies and received aid from them.

66. Remember to come, my daughters, if you are called. Come if I call you. Did you hear/Have you heard me?

67. Since you are not able, O men, to return to wisdom by yourselves, be led by the words and opinions of good men.

B. 1. Quoniam verba poētae ipsīus audīrī dēbent, ad forum sine morā redībimus. Memineritne facta eius virī magnī canere?

2. Nisi sociī Catilīnae ipsī cēdent (cesserint), animōs piōs laudābimus, et amīcitiam populī Rōmānī capient.

3. Sī nautae impiī, agrōrum nostrōrum cupidī, ad patriam accēdent (accesserint), cum causā eōs interficiēmus.

4. Per tē ipsum causam cum studiō age, amīce, nisi inimīcitiā impiōrum in oppidō tuō superārī optābis (optāveris).

5. Antōnium valdē ōderam et timēbam. Sī ad oppidum nostrum vēnit, ipse discessī.

6. Nisi amīcōs virī bene amās, virum ipsum amāre nōn potes. Pulchrum quidem est amīcitia.

7. In proelium sine armīs, fīlī, mittēris nisi tua gerēs (gesseris). Ut rēgīna ipsa iubet, sīc semper agimus (facimus).

8. Ubi vir pius vītam bonam perfēcerit, anima eius ad caelum ferētur. Sīc animae bonōrum ad deōs redeunt.

9. Fēminae, postquam altō dē caelō dūra fāta deōrum accēpērunt, miserē labōrāvērunt.

10. Quamquam poēta facta deum clārē et pulchrē cecinit, paucī tamen verba eius audīvēre.

11. Rēgīna, etsī animā erat pulchra, fātum tamen malum habēbat. Nam fīlius, imperī sibi cupidus, eam ē terrā ēgit.

12. Sī propter odium tuōs bellum gerere iubēbis (iusseris), multī nostrum id male ferent. Mala quidem est īra per sē.

Chapter VI: Drill 50-52 (pages 227-236)

A.

	Tense	Translation
1.	pluperfect	he had been led
2.	future perfect	you (pl. m.) will have been captured
3.	perfect	we (f.) were ordered/we (f.) have been ordered
4.	future perfect	I (f.) shall have been put
5.	perfect	they (n.) were said/they (n.) have been said
6.	perfect	you (pl. f.) were received/you (pl.f.) have been received
7.	pluperfect	I (m.) had been moved
8.	perfect	it was managed/it has been managed
9.	perfect	you (f.) were captured/you (f.) have been captured
10.	future perfect	they (n.) will have been heard
11.	perfect	they (f.) were driven/they (f.) have been driven
12.	perfect	I (f.) was placed/I (f.) have been placed
13.	future perfect	you (f.) will have been perceived
14.	pluperfect	we (m.) had been called
15.	pluperfect	they (m.) had been held
16.	future perfect	he will have been loved
17.	future perfect	we (m.) shall have been praised
18.	perfect	it was written/it has been written
19.	pluperfect	it had been sent
20.	perfect	they (m.) were killed/they(m.) have been killed

B.

	Tense	Translation
1.	perfect	vīsus sum
2.	pluperfect	missus erat
3.	future perfect	rēctae erimus
4.	perfect	sunt mōta
5.	perfect	ductus es
6.	future perfect	erit vocāta
7.	perfect	captī estis
8.	perfect	scrīptum est
9.	pluperfect	iussa erās

	Tense	*Translation*
10.	pluperfect	erant interfectī
11.	future perfect	audīta erō
12.	perfect	sēnsae estis
13.	pluperfect	āctae erant
14.	perfect	est superātus
15.	future perfect	habitus eris
16.	perfect	vīsa sunt
17.	perfect	perfectum est
18.	pluperfect	erant amātae
19.	pluperfect	erant lāta
20.	future perfect	acceptī eritis

C. 1. optō, optāre, optāvī, optātus

	Active	*Translation*	*Passive*	*Translation*
Indicative				
Present	optās	you are desiring	optāris, optāre	you are being desired
Imperfect	optābās	you were desiring	optābāris, optābāre	you were being desired
Future	optābis	you will desire	optāberis, optābere	you will be desired
Perfect	optāvistī	you (have) desired	optāta es	you (f.) were (have been) desired
Pluperfect	optāverās	you had desired	optāta erās	you (f.) had been desired
Future Perfect	optāveris	you will have desired	optāta eris	you (f.) will have been desired
Infinitive				
Present	optāre	to desire	optārī	to be desired
Imperative				
Singular	optā	desire	optāre	be desired
Plural	optāte	desire (pl.)	optāminī	be desired (pl.)

2. teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus

	Active	*Translation*	*Passive*	*Translation*
Indicative				
Present	tenēmus	we are holding	tenēmur	we are being held
Imperfect	tenēbāmus	we used to hold	tenēbāmur	we used to be held
Future	tenēbimus	we shall hold	tenēbimur	we shall be held
Perfect	tenuimus	we (have) held	tentī sumus	we (m.) were (have been) held
Pluperfect	tenuerāmus	we had held	tentī erāmus	we (m.) had been held
Future Perfect	tenuerimus	we shall have held	tentī erimus	we (m.) shall have been held
Infinitive				
Present	tenēre	to hold	tenērī	to be held
Imperative				
Singular	tenē	hold	tenēre	be held
Plural	tenēte	hold (pl.)	tenēminī	be held (pl.)

3. mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus

	Active	*Translation*	*Passive*	*Translation*
Indicative				
Present	mittunt	they send	mittuntur	they are sent
Imperfect	mittēbant	they were sending	mittēbantur	they were being sent
Future	mittent	they will send	mittentur	they will be sent
Perfect	mīsērunt/ mīsēre	they (have) sent	missa sunt	they (n.) were (have been) sent
Pluperfect	mīserant	they had sent	missa erant	they (n.) had been sent
Future Perfect	mīserint	they will have sent	missa erunt	they (n.) will have been sent
Infinitive				
Present	mittere	to send	mittī	to be sent
Imperative				
Singular	mitte	send	mittere	be sent
Plural	mittite	send (pl.)	mittiminī	be sent (pl.)

4. pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus

	Active	*Translation*	*Passive*	*Translation*
Indicative				
Present	pōnō	I place	pōnor	I am placed
Imperfect	pōnēbam	I was placing	pōnēbar	I was being placed
Future	pōnam	I shall place	pōnar	I shall be placed
Perfect	posuī	I (have) placed	posita sum	I (f.) was (have been) placed
Pluperfect	posueram	I had placed	posita eram	I (f.) had been placed
Future Perfect	posuerō	I shall have placed	posita erō	I (f.) shall have been placed
Infinitive				
Present	pōnere	to place	pōnī	to be placed
Imperative				
Singular	pōne	place	pōnere	be placed
Plural	pōnite	place (pl.)	pōniminī	be placed (pl.)

5. accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptus

	Active	*Translation*	*Passive*	*Translation*
Indicative				
Present	accipitis	you (pl.) receive	accipiminī	you (pl.) are received
Imperfect	accipiēbātis	you (pl.) were receiving	accipiēbāminī	you (pl.) were being received
Future	accipiētis	you (pl.) will receive	accipiēminī	you (pl.) will be received
Perfect	accēpistis	you (pl.) (have) received	acceptī estis	you (m.pl.) were (have been) received
Pluperfect	accēperātis	you (pl.) had received	acceptī erātis	you (m.pl.) had been received
Future Perfect	accēperitis	you (pl.) will have received	acceptī eritis	you (m.pl.) will have been received
Infinitive				
Present	accipere	to receive	accipī	to be received
Imperative				
Singular	accipe	receive	accipere	be received
Plural	accipite	receive (pl.)	accipiminī	be received (pl.)

6. sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus

	Active	*Translation*	*Passive*	*Translation*
Indicative				
Present	sentit	it is perceiving	sentītur	it is being perceived
Imperfect	sentiēbat	it was perceiving	sentiēbātur	it was being perceived
Future	sentiet	it will perceive	sentiētur	it will be perceived
Perfect	sēnsit	it (has) perceived	sēnsum est	it was (has been) perceived
Pluperfect	sēnserat	it had perceived	sēnsum erat	it had been perceived
Future Perfect	sēnserit	it will have perceived	sēnsum erit	it will have been perceived
Infinitive				
Present	sentīre	to perceive	sentīrī	to be perceived
Imperative				
Singular	sentī	perceive	sentīre	be perceived
Plural	sentīte	perceive (pl.)	sentīminī	be perceived (pl.)

D. 1. If Marcus is ordered to plead the case on behalf of the miserable men, he will speak well and beautifully.

2. Bad things were/have been said by you, and nothing (of) good was/has been accomplished for the people.

3. Since our allies had seemed strong by themselves, we did not bring arms and aid into the province.

4. If danger was not perceived, neither men nor women feared.

5. The poet was writing many words about the country since he had been ordered by the queen.

6. You have been brought to the island, O sailor, and now you are being ruled by a harsh queen.

7. A harsh thing was/has been ordered by the man, O women; for you were/have been sent out from Italy with the girls.

8. If you are called into the fields by the master, slaves, go without delay.

9 Although Marcus was praised by many men, we were hating him.

10. Our queen, in my opinion, at least, had been moved by envy and hatred when she sent you (pl.) and your men/people out from the land.

E.

	Tense	*Translation*
1.	perfect	I (m.) was/have been ordered
2.	imperfect	I was being ordered
3.	pluperfect	they (n.) had been perceived
4.	present	they are being perceived
5.	future perfect	it will have been written

	Tense	*Translation*
6.	future	it will be written
7.	perfect	you (f.pl.) were/have been accepted
8.	pluperfect	you (m.pl.) had been accepted
9.	perfect	he was/has been moved
10.	present	he is moved
11.	perfect	they (n.) were/have been managed
12.	imperfect	they were being managed
13.	perfect	we (m.) were/have been driven
14.	future	we shall be driven
15.	pluperfect	it had been said
16.	future	it will be said
17.	future perfect	we (f.) shall have been loved
18.	present	we are loved
19.	perfect	they (n.) were/have been given
20.	imperfect	they were being given
21.	future perfect	I (f.) shall have been led
22.	future	I shall be led
23.	future perfect	they (m.) will have been killed
24.	present	they are being killed
25.	perfect	you (m.) were/have been called
26.	present	you are being called
27.	perfect	it was/has been endured
28.	future	it will be endured
29.	perfect	we (f.) were/have been sent
30.	future	we shall be sent
31.	pluperfect	they (n.) had been shown
32.	present	they are being shown
33.	future perfect	I (m.) shall have been seen, I (m.) shall have seemed
34.	future	I shall be seen, I shall seem
35.	perfect	it was/has been owed
36.	present	it is owed
37.	perfect	they (n.) were/have been taken
38.	future	they will be taken

	Tense	*Translation*
39.	pluperfect	we (m.) had been heard
40.	present	we are being heard

F.

	Translation	*Voice Change*
1.	they had killed	interfectī, -ae, -a erant
2.	you were being driven	agēbās
3.	we say	dīcimur
4.	you (pl.) will be sent	mittētis
5.	I (f.) was/have been called	vocāvī
6.	you (pl.) had borne	lātī, -ae, -a erātis
7.	I shall perceive	sentiar
8.	you listen	audīris/audīre
9.	I shall have led	ductus, -a, -um erō
10.	you (f.pl.) were/have been captured	cēpistis
11.	you will overcome	superāberis/superābere
12.	we (m.) shall have been held	tenuerimus
13.	I (have) placed	positus, -a, -um sum
14.	she is receiving	accipitur
15.	they are being led	dūcunt
16.	you (pl.) used to desire	optābāminī
17.	you (have) had	habitus, -a, -um es
18.	I (f.) had been moved	mōveram
19.	he will have conquered	superātus, -a, -um erit
20.	I shall be loved	amābō

G. 1. perficiēbat
2. ductī estis
3. fuerāmus
4. ambulāveris
5. iussae erant
6. dictum est
7. audior
8. mittētis
9. optāta erit

10. potuimus
11. tenēberis/tenēbere
12. sunt interfecta
13. laudātī erātis
14. capimur
15. respōnsum erat
16. vīsae sunt
17. pōnēbās
18. erō
19. geritur
20. agēbāmur

Chapter VI: Drill 53-54 (pages 237-240)

A. 1. Did you hear/Have you heard the words of the poet? I (have) praised his deeds.
2. Things having been pondered well we shall remember.
3. When there will be a coming into the forum, I shall speak to the people with enthusiasm.
4. Beautiful words were/have been written by the poet, and many gifts were/have been given to him.
5. The war was not able to be completed if there was a going out from battle.
6 Did you bear/Have you borne the sword given to you by the man?
7. Having been called by friends, we are coming into the street.
8. Now, O men, I shall speak about the things done well; for war has been gloriously waged by your very selves.
9. If there was a coming into the town, great and famous men were seen and were heard.
10. Were you happy, O woman, having been praised by the inhabitants?
11. You ought to send aid to the wives of the captured men.
12. There is a going out from the fields; for there has been much working.
13. On account of (his) words beautifully written the good poet was/has been rewarded with gold and was/has been praised.
14. The Romans were desiring to rule the island having been ruled by the wicked queen.
15. Why was there a returning into the fields? Thus it had been ordered by the master.

B. 1. Nihil bonī ā servīs captīs perfectum erat. Propter eam causam ā dominō nōn sunt laudātī.
2. Ē patriā itum erat et ad terram līberōrum accessum est.
3. Verbum male dictum audīvī, puer. Bona dē amātīs dīcere dēbēs.
4. Per multās terrās multum errābitur quoniam ē patriā missī sumus.

5. Multī nostrum in eō bellō sunt captī et interfectī. Nunc sine morā in terram inimīcam abībitur.

Chapter VI: Drill 55 (pages 241-246)

B.

	Singular	Plural
Nom.	rēx bonus	rēgēs bonī
Gen.	rēgis bonī	rēgum bonōrum
Dat.	rēgī bonō	rēgibus bonīs
Acc.	rēgem bonum	rēgēs bonōs
Abl.	rēge bonō	rēgibus bonīs
Voc.	rēx bone	rēgēs bonī
Nom.	carmen pulchrum	carmina pulchra
Gen.	carminis pulchrī	carminum pulchrōrum
Dat.	carminī pulchrō	carminibus pulchrīs
Acc.	carmen pulchrum	carmina pulchra
Abl.	carmine pulchrō	carminibus pulchrīs
Voc.	carmen pulchrum	carmina pulchra
Nom.	māter misera	mātrēs miserae
Gen.	mātris miserae	mātrum miserārum
Dat.	mātrī miserae	mātribus miserīs
Acc.	mātrem miseram	mātrēs miserās
Abl.	mātre miserā	mātribus miserīs
Voc.	māter misera	mātrēs miserae

D.

	Singular	Plural
Nom.	cīvis Rōmānus	cīvēs Rōmānī
Gen.	cīvis Rōmānī	cīvium Rōmānōrum
Dat.	cīvī Rōmānō	cīvibus Rōmānīs
Acc.	cīvem Rōmānum	cīvēs/cīvīs Rōmānōs
Abl.	cīve Rōmānō	cīvibus Rōmānīs
Voc.	cīvis Rōmāne	cīvēs Rōmānī

	Singular	*Plural*
Nom.	mare nostrum	maria nostra
Gen.	maris nostrī	marum nostrōrum
Dat.	marī nostrō	maribus nostrīs
Acc.	mare nostrum	maria nostra
Abl.	marī nostrō	maribus nostrīs
Voc.	mare nostrum	maria nostra

Nom.	magna vīs	magnae vīrēs
Gen.	———	magnārum vīrium
Dat.	———	magnīs vīribus
Acc.	magnam vim	magnās vīrēs/vīrīs
Abl.	magnā vī	magnīs vīribus
Voc.	magna vīs	magnae vīrēs

Nom.		alta moenia
Gen.		altōrum moenium
Dat.		altīs moenibus
Acc.		alta moenia
Abl.		altīs moenibus
Voc.		alta moenia

E.

1. timōre
2. mentium
3. animālia
4. hoste
5. hominis
6. patrēs
7. urbēs/urbīs
8. carmen
9. rēgī
10. vīribus
11. iūra
12. Carthāginis
13. corporum
14. mare
15. vī
16. amor
17. mātrum
18. corporis
19. marī
20. mīlitibus
21. vim
22. servitūte

F.

	Case and Number	*Translation*
1.	dative singular	for the mother
2.	genitive plural	of minds
3.	nominative singular accusative singular vocative singular	body (subj.) body (d.o.) body (d.a.)
4.	dative plural ablative plural	for the citizens from the citizens
5.	ablative singular	by love
6.	dative singular ablative singular	for the animal with an animal
7.	accusative plural	cities (d.o.)
8.	nominative plural accusative plural vocative plural	human beings (subj.) human beings (d.o.) human beings (d.a.)
9.	accusative singular	king (d.o.)
10.	genitive singular	of the sea
11.	genitive plural	of bodies
12	nominative plural accusative plural vocative plural	enemies (subj.) enemies (d.o.) enemies (d.a.)
13.	nominative singular accusative singular vocative singular	the sea (subj.) the sea (d.o.) sea (d.a.)
14.	ablative singular	from slavery

G.

1. urbis nostrae
2. ad moenia
3. dē servitūte
4. animālium
5. per vim
6. corpus
7. hominī
8. iūre
9. dē timōre
10. in mente
11. in mare
12. in marī
13. patris
14. carminibus
15. mīlitibus
16. rēx
17. iūra
18. tuī amōris
19. vīribus
20. hostium
21. ā mātre
22. timōrēs nostrōs

H.

1. on account of fear
2. into the sea
3. high city walls (subj.,d.o., [d.a.])
4. by men
5. in your city
6. on behalf of mothers
7. beautiful countryside (subj., d.o., [d.a.])
8. with my father
9. harsh man (d.a.)
10. on account of love
11. out from the city
12. down from the city walls
13. without a mother
14. through the countryside
15. on the sea
16. about slavery
17. with great force
18. with, [for] great strength
19. many animals (subj., d.o.)
20. for good citizens/from good citizens

I.

1. māter, mātris *f.*
2. Carthāgō, Carthāginis *f.*
3. mīles, mīlitis *m.*
4. corpus, corporis *n.*
5. servitūs, servitūtis *f.*
6. moenia, moenium *n. pl.*
7. iūs, iūris *n.*
8. carmen, carminis *n.*
9. rūs, rūris *n.*
10. homō, hominis *m.*
11. urbs, urbis, -ium *f. pl.*
12. cīvis, cīvis, -ium *m.* or *f.*
13. Athēnae, Athēnārum *f. pl.*
14. timor, timōris *m.*
15. animal, animālis, -ium *n.*
16. vīs, ——, -ium *f.*
17. domus, domī *f.*
18. mare, maris, *-ium *n.*
19. amor, amōris *m.*
20. rēx, rēgis *m.*
21. mēns, mentis, -ium *f.*
22. pater, patris *m.*

Chapter VI: Drill 56 (pages 247-248)

A.

	Singular	*Plural*
Nom.	vir fortis	virī fortēs
Gen.	virī fortis	virōrum fortium
Dat.	virō fortī	virīs fortibus
Acc.	virum fortem	virōs fortēs/fortīs
Abl.	virō fortī	virīs fortibus
Voc.	vir fortis	virī fortēs
Nom.	omnis fēmina	omnēs fēminae
Gen.	omnis fēminae	omnium fēminārum
Dat.	omnī fēminae	omnibus fēminīs
Acc.	omnem fēminam	omnēs/omnīs fēminās
Abl.	omnī fēminā	omnibus fēminīs
Voc.	omnis fēmina	omnēs fēminae
Nom.	ferrum ācre	ferra ācria
Gen.	ferrī ācris	ferrōrum ācrium
Dat.	ferrō ācrī	ferrīs ācribus
Acc.	ferrum ācre	ferra ācria
Abl.	ferrō ācrī	ferrīs ācribus
Voc.	ferrum ācre	ferra ācria
Nom.	pater īnfēlīx	patrēs īnfēlīcēs
Gen.	patris īnfēlīcis	patrum īnfēlīcium
Dat.	patrī īnfēlīcī	patribus īnfēlīcibus
Acc.	patrem īnfēlīcem	patrēs īnfēlīcēs/īnfēlīcīs
Abl.	patre īnfēlīcī	patribus īnfēlīcibus
Voc.	pater īnfēlīx	patrēs īnfēlīcēs

	Singular	*Plural*
Nom.	ingēns mare	ingentia maria
Gen.	ingentis maris	ingentium marum
Dat.	ingentī marī	ingentibus maribus
Acc.	ingēns mare	ingentia maria
Abl.	ingentī marī	ingentibus maribus
Voc.	ingēns mare	ingentia maria

Nom.	via facilis	viae facilēs
Gen.	viae facilis	viārum facilium
Dat.	viae facilī	viīs facilibus
Acc.	viam facilem	viās facilēs/facilīs
Abl.	viā facilī	viīs facilibus
Voc.	via facilis	viae facilēs

B.		*Adjective*	*Translation*
	1.	facilem	an easy life (d.o.)
	2.	omnibus	for all friends; from all friends
	3.	īnfēlīcēs īnfēlīcēs/īnfēlīcīs	unfortunate mothers (subj., d.a.) unfortunate mothers (d.o.)
	4.	fortī	for a strong mind; with a strong mind
	5.	ācrēs/ācrīs	fierce cares (d.o.)
	6.	ingentis	of huge danger
	7.	fēlīcium	of fortunate human beings
	8.	difficilī	for the difficult war; from the difficult war
	9.	omne	every right (subj., d.o., [d.a.])
	10.	fortī	with a strong mind

C. 1. with huge glory

2. of strong allies

3. into a fierce battle

4. in every city

5. all harsh and difficult things (subj., d.o., [d.a.])

6. for huge swords; with huge swords

7. for the strong goddess

8. O lucky mother (d.a.)
9. without every danger
10. concerning the unfortunate slaves
11. with strong arms
12. all good men and good women (d.o.)

Chapter VI: Drill 56-57 (pages 249-251)

A.
1. ācriter, fiercely
2. fēlīciter, fortunately
3. omnīnō, entirely
4. facile, easily
5. fortiter, bravely
6. difficiliter *or* difficulter, with difficulty
7. īnfēlīciter, unfortunately

B.
1. There had been fierce fighting and fortunate (fighting): our soldiers conquered the enemies very forcefully.
2. Nothing at all will be accomplished without the aid of the allies and (without) the friendship (of the allies). Not with difficulty shall we drive the king out from the province if the allies send auxiliary troops.
3. When the enemies came to the city walls, they made huge fear for all people.
4. You understood well with (your) keen mind my words about the evil things (evils) of slavery. And indeed you answered me bravely.
5. Listen to me myself, senators. Fierce was the strength of those brave men. Because of (their) huge love of glory the enemies were easily able to be driven out from the city.
6. It is an easy thing to write poems, but few men are about to make a dutiful poem about the gods.
7. All citizens used to hold the rights of the city and the forum, and justly they were holding them.
8. Unlucky girl! For you were given into slavery without (your) mother.

C.
1. Quamquam sunt ingentia in marī animālia, nautae fortēs semper sine timōre vēla dant.
2. Facilia tibi erunt omnia si fortiter labōrābis (labōrāveris). Vir fēlīx fortisque mihi (esse) vidēris.
3. Postquam ācriter in forō dīxī, invidiam et īram cīvium fortiter ferēbam. Difficile enim est ab omnī populō laudārī.
4. Vītam omnīnō miseram agēs nisi tē piē prō dīs hominibusque gerēs (gesseris).

Chapter VI: Drill 58-62 (pages 253-256)

1. I shall go to Rome with the women.

   Rōmam, Accusative of Place To Which

2. Both in the country and in the city the slaves are suffering.

   rūrī, Locative case
   urbe, Ablative of Place Where

3. I lack money, but I have weapons.

   pecūniā, Ablative of Separation

4. Depart, boy, from home. And indeed you ought to be sent out from the city.

   domō, Ablative of Place From Which
   urbe, Ablative of Place From Which

5. The gods are sending many evil things to the inhabitants because of (their) ill-will.

   invidiā, Ablative of Cause

6. If you come to the island, you will not be without friends.

   īnsulam, Accusative of Place To Which
   amīcīs, Ablative of Separation

7. There is a coming to Athens.

   Athēnās, Accusative of Place to Which
   venītur, Impersonal Passive

8. The words of the poet (have) freed the people from cares.

   cūrīs, Ablative of Separation

9. Although you sent the girls to the country, nevertheless they were in Rome.

   rūs, Accusative of Place To Which
   Rōmae, Locative case

10. The boys are being praised by the woman because of (their) enthusiasm.

    studiō, Ablative of Cause

11. Come (pl.) home without delay! You (pl.) will be happy at home.

    domum, Accusative of Place To Which
    domī, Locative case

12. Why is there a going to war? And indeed why will there be fighting?

    ītur, Impersonal Passive
    pugnābitur, Impersonal Passive

13. There was/has been a departing from Athens. There was/has been a returning to Rome.

    Athēnīs, Ablative of Place From Which
    discessum est, Impersonal Passive
    Rōmam, Accusative of Place To Which
    reditum est, Impersonal Passive

14. If we go away from Rome, we shall be without our men.

    Rōmā, Ablative of Place From Which
    nostrīs, Ablative of Separation

Exercises, Chapter VI (pages 257-273)

A. 1. We are happy in the city; in the countryside we have many anxieties. We desire to return indeed to the city.

2. Titus, a man fierce and brave, said nothing ever at all without reason, did nothing (ever at all without reason). So he used to seem to all men.

3. You erred much, unlucky boy. For you did not listen to the words of your (own) mother.

4. Many men have come to Rome, senators, but few men have been able to hold power. For it is difficult to hold power if you are not able to win (take) it.

5. Aid was never brought by our soldiers to the provinces. Why, my father, did we send not even weapons?

6. All the animals captured by the slaves have been driven through the streets into the forum. In my opinion, however, they ought to be led into their own countryside.

7. Not the gods have made life difficult. We because of (our) hatred of easy things have made all things difficult for ourselves.

8. I am writing a few things to you about you: when you are in the city, you zealously praise the countryside; when (you are) in the countryside, (you zealously praise) the city.

9. Your book both has been read and is being read by me with diligence. The force, however, of the words is not at all able to be understood.

10. After I returned from the war, a happy house received me. For by means of a huge battle I had overcome the enemy. Now I shall go to the countryside and I shall always live in the countryside.

11. The father of gods and the king of men rules both the sky and the lands with power.

12. If war is waged very forcefully, sailors and soldiers will go away from the island, and on land and sea there will be strong fighting.

13. Many slaves had been captured in war. The king ordered them all to be led through the cities by the soldiers.

14. The lucky ones of the slaves the master kept at home, the unlucky ones he ordered to work in the fields.

15. Now there is a wandering through the countryside since the slaves have taken up arms against the farmers themselves.

16. A slave has endured and done many things. A free man has never been able to endure slavery.

17. Fiercely the queen spoke: “Are you yourself departing out from my homeland? Does neither our love nor (our) friendship hold you?"

18. Concerning the fate of the king having been killed it is easy to speak with a few words: his body is being sent (to) home since it now is without life.

19. All human beings in Italy used to hold the rights of citizens, and not ever were they desiring to wage war with/against the Romans.

20. Gifts for the soldiers were sent by the king since well and fortunately fighting had been done in front of the walls.

21. I have a big and beautiful house. You are able to live with me if you yourself have that intention.

22. If the strong soldiers approach the city walls of the enemies with arms, they because of fear will miserably depart.

23. After the words of the queen were heard by the citizens, there was a going into her opinion.

24. Come on, my man, tell me your intention. I shall answer if I am able.

25. The laws of the Fates are hard: the loyal soldier has been killed, the wicked (one) lives. So it always will be.

26. The wretched soldier, moved by a huge fear of war, departed away from (his) mind and away from his very self. Now, however, he has luckily returned to himself.

27. The soldiers were ordered to go to Carthage, to capture the unfortunate queen, to bring (her) to Rome. All the ordered things were accomplished with difficulty.

28. Since the poets used to sing of the miserable loves of men, Cupid seemed to many men (to be) a harsh god.

29. Desirous indeed of glory, I shall lead my own men up to the walls of the city. I shall order them to fight well with/against the enemies.

30. The battle was harsh: the unfortunate father surpassed (his) son in life. After he went away out from life, wretched without their son were the father and mother.

31. Nothing is able to be good for me if there is bad living at home, and to few men has it been granted to live without cares. To me, however, there is a mind free from fear.

32. Many men used to go to Athens because of (their) zeal for wisdom. For they were desiring to ponder great and difficult things. When they returned to Rome, they were understanding many things indeed.

33. The poet sang of the walls of high Rome and the deeds of brave men after he completed a beautiful poem about the fields and the animals.

34. The son of the king was living in slavery since he had been captured through force by the harsh men of the province. (His) father was bearing bravely the fate of (his) son, but why was the great king never able to free him?

35. Through force and arms there was/has been fierce fighting. Since you have been conquered, enemies, and have been captured by my soldiers, you will be sent to Rome. A few of you, however, will be led into slavery.

36. Every slave ought to be free. For he is a human being. My slaves, at least, although I was possessing (them) by/because of right of war, I ordered to be freed. Will you ever free you own (slaves)?

37. A harsh god is Amor, but (he is) beautiful. Yield to him, men and women. Sing of my love affair, poet. Sing of miserable me and the harsh girl loved by me.

38. The sailors are pondering much the power of the huge sea. For soon they will set sail onto the deep sea.

39. The small province was suffering under the power of the Roman people. For the inhabitants were desiring to be free.

40. We were wandering, driven by the fates, through all the seas and through all the lands. We were happy and free from cares when there was a coming to Italy.

41. The wretched citizens will occupy the countryside of their own town if ever the town itself is captured through force by enemies.

42. I was readily listening to the songs of the famous poet. For they seemed beautiful although they were few. The poet, moreover, I ordered to be rewarded with much gold.

43. As to the gods the sky (has been given), so the earth to human beings has been given. Animals, moreover, occupy the earth with human beings. Both human beings and animals are under the power of the gods.

44. We shall be driven into the sea by the enemies if we do not fight on the land by our very selves.

45. I have lived well and happily. Why now are strength and life going out from my body? Remember me, good man, when I shall have departed, and report my words to my mother.

46. After all the soldiers having been ordered by the king went away into battle, we indeed were enduring not easily many wretched things at home.

47. Not even the gods are without wars and battles, as the poets say. From many causes, moreover, they wage fierce war among themselves.

48. Justly we have driven Catiline, a man wicked and captured in (his) mind, out from the city. In this way the Roman people has been freed from fear.

49. By the strength of the soldiers, senators, we have been freed from the dangers of slavery. Now without fear of fierce enemies we are able to live.

50. I had departed from Rome with (my) wife, and I had happily returned to Athens. For in Athens we were able to live among good men.

51. Although the town had not been able to be taken by force, many inhabitants, both free men and slaves, had been captured. Up to the huge walls at Rome they were being led by the soldiers.

52. Gaius among all the new poets was praised a lot. Because of love of fame, not of money, he used to write his poems.

53. The mother with (her) small son departed from Rome because of fear. For she was desiring to occupy the countryside. “Never shall we return to Rome,” she said miserably.

54. The war between Carthage and Rome was huge. Our soldiers, however, had nothing at all of fear.

55. When strongly the case of the allies had been pled by the men sent out from the province, there was a departing out from the forum.

56. If a man, captured by the love of glory, ever does violence to the citizens, he will be driven out from the forum and out from the city.

57. Fear made the gods for wretched human beings, as the poets say. In your (pl.) opinion, at least, was this very thing well said?

58. You were small, Antony, when you were fearing violence and sharp weapons. Now you wage war with a strong mind.

59. Since the father had driven his own daughters from home without reason, they were justly hating him. It came into (my) mind for me to kill that wicked man.

60. The goddess (says) a few things to Cupid: "Go, my son, my strength, to the high walls of Carthage. If to you my intention is clear, you will stir up the mind of the unlucky queen with a great love."

61. In this way among themselves and with me those men were speaking: "To us all although great indeed power in return for our deeds has been owed and is owed, not even the right of citizens is granted."

62. Now there is a going into the sharp cares of war. The Roman soldier, moreover, remarkable in/because of strength, will have to lead us against the enemies.

63. Loyal men because of fear were departing out from the towns of the province. After it (this thing) was understood at Rome, a great force of soldiers was sent.

64. Drive with great force, senators, out from the city those wicked men, comrades of Catiline, enemies of good men, enemies of the homeland! Free from fear yourselves and your men.

65. Unless you are ruled by a plan, O citizens, unless with soul and mind you listen to the words of the brave king, you will lead your own allies into slavery. Be moved not by fear, but by right!

66. Since Marcus was captured by a great love of gold, now he is without a province and a home, soon (he will be without) life.

67. Although the father was strong both in mind and in body, he was wickedly killed by (his) son. Soon his body will be carried home and will be dutifully placed in the earth by (his) wife. (His) son, however, will justly pay the penalty.

68. The men on the island, O king, ought to be given into slavery since they have conducted themselves wickedly.

69. You are held with me, senators, by a great love of the homeland. War, however, among the citizens you will stir up if you do not drive Catiline out from the city.

70. You (pl.) had a fear of us, but many of us were fearing you (pl.). If ever you used to speak to us, we did not use to answer at all.

B. 1. Quamquam ingēns vīs virōrum ad moenia hostium cum fortibus armīs erat ducta, timōre rūs sēsē mox tulērunt.

2. Omnēs ab urbe mittēmur sī hostēs ācrēs sub moenibus per vim pugnābunt/pugnāverint.

3. Paucī Rōmānī timōre atque odiō hostium Carthāginī/Carthāgine vīvēbant.

4. Marcus, ubi Athēnās cum patre vēnit, inter cīvēs vīxit et sapientiam ā poētīs ipsīs accēpit. Cūr Athēnīs discessit? Ubi nunc vīvit?

5. Sī omnia carmina ab eō poētā clārō scrīpta bene audiēs/audīveris, fīlī, verbīs eius facile movēberis.

6. Dī, sī īram atque inimīcitiam inter hominēs īnfēlīcīs movēre optābunt/optāverint, sententiās impiās in mentēs eōrum mittunt.

7. Difficulter, patrēs cōnscrīptī, sententiae meae intellegī potuērunt. Clāra autem vōbīs erunt omnia sī meōs librōs dē vī et armīs legētis/lēgeritis.

8. Ubi ad moenia hostium ventum est, paucī nostrum timōre carēbant. Nōs autem, fīliī virōrum ingentium, gladiōs ācrēs capiēbāmus.

9. Sī prō sociīs ācriter pugnābitur/pugnātum erit, omnēs mīlitēs Rōmā discēdent et auxilium armaque ad prōvinciam ferent.

10. Paucī nautae in marī cūrīs nōn omnīnō carent. Multī autem altum iūre timent.

11. Poēta mente ācer et amōrem et bellum cōgitābat. Nōn facile est vim deum intellegere.

12. Rōmae virī iūra cīvium tenuērunt, sed omnēs fēminae eīs caruēre.

Chapter VII: Drill 64-69 (pages 275-279)

A. 1. person, number, tense, voice, and mood

2. active and passive
3. indicative, imperative, and subjunctive
4. statements and questions represented as factual
   commands
   non-factual ideas
5. present, imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect

B. 1. sum, esse, fuī, futūrus

	Active	*Translation*
Indicative		
Present	est	she is
Imperfect	erat	she was
Future	erit	she will be
Perfect	fuit	she was/has been
Pluperfect	fuerat	she had been
Future Perfect	fuerit	she will have been
Subjunctive		
Present	sit	
Imperfect	esset	
Perfect	fuerit	
Pluperfect	fuisset	
Infinitive		
Present	esse	to be

2. possum, posse, potuī, ——

	Active	*Translation*
Indicative		
Present	possumus	we are able
Imperfect	poterāmus	we were (being) able
Future	poterimus	we shall be able
Perfect	potuimus	we were/have been able
Pluperfect	potuerāmus	we had been able
Future Perfect	potuerimus	we shall have been able
Subjunctive		
Present	possīmus	
Imperfect	possēmus	
Perfect	potuerimus	
Pluperfect	potuissēmus	
Infinitive		
Present	posse	to be able

3. superō, superāre, superāvī, superātus

	Active	*Translation*	*Passive*	*Translation*
Indicative				
Present	superant	they are conquering	superantur	they are being conquered
Imperfect	superābant	they used to conquer	superābantur	they used to be conquered
Future	superābunt	they will conquer	superābuntur	they will be conquered
Perfect	superāvērunt/ superāvēre	they (have) conquered	sunt superāta	they (n.) were/have been conquered
Pluperfect	superāverant	they had conquered	erant superāta	they (n.) had been conquered
Future Perfect	superāverint	they will have conquered	erunt superāta	they (n.) will have been conquered
Subjunctive				
Present	superent		superentur	
Imperfect	superārent		superārentur	
Perfect	superāverint		sint superāta	
Pluperfect	superāvissent		essent superāta	
Infinitive				
Present	superāre	to conquer	superārī	to be conquered
Imperative				
Singular	superā	conquer	superāre	be conquered
Plural	superāte	conquer (pl.)	superāminī	be conquered (pl.)

4. iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussus

	Active	*Translation*	*Passive*	*Translation*
Indicative				
Present	iubēs	you order	iubēris/iubēre	you are ordered
Imperfect	iubēbās	you were ordering	iubēbāris/iubēbāre	you were being ordered
Future	iubēbis	you will order	iubēberis/iubēbere	you will be ordered
Perfect	iussistī	you (have) ordered	iussa es	you (f.) were/have been ordered
Pluperfect	iusserās	you had ordered	iussa erās	you (f.) had been ordered
Future Perfect	iusseris	you will have ordered	iussa eris	you (f.) will have been ordered
Subjunctive				
Present	iubeās		iubeāris/iubeāre	
Imperfect	iubērēs		iubērēris/iubērēre	
Perfect	iusseris		iussa sīs	
Pluperfect	iussissēs		iussa essēs	
Infinitive				
Present	iubēre	to order	iubērī	to be ordered
Imperative				
Singular	iubē	order	iubēre	be ordered
Plural	iubēte	order (pl.)	iubēminī	be ordered (pl.)

5. sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus

	Active	*Translation*	*Passive*	*Translation*
Indicative				
Present	sentiō	I am feeling	sentior	I am being perceived
Imperfect	sentiēbam	I was feeling	sentiēbar	I was being perceived
Future	sentiam	I shall feel	sentiar	I shall be perceived
Perfect	sēnsī	I (have) felt	sēnsa sum	I (f.) was/have been perceived
Pluperfect	sēnseram	I had felt	sēnsa eram	I (f.) had been perceived
Future Perfect	sēnserō	I shall have felt	sēnsa erō	I (f.) shall have been perceived
Subjunctive				
Present	sentiam		sentiar	
Imperfect	sentīrem		sentīrer	
Perfect	sēnserim		sēnsa sim	
Pluperfect	sēnsissem		sēnsa essem	
Infinitive				
Present	sentīre	to feel	sentīrī	to be perceived
Imperative				
Singular	sentī	feel	sentīre	be perceived
Plural	sentīte	feel (pl.)	sentīminī	be perceived (pl.)

6. perficiō, perficere, perfēcī, perfectus

	Active	*Translation*	*Passive*	*Translation*
Indicative				
Present	perficit	it is accomplishing	perficitur	it is being accomplished
Imperfect	perficiēbat	it was accomplishing	perficiēbātur	it was being accomplished
Future	perficiet	it will accomplish	perficiētur	it will be accomplished
Perfect	perfēcit	it (has) completed	perfectum est	it was/has been completed
Pluperfect	perfēcerat	it had completed	perfectum erat	it had been completed
Future Perfect	perfēcerit	it will have completed	perfectum erit	it will have been completed
Subjunctive				
Present	perficiat		perficiātur	
Imperfect	perficeret		perficerētur	
Perfect	perfēcerit		perfectum sit	
Pluperfect	perfēcisset		perfectum esset	
Infinitive				
Present	perficere	to complete	perficī	to be completed
Imperative				
Singular	perfice	accomplish	perficere	be accomplished
Plural	perficite	accomplish (pl.)	perficiminī	be accomplished (pl.)

7. ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus

	Active	*Translation*	*Passive*	*Translation*
Indicative				
Present	fertis	you (pl.) bring	feriminī	you (pl.) are being brought
Imperfect	ferēbātis	you (pl.) were bearing	ferēbāminī	you (pl.) were being borne
Future	ferētis	you (pl.) will carry	ferēminī	you (pl.) will be carried
Perfect	tulistis	you (pl.) (have) endured	lātī estis	you (m.pl.) were/ have been endured
Pluperfect	tulerātis	you (pl.) had said	lātī erātis	you (m.pl.) had been said
Future Perfect	tuleritis	you (pl.) will have reported	lātī eritis	you (m.pl.) will have been reported
Subjunctive				
Present	ferātis		ferāminī	
Imperfect	ferrētis		ferrēminī	
Perfect	tuleritis		lātī sītis	
Pluperfect	tulissētis		lātī essētis	
Infinitive				
Present	ferre	to bring	ferrī	to be brought
Imperative				
Singular	fer	bear	ferre	be borne
Plural	ferte	carry (pl.)	feriminī	be carried (pl.)

8. legō, legere, lēgī, lēctus

	Active	*Translation*	*Passive*	*Translation*
Indicative				
Present	legunt	they are reading	leguntur	they are being read
Imperfect	legēbant	they were reading	legēbantur	they were being read
Future	legent	they will read	legentur	they will be read
Perfect	lēgērunt/lēgēre	they (have) chosen	sunt lēcta	they (n.) have been/were chosen
Pluperfect	lēgerant	they had chosen	erant lēcta	they (n.) had been chosen
Future Perfect	lēgerint	they will have chosen	erunt lēcta	they (n.) will have been chosen
Subjunctive				
Present	legant		legantur	
Imperfect	legerent		legerentur	
Perfect	lēgerint		sint lēcta	
Pluperfect	lēgissent		essent lēcta	
Infinitive				
Present	legere	to read	legī	to be read
Imperative				
Singular	lege	read	legere	be read
Plural	legite	read (pl.)	legiminī	be read (pl.)

9. moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus

	Active	*Translation*	*Passive*	*Translation*
Indicative				
Present	movēs	you move	movēris/movēre	you are moved
Imperfect	movēbās	you used to move	movēbāris/ movēbāre	you were being moved
Future	movēbis	you will move	movēberis/ movēbere	you will be moved
Perfect	mōvistī	you (have) moved	mōta es	you (f.) were/have been moved
Pluperfect	mōverās	you had moved	mōta erās	you (f.) had been moved
Future Perfect	mōveris	you will have moved	mōta eris	you (f.) will have been moved
Subjunctive				
Present	moveās		moveāris/moveāre	
Imperfect	movērēs		movērēris/movērēre	
Perfect	mōveris		mōta sīs	
Pluperfect	mōvissēs		mōta essēs	
Infinitive				
Present	movēre	to move	movērī	to be moved
Imperative				
Singular	movē	move	movēre	be moved
Plural	movēte	move (pl.)	movēminī	be moved (pl.)

10. līberō, līberāre, līberāvī, līberātus

	Active	*Translation*	*Passive*	*Translation*
Indicative				
Present	līberō	I am freeing	līberor	I am being freed
Imperfect	līberābam	I was freeing	līberābar	I was being freed
Future	līberābō	I shall free	līberābor	I shall be freed
Perfect	līberāvī	I (have) freed	līberātus sum	I (m.) was/have been freed
Pluperfect	līberāveram	I had freed	līberātus eram	I (m.) had been freed
Future Perfect	līberāverō	I shall have freed	līberātus erō	I (m.) shall have been freed
Subjunctive				
Present	līberem		līberer	
Imperfect	līberārem		līberārer	
Perfect	līberāverim		līberātus sim	
Pluperfect	līberāvissem		līberātus essem	
Infinitive				
Present	līberāre	to free	līberārī	to be freed
Imperative				
Singular	līberā	free	līberāre	be freed
Plural	līberāte	free (pl.)	līberāminī	be freed (pl.)

11. eō, īre, iī/īvī, itum

	Active	*Translation*
Indicative		
Present	īmus	we are going
Imperfect	ībāmus	we were going
Future	ībimus	we shall go
Perfect	iimus/īmus/īvimus	we went/we have gone
Pluperfect	ierāmus/īverāmus	we had gone
Future Perfect	ierimus/īverimus	we shall have gone
Subjunctive		
Present	eāmus	
Imperfect	īrēmus	
Perfect	ierimus/īverimus	
Pluperfect	īssēmus/īvissēmus	
Infinitive		
Present	īre	to go
Imperative		
Single	ī	go
Plural	īte	go (pl.)

12. audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus

	Active	*Translation*	*Passive*	*Translation*
Indicative				
Present	audītis	you (pl.) hear	audīminī	you (pl.) are heard
Imperfect	audiēbātis	you (pl.) were hearing	audiēbāminī	you (pl.) were being heard
Future	audiētis	you (pl.) will hear	audiēminī	you (pl.) will be heard
Perfect	audīvistis	you (pl.) (have) heard	estis audītī	you (m.pl.) were/ have been heard
Pluperfect	audīverātis	you (pl.) had heard	erātis audītī	you (m.pl.) had been heard
Future Perfect	audīveritis	you (pl.) will have heard	eritis audītī	you (m.pl.) will have been heard
Subjunctive				
Present	audiātis		audiāminī	
Imperfect	audīrētis		audīrēminī	
Perfect	audīveritis		sītis audītī	
Pluperfect	audīvissētis		essētis audītī	
Infinitive				
Present	audīre	to hear	audīrī	to be heard
Imperative				
Singular	audī	hear	audīre	be heard
Plural	audīte	hear (pl.)	audīminī	be heard (pl.)

C. 1. I love

2. 1st sing. pres. act. subjunc.
3. 3rd sing. imperf. pass. subjunc.
4. it is being shown
5. he will lead
6. he will have led; 3rd sing. perf. act. subjunc.
7. 2nd sing. pres. act. subjunc.
8. you are living
9. 2nd pl. pluperf. act. subjunc.
10. 2nd pl. (m.) pluperf. pass. subjunc.
11. I am being taken
12. I shall be taken; 1st sing. pres. pass. subjunc.
13. they say
14. 3rd pl. imperf. act. subjunc.
15. we shall send

16. we (have) sent
17. she (has) understood
18. 3rd sing. (m.) perf. pass. subjunc.
19. 1st sing. perf. act. subjunc.
20. I shall have gone
21. 2nd sing. pluperf. act. subjunc.
22. you had considered
23. 2nd sing. pres. act. subjunc.
24. 2nd sing. pres. pass. subjunc.
25. 3rd pl. imperf. act. subjunc.
26. they (have) read
27. 3rd pl. pres. act. subjunc.
28. they bear
29. he was being driven
30. 3rd sing. pres. pass. subjunc.
31. 3rd sing. pluperf. act. subjunc.
32. he will have yielded; 3rd sing. perf. act. subjunc.
33. 2nd pl. pres. act. subjunc.
34. 2nd pl. pluperf. act. subjunc.
35. 1st pl. imperf. pass. subjunc.
36. 1st pl. pres. pass. subjunc.
37. 2nd sing. pres. pass. subjunc.
38. you are being perceived
39. it will have been; 3rd sing. perf. act. subjunc.
40. she was, she has been

D. 1. canāmus
2. vīvēbat
3. līberāta sīs
4. captus eram
5. lēcta erunt
6. caruissētis
7. scrīptum est
8. sīs

9. interficerēmur
10. lātī erant
11. dabis
12. sentiātur
13. optābāris/optābāre
14. intellēxerim
15. ductae essēmus
16. eant
17. gessistī
18. posset
19. pōnar
20. amātae sint

Chapter VII: Drill 70 (pages 281-287)

A.

1. a. Audiunt. b. (Potential) Audiant.
2. a. Respondē. b. (Jussive) Nē responderis/respondeās.
3. a. Regēbāmur. b. (Hortatory) Regāmur.
4. a. Vīsum est. b. (Potential) Vidērētur.
5. a. Canet. b. (Optative) Canat.
6. a. Līberāris/Līberāre. b. (Optative) Līberārēris/Līberārēre
7. a. Nōn est laudātus. b. (Potential) Nōn laudārētur.
8. a. Vīvitur. b. (Jussive) Vīvātur.
9. a. Accēdite. b. (Jussive) Nē accesseritis/accēdātis.
10. a. Mittam. b. (Potential) Mittam/Mīserim.
11. a. Potuistī. b. (Optative) Potuissēs.
12. a. Fer. b. (Jussive) Nē tuleris/ferās.
13. a. Redībant. b. (Potential) Redīrent.
14. a. Fuerat. b. (Jussive) Sit.
15. a. Dictum est. b. (Optative) Nē dictum esset.
16. a. Meminērunt. b. (Jussive) Meminerint.
17. a. Sēnsus sum. b. (Potential) Nōn sentīrer.
18. a. Pōne. b. (Optative) Pōnerēs.
19. a. Pugnātur. b. (Jussive) Nē pugnētur.
20. a. Mōtae eritis. b. (Potential) Moveāminī/Mōtae sītis.

B. 1. Potential: You might do it.

2. Optative: If only he had shown me the way!

3. Hortatory: Let us all go away from the city.
Potential: We could all go away from the city.
Optative: If only we all would go away from the city

4. Potential: They might have returned (to) home with their own men.
Optative: If only they were returning . . .

5. Hortatory: Let us not ever go to Rome, but let us live happily in the country.
Optative: If only we would not ever go to Rome, but would live . . .

6. Potential: A free man would not at all endure slavery.

7. Optative: If only you were listening to me.

8. Jussive: Do not fear the huge power of the enemies.

9. Hortatory: Let me lead brave men!
[Potential: I could lead . . .]
Optative: May I lead . . .

10. Jussive: Do not send your poems to me!
Optative: If only you would not send . . .

11. Potential: You (pl.) would not have seen soldiers in the streets.

12. Optative: If only the city had not been captured by enemies.

13. Potential: You might have erred about these men/women/things.
Optative: If only you were erring . . .

14. Hortatory: Let us depart from the unlucky battle.
Potential: We could depart . . .
Optative: If only we would depart . . .

15. Optative: If only she were not hard in mind.

16. Jussive: Love all the gods and give gifts to all.
Potential: You could love . . . and could give . . .
Optative: If only you would love . . . and would give . . .

17. Potential: Without a sharp sword I would not be able to fight.

18. Jussive: Let them easily kill the king.
Potential: They could easily kill . . .
Optative: If only they would easily kill . . .

19. Jussive: Do not be moved by the words of the master.
Optative: May you not be moved . . .

20. Jussive: Do not say difficult things to me.

C. 1. Optative Nē domum missa essem!

2. Jussive Nē ad forum redieris/redeās, vir īnfēlīx.

3. Optative Dī fortibus nostrum bona dent.

4.	Hortatory	Nē omnīnō dē eīs dīcāmus.
5.	Potential	Servī īnfēlīcēs arma in dominōs cēperint.
6.	Jussive	Verbīs rēgis ācris cēdant
7.	Potential	Cūr in ingentī perīculō pōnerentur?
8.	Optative	Utinam vītam bonam ageret!
9.	Jussive	Nē invidiā mōtī sītis/moveāminī.
10.	Potential	Bellum terrā marīque nōn gerātur.

Chapter VII: Drill 71 (pages 289-294)

A. 1. **veniās**: pres. subjunc.; **accipiāmus**: pres. subjunc.; Future Less Vivid (FLV)
We would receive you happily if you should come to the country.
pres. subjunc. in the apodosis of a FLV conditional sentence

2. **veniēs**: fut. indic.; **accipiēmus**: fut. indic.; FMV
We shall receive you happily if you come to the country.
fut. indic. in the protasis of a Future More Vivid conditional sentence

3. **vidērētur**: imperf. subjunc.; **darēmus**: imperf. subjunc.; Present Contrary-to-Fact
If the girl were not seeming unfortunate to us, we would not be giving her money.
imperf. subjunc. in the apodosis of a Pres. Contrary-to-Fact conditional sentence

4. **vīsa esset**: pluperf. subjunc.; **accēpisset**: pluperf. subjunc.; Past Contrary-to-Fact
If the girl had not seemed unfortunate, she would not have received money from us.
pluperf. subjunc. in the protasis of a Past Contrary-to-Fact conditional sentence

5. **lēgissēs**: pluperf. subjunc.; **intellegerēs**: imperf. subjunc.; Mixed Contrary-to-Fact
If you had read his books, now you would be understanding all things.
imperf. subjunc. in the apodosis of a Mixed Contrary-to-Fact conditional sentence

6. **lēgistī**: perf. indic.; **intellēxistī**: perf. indic.; Past Simple
If you read his books, you certainly understood all things.
perf. indic. in the protasis of a Past Simple conditional sentence

7. **pōnāminī**: pres. subjunc.; **mittēmus**; fut. indic.; Mixed Future
If you (pl.) should be placed in danger by enemies, we shall send aid without delay.

8. **positī eritis**: fut. perf. indic.; **mittēmus**: fut. indic.; FMVE
If you (pl. m.) are placed in danger by friends, we shall send aid without delay.

9. **dōnāverit**: fut. perf. indic.; **habēbere**: fut. indic.; FMVE
If the king does not give you gold, you will not be considered fortunate by me.

10. **dōnet**: pres. subjunc.; **habēberis**: fut. indic.; Mixed Future
Unless the king should give you gold, you will not be considered fortunate by me.

11. **essem**: imperf. subjunc.; **canerem**: imperf. subjunc.; Present Contrary-to-Fact
I would be singing of arms and a man if I were a poet.

12. **fuissem**: pluperf. subjunc.; **cecinissem**: pluperf. subjunc.; Past Contrary-to-Fact
I would have sung of arms and a man if I had been a poet.

13. **sit**: pres. subjunc.; **mittam**: fut. indic. *or* pres. subjunc.; Mixed Future *or* FLV
    I shall/would not send (my) friends into the forum if I should have a fear of danger.
14. **fuisset**: pluperf. subjunc.; **mīsissem**: pluperf. subjunc.; Past Contrary-to-Fact
    I would not have sent (my) friends into the forum if I had had a fear of danger.
15. **iussisset**: pluperf. subjunc.; **darent**: imperf. subjunc.; Mixed Contrary-to-Fact
    If the queen had ordered the sailors to depart, now they would be setting sail.
16. **iubeat**: pres. subjunc.; **dabunt**: fut. indic.; Mixed Future
    If the queen should order the sailors to depart, soon they will set sail.

B. 1. Future Less Vivid
Sī Athēnās eās, tuī amīcī domī id difficulter ferant.

2. Present Contrary-to-Fact
Omnēs hominēs, sī ingentem vim deōrum intellegerent, fēlīciter et sine cūrīs vīverent.

3. Mixed Future
Ācriter sub moenibus nostrīs pugnābitur sī umquam bellum Rōmae gerātur.

4. Past Contrary-to-Fact
Ego, nisi homō īnfēlīx fuissem, ab hostibus nōn essem captus nec datus in servitūtem dūram.

5. Mixed Contrary-to-Fact
Īram cīvium iūre movērēs sī fortia arma in populum Rōmānum cēpissēs.

Chapter VII: Drill 72-73 (pages 295-296)

1. The friendship of the gods will be a source of good/serve as a good thing for us.

   nōbīs, Dative of Reference; **bonō**, Dative of Purpose
2. I made arms for the soldiers from gold.

   mīlitibus, Dative of Advantage
3. We shall send gold to the allies for the purpose of aid.

   auxiliō, Dative of Purpose
4. To the king war on the island was a source of great care.

   rēgī, Dative of Reference; **cūrae**, Dative of Purpose
5. The king gave much money to the soldiers for the purpose of a gift.

   dōnō, Dative of Purpose
6. I was writing a poem for my mother.

   mātrī, Dative of Advantage
7. Why was the son a source of hatred to the father?

   odiō, Dative of Purpose; **patrī**, Dative of Reference

8. My girl is always harsh to me.
mihi, Dative of Disadvantage

Exercises, Chapter VII (pages 297-314)

A. 1. If the great part of fortune remains for us, we shall easily conquer.
If the great part of fortune should remain for us, we shall easily conquer.
If the great part of fortune had remained for us, we would have easily conquered.

2. If the walls should be captured, we would truly desire to flee.
If the walls were being captured, we would truly be desiring to flee.
If the walls had been captured, we would truly be desiring to flee.

3. The brother said either false things or true things.
Either the brother or the sister said false things.

4. After the bitter war of the citizens, part of the soldiers remained in Rome, but we fled to Athens. Luckily, for we both sought and happily received friendship from the inhabitants.

5. Why did the troops of the allies attack the country with arms and order our city to be handed over to their very selves? We, at least, would never have attacked them in such a way.

6. After there was a going into the temples of the immortal gods, beautiful animals were killed. For you (pl.) were seeking aid from the gods. Not, however, with gifts placed on the altars but with loyal deeds aid could have been sought.

7. Since the strong soldiers were having an abundance of weapons, they had been sent into the province for the purpose of aid. If only the inhabitants had not fled because of huge fear of treachery. Now all their goods are able to be carried away by the enemies without penalty.

8. Why were the Romans going to the altar of Minerva and seeking wisdom from the goddess? Minerva, as we have heard, gave all the arts to men.

9. My brother is uncertain. Now he feels love, now (he feels) hatred. Love is winning, as it seems. If only he were not being captured by that harsh god!

10. Will you surrender, on account of ancient hostilities, the cause of the allies and the fortunes of the province? Do not do it.

11. Few things indeed about the nature of the gods are easily understood: Jupiter rules the sky and the earth with power, but the huge sea he himself handed over to (his) brother Neptune.

12. The inhabitants of the islands would have remained in the friendship of the Roman people if they had not been terrified through treachery by false words.

13. Of human beings part happily live in the countryside, part (live) in the cities not without cares.

14. The father was walking toward the ancient temples of the gods; the son was coming behind, as a shadow.

15. Julia is beautiful in body, at least, but not in mind. My Cynthia, however, surpasses all girls both in talent and in skill. She seems to me to be (one) of the goddesses or certainly divine.

16. Friendships (ought to be) immortal, enmities ought to be mortal, as ancient men used to say.

17. You certainly are a dear friend to that girl. She calls you brother and is called sister (by you).

18. Conquered men fear Caesar before all men. The words of Caesar make law. Caesar himself grants rights through the peoples.

19. A human being might be able to be considered a divine animal. I, at least, would consider him a mortal god.

20. The king harsh in nature is a source of fear to the people. To him a book about the nature of power would serve as a great help.

21. Let us love the homeland. Let the homeland not ever be surrendered to the enemies by us. Let the homeland always be a source of love to the citizens. For my part the land of Italy is dear.

22. If our poet were not a Roman citizen, now he would be being presented with citizenship by the people. Ancient men received even enemies into friendship.

23. Concerning Antony I would be able to say nothing (of) new to you, nothing indeed (of) good: since all mortals hate him, also to you he ought to be a source of hatred.

24. All things live by/because of the skill of nature, (all things) are beautifully managed by nature. Thus (my) father told me. In my opinion, however, a divine mind moves and rules all things.

25. If you wage a new war and you have this intention, great king, we shall seek not reasons but weapons. With a great voice we shall say: “Let war indeed be waged on behalf of our citizenry!”

26. The father (says) to (his) sons: “My life would be well completed if you should be moved by my words and deeds toward the pursuit of wisdom and virtue. Remember: not I but my shade will come to you after death.”

27. Let us return to the forum and let us listen to Cato. For Cato with an abundance of words and opinions pleads cases well on behalf of the people. He himself would speak for me if ever I should be called into court.

28. The father dear to us might give for the purpose of a gift the books of ancient poets to me or to (my) brother or to (my) sister. I am in uncertainty (an uncertain thing).

29. If you had kept courage in war, you would have been a source of aid to the country, and you would have been considered (a) dear (man) by all.

30. Immortal gods and all goddesses, grant an easy way toward death; for my slavery is harsh and miserable.

31. The words of the allies seemed false to a great part of the senators. A few men perceived even treachery.

32. When many of us were fleeing out from the fierce battle, your son not only proceeded toward the enemies, but also led his own terrified men. In this way his courage was serving as a great good (thing) for us.

33. Why did that unfortunate man have a miserable fate? He was killed by/because of the guile of (his) wicked brother. And indeed after (his) death, when the shade of the very man was being seen in the town, the brother was terrified.

34. Since there has been a coming to the temple of Jupiter, let us dutifully place gifts for the great god on the altars. For in fact the hostility of the immortal gods might be overcome with gifts.

35. You on account of your talent and wisdom might be able to write a beautiful poem easily. I certainly would not be able (to do this) at all.

36. “Our king could have been killed/If only our king were being killed through treachery.”
“Do not say it to me. Let me not hear those harsh things from you.”

37. Venus ponders new tricks, new plans in (her) mind. She sends Cupid to Carthage and orders (him) to make treachery for the queen. When Cupid sees the queen, he attacks.

38. If Marcus should fight with/against me in respect to talent, if he should fight (with me) even in respect to skill, I shall certainly surpass him.

39. Although I was desiring to depart out from the temple, I was able to do it neither dutifully nor justly. So in the temple I was remaining as before.

40. After the bitter war I could not have praised you, certainly not. For when a great part of the troops were fighting bravely and luckily, you, terrified by the enemies, wretchedly fled. If only you were departing out from the state!

41. Uncertain are the enthusiasms of the citizens, great (are) my dangers. I shall be in the country with you (pl.) if I live. If only soon a man or a god would be a source of aid to me!

42. Although you differ from me in many opinions, nevertheless you are a friend dear to me. Moreover, because of your love for me many good men hate you. If only I were not at all the cause of evils (evil things) for you!

43. Death says to us, "Live (pl.), I am coming." If only you (pl.) would be terrified by her words or at least be moved (by them)! As we and our things are owed to death, so let us live well.

44. Aeneas after the harsh war fled from ancient Troy and on account of the anger of Juno was wandering through the deep sea. For he was seeking a new homeland. If, however, he had not been led by the good gods, he would never have come to Italy.

45. Many poets great in talent lived for (a) certain (thing) after Catullus. And indeed Horace, as it seems to me, surpassed Catullus both in talent and in skill. From a certain reason I shall remain in my opinion although many men will differ from me.

46. Deeds differ much from words, Marcus Antonius. If you had (were having) not only courage but also strength, you would not be fleeing miserably out from battle. Unless you should return without delay, you will for certain pay the penalty.

47. After the disloyal soldier surrendered our city to the enemies, he was not able to be with himself and, as it is said, to live with himself, and soon he killed himself with his own sword.

48. “If many mortals read your poems carefully, they will desire your skills for themselves, divine poet.”
“If only you were saying to me (your) true opinion from (your) soul!”
“I have said nothing (so may the gods love me) (of) false.”

49. A man dear to me went to a bitter death. But he carried away my affection with him. Now (his) shade even returns and I seem to hear his voice. He says, “Remember me. For never shall I myself return.”

50. I (f.) would have been terrified if ever I had seen a harsh battle. For I used to fear even shadows without reason. Why was I having a huge fear? I could not easily say.

51. Let a dutiful mind be free from mortal cares. Let all dutiful men always be praised by us. If we wickedly carry away gold from the temple of Jupiter, we shall certainly pay the penalty.

52. Listen, Jupiter, to my words: may you send aid to our troops! For the citizenry of the Roman people could be conquered by the treachery of the enemies.

53. Let us go away since we have been terrified by the shadows in the streets. Although the women desire to flee, let them remain.

54. Hear, O citizens, the voice of your king: “Because of the treachery of my enemies I was suffering. Now justly they have paid the penalty. They have lived."

55. My brother previously had a clear mind and a strong body. But after the war he seemed (repeatedly) to be a man without strength, without courage.

56. Not only the soul of a human being is dear to the gods, but also (his) body (is dear). The soul, however, will not always remain in the mortal body. So nature orders.

57. I for my part am uncertain about the nature of the gods. Not, if the deeds of the gods are good, are they also bad. You, however, have a great force of talent; tell me your opinion.

58. If new auxiliary troops were not being sent by the allies, we would rightly be seeming unfortunate and we would be going to the altars and would be seeking fortune from the gods.

59. You are false, Marcus Antonius, and bad in nature. True things you neither say nor do. Thus death and evil fates await you and your men. If only you were being moved by the words of your (own) sister!

60. Since the soldiers were differing among themselves, the king before the battle summoned the troops to himself: “Many things about the new treachery of the Romans we both have said and will say. Now, however, O comrades, either fight for the homeland or be killed without glory. All things to us either fortune or nature will give.”

61. O immortal gods! Evil fates truly await the Romans on account of their treachery. For when their troops had departed out from the province, many of the allies not with difficulty were captured and (were) killed.

62. After the soldiers were conquered and were driven out from the city, their minds were carried away with (their) weapons. If only they had not been conquered!

63. Listen to me, senators. If Marcus had handed over the country to disloyal men, we would now be considering him a public enemy.

B. 1. Sī Caesar urbem hostium capī ac vincī iubeat, amōre glōriae moveāmur et sub moenibus sine timōre pugnēmus.

2. Hominēs, sī sapientiā semper regerentur, ab animālibus multum differrent atque ad vītam deōrum immortālium accēderent.

3. Ubi ex ārīs templīsque discessum erat, cīvēs dē vī deum inter sēsē differēbant. Paucī enim nostrum, ut vidētur, nātūram eōrum vērē intellegunt.

4. Sī umquam cīvitās sociīs impiīs esset trādita, nōn sōlum cīvēs nostrī in servitūtem datī essent, sed etiam multī vestrum, patrēs cōnscrīptī, interfectī.

5. Aut Rōmae maneāmus aut cum sorōribus cārīs rūs fugiāmus. Equidem prō cīvitāte interficī nōn optō.

6. Ō fīlī mihi cāre, nē vōcibus acerbīs inimīcōrum tuōrum territus sīs. Sī autem vī auferāris, amīcus vērus tibi magnō certē sit auxiliō.

7. Paucī fīliī suōs patrēs et arte et sapientiā superent, ut dīcēbant antīquī.

8. Nōn sōlum virtūs sed tuum ingenium etiam, Marce Tullī, multīs erunt invidiae sī ācriter populō dē Antōniō dīcēs (dīxeris). Nē autem sententiīs eōrum acerbīs victus sīs. Certē enim manēbit tua fāma bona.

9. Utinam nē, patrēs cōnscrīptī, partem cīvitātis eī rēgī malō trādātis. Cūr nihil dē īnsidiīs eius dīcitis?

10. Sī fortūna mē ā morte vocet, ad fēminam mihi cāram redībō. Etiam vīvat!

11. Ut ante bellum artem dīvīnam poētae laudābāmus, sīc etiam nunc ingenium eius magnum meminimus ac vōcem clāram.

12. Cīvēs acerbē ferēbant atque ōderant verba tua, nec certa nec vēra. Nisi per invidiam omnem cīvitātem iussissēs in armīs esse, etiam nunc in amīcitiā populī Rōmānī habērēris.

Chapter VIII: Drill 75-76 (pages 315-321)

A. 1. audeō, audēre, ausus sum
2. cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum
3. morior, morī, mortuus sum
4. sequor, sequī, secūtus sum
5. experior, experīri, expertus sum
6. fateor, fatērī, fassus sum
7. patior, patī, passus sum

B. 1. cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum

	Passive	*Translation*
Indicative		
Present	cōnātur	he is trying
Imperfect	cōnābātur	he was trying
Future	cōnābitur	he will try
Perfect	cōnātus est	he (has) tried
Pluperfect	cōnātus erat	he had tried
Future Perfect	cōnātus erit	he will have tried
Subjunctive		
Present	cōnētur	
Imperfect	cōnārētur	
Perfect	cōnātus sit	
Pluperfect	cōnātus esset	
Infinitive		
Present	cōnārī	to try
Imperative		
Singular	cōnāre	try
Plural	cōnāminī	try (pl.)

2. fateor, fatērī, fassus sum

	Passive	*Translation*
Indicative		
Present	fatēris/fatēre	you admit
Imperfect	fatēbāris/fatēbāre	you were admitting
Future	fatēberis/fatēbere	you will admit
Perfect	es fassa	you (f.) (have) admitted
Pluperfect	erās fassa	you (f.) had admitted
Future Perfect	eris fassa	you (f.) will have admitted
Subjunctive		
Present	fateāris/fateāre	
Imperfect	fatērēris/fatērēre	
Perfect	sīs fassa	
Pluperfect	essēs fassa	
Infinitive		
Present	fatērī	to admit
Imperative		
Singular	fatēre	admit
Plural	fatēminī	admit (pl.)

3. audeō, audēre, ausus sum

	Active	*Translation*	*Passive*	*Translation*
Indicative				
Present	audēmus	we dare		
Imperfect	audēbāmus	we were daring		
Future	audēbimus	we shall dare		
Perfect			ausae sumus	we (f.pl.) (have) dared
Pluperfect			ausae erāmus	we (f.pl.) had dared
Future Perfect			ausae erimus	we (f.pl.) shall have dared
Subjunctive				
Present	audeāmus			
Imperfect	audērēmus			
Perfect			ausae sīmus	
Pluperfect			ausae essēmus	
Infinitive				
Present	audēre	to dare		
Imperative				
Singular	audē	try		
Plural	audēte	try (pl.)		

4. sequor, sequī, secūtus sum

	Passive	*Translation*
Indicative		
Present	sequuntur	they are following
Imperfect	sequēbantur	they used to follow
Future	sequentur	they will follow
Perfect	secūta sunt	they (n.) (have) followed
Pluperfect	secūta erant	they (n.) had followed
Future Perfect	secūta erunt	they (n.) will have followed
Subjunctive		
Present	sequantur	
Imperfect	sequerentur	
Perfect	secūta sint	
Pluperfect	secūta essent	
Infinitive		
Present	sequī	to follow
Imperative		
Singular	sequere	follow
Plural	sequiminī	follow (pl.)

5. experior, experīrī, expertus sum

	Passive	*Translation*
Indicative		
Present	experīminī	you (pl.) experience
Imperfect	experiēbāminī	you (pl.) were experiencing
Future	experiēminī	you (pl.) will experience
Perfect	expertī estis	you (m.pl.) (have) experienced
Pluperfect	expertī erātis	you (m.pl.) had experienced
Future Perfect	expertī eritis	you (m.pl.) will have experienced
Subjunctive		
Present	experiāminī	
Imperfect	experīrēminī	
Perfect	expertī sītis	
Pluperfect	expertī essētis	
Infinitive		
Present	experīrī	to experience
Imperative		
Singular	experīre	experience
Plural	experīminī	experience (pl.)

6. morior, morī, mortuus sum

	Passive	*Translation*
Indicative		
Present	morior	I am dying
Imperfect	moriēbar	I was dying
Future	moriar	I shall die
Perfect	mortua sum	I (f.) (have) died
Pluperfect	mortua eram	I (f.) had died
Future Perfect	mortua erō	I (f.) shall have died
Subjunctive		
Present	moriar	
Imperfect	morerer	
Perfect	mortua sim	
Pluperfect	mortua essem	
Infinitive		
Present	morī	to die
Imperative		
Singular	morere	die
Plural	moriminī	die (pl.)

7. patior, patī, passus sum

	Passive	*Translation*
Indicative		
Present	patiuntur	they are experiencing
Imperfect	patiēbantur	they were suffering
Future	patientur	they will endure
Perfect	sunt passī	they (m.) (have) allowed
Pluperfect	erant passī	they (m.) had experienced
Future Perfect	erunt passī	they (m.) will have suffered
Subjunctive		
Present	patiantur	
Imperfect	paterentur	
Perfect	sint passī	
Pluperfect	essent passī	
Infinitive		
Present	patī	to endure
Imperative		
Singular	patere	allow
Plural	patiminī	experience (pl.)

C.
1. you are confessing; confess!
2. he had died
3. you (f.pl.) (have) dared
4. you (pl.) are experiencing; experience (pl.)
5. you could have died; if only you were dying
6. let them suffer; they might suffer; if only they would suffer
7. they were trying
8. I shall follow; let me follow; I could follow; if only I would follow
9. we (m.) had dared
10. if only you (m.) had tried
11. we shall die
12. you are trying; try
13. you will suffer
14. to experience
15. they follow
16. she might confess
17. if only he had dared
18. let us follow; we could follow; if only we would follow
19. he is allowing
20. you (pl.) were confessing
21. if only he had died
22. to die
23. they were daring
24. we shall try
25. he is following
26. they (m.) (have) suffered
27. she was experiencing
28. we could have experienced; if only we were experiencing

D.
1. cōnābor; experiar
2. sequerētur
3. fatērentur
4. cōnātī sumus; expertī sumus
5. sequī

6. patiēbāris/patiēbāre
7. ausae sumus
8. moriātur
9. moriēbantur
10. audēbam
11. experiāminī; expertī sītis
12. expertī essēmus
13. sequere
14. passa eram
15. mortuae erunt
16. fatērī

E. 1. she is confessing
2. she is being moved
3. to be placed
4. to follow
5. you are experiencing; experience
6. you are being heard
7. I shall follow; I could follow
8. I shall be sent; let me be sent
9. they will be captured
10. they will die
11. you are trying; try
12. to try
13. we could have confessed
14. if only we were being considered
15. let him die
16. he will die
17. she had dared
18. if only he had dared
19. we (m.) might suffer
20. we (f.) (have) suffered
21. we shall be led
22. let us try

23. to die
24. you (pl.) are dying; die (pl.)
25. we (m.) shall have dared
26. we shall dare
27. they are following
28. let them follow
29. you are dying; die
30. you will die

F. 1. If our king dies, the populace will suffer bad things.
2. Follow me, friend. I shall try to lead you out from danger.
3. I desire to follow Caesar (I shall confess [it] indeed).
4. Has our king dared to send both men and women into war?
5. A daughter dear to me has died. If only she had not died!
6. The wicked man confessed a true thing to me and now is suffering punishment.
7. Truly you (m. pl.) would have experienced the fortune of war if you had ever gone to battle.
8. If only even the master would experience slavery.
9. Although the farmer lives in the countryside, he will dare to go to Rome.
10. If you had not surrendered our town to the enemy, now you would not be dying.

Chapter VIII: Drill 77 (pages 323-327)

A.

	Singular	*Plural*
Nom.	haec pars	hae partēs
Gen.	huius partis	hārum partium
Dat.	huic partī	hīs partibus
Acc.	hanc partem	hās partēs/partīs
Abl.	hāc parte	hīs partibus

Nom.	iste frāter	istī frātrēs
Gen.	istīus frātris	istōrum frātrum
Dat.	istī frātrī	istīs frātribus
Acc.	istum frātrem	istōs frātrēs
Abl.	istō frātre	istīs frātribus

	Singular	*Plural*
Nom.	illud templum	illa templa
Gen.	illīus templī	illōrum templōrum
Dat.	illī templō	illīs templīs
Acc.	illud templum	illa templa
Abl.	illō templō	illīs templīs

B.

1. hanc
2. hic
3. haec
4. hanc
5. hīs
6. huius; huic; hae
7. huic; hōc
8. haec
9. hoc
10. huius; hī

1. istum
2. ista
3. istī
4. istōs
5. ista
6. istī; istōs
7. istud
8. istīus
9. istā
10. ista

1. illīus; illī; illae
2. illa
3. illō
4. illās
5. ille
6. illa
7. illīus; illī
8. illīs
9. illōrum
10. ille; illīus

C.

1. on account of this war
2. these girls (subj.)
3. out from that country of yours
4. those dangers (subj., d.o.)
5. to this bad brother
6. on that altar
7. of that poet
8. on behalf of those contemptible slaves
9. for that famous king
10. these deeds (subj., d.o.)
11. about these men/women/things
12. that miserable life of yours (d.o.)
13. for that city
14. of this man
15. those spirits of yours (d.o.)
16. of these opinions
17. that famous courage (d.o.)
18. for this soul
19. with those friends of yours
20. this wicked plan (subj., d.o.)

21. under this power
22. that body (subj., d.o.)
23. these human beings (subj.)
24. about that treachery
25. of these soldiers
26. in that contemptible city
27. for that inhabitant; those inhabitants (subj.)
28. away from those temples
29. that sister of yours (subj.)
30. through this province
31. with this sword
32. that great poem of yours (subj., d.o.)
33. without that book
34. because of that fear of yours
35. this ancient city (subj.)
36. those famous city walls (subj., d.o.)
37. from these causes
38. of those virtues
39. of this island
40. under this sky

D. 1. Why did that king say these things?

2 This thing was given to that woman.

3. If only that son of yours were not doing bad deeds.

4. These things will be said by my sister.

5. We might be sent to that city.

6. Spurius and Lucius were walking in the street; I saw the latter, but (I did) not (see) the former.

7. You will be moved by these words. I was being moved by the words of this man/woman.

8. This woman said that thing. Did you say these things? Did you hear this voice?

9. That famous Cato used to have much wisdom.

10. Wretched is the life of that contemptible man.

11. We all shall always remember that famous Romulus.

12. Did you lead, O Caesar, those men of yours into that huge danger?

13. Do not go into this temple. Remain with me before the altar.

14. I have read the poems of both Ovid and Vergil. I would praise the talent of the latter poet, the skill of the former.

Chapter VIII: Drill 78 (pages 329-336)

B. 1. fem. sing. acc.
2. masc./fem./neut. sing. dat.
3. fem. sing. nom.; fem. pl. nom; neut. pl. nom.; neut. pl. acc.
4. masc. pl. acc.
5. masc./fem./neut. pl. dat.; masc./fem./neut. pl. abl.
6. masc. sing. acc.

7. masc./neut. sing. abl.
8. masc. sing. nom.; masc. pl. nom.
9. neut. sing. nom./acc.
10. masc./fem./neut. sing. gen.
11. fem. pl. gen.
12. fem. pl. acc.
13. fem. sing. abl.
14. masc./neut. pl. gen.

C. 1. Rēx ācer prōvinciam in quā vīvimus vī regit.
quā = fem. sing. to agree with antecedent (**prōvinciam**)
= abl. of place where with prep. **in**
The fierce king rules by force the province in which we live.

2. Pulchra sunt carmina quae poēta cecinit.
quae = neut. pl. to agree with antecedent (**carmina**)
= acc., d.o. of **cecinit**
The songs that the poet sang are beautiful.

3. Mīlitī quī ad bellum mittitur sunt arma patris.
quī = masc. sing. to agree with antecedent (**mīlitī**)
= nom., subject of **mittitur**
The soldier who is being sent to war has the arms of (his) father.

4. Caesar est vir quem multī mortālēs timent.
quem = masc. sing. to agree with antecedent (**vir**)
= acc., d.o. of **timent**
Caesar is a man whom many mortals fear.

5. Auxiliumne umquam mittētis, ō sociī, quod petimus?
quod = neut. sing. to agree with antecedent (**auxilium**)
= acc., d.o. of **petimus**
Will you, O allies, ever send the aid that we are seeking?

6. Īnfēlīx erat agricola cuius agrī ab hostibus erant captī.
cuius = masc. sing. to agree with antecedent (**agricola**)
= gen. of possession
Unlucky was the farmer whose fields had been captured by enemies.

7. Dā mihi id ferrum quō rēgem interfēcistī.
quō = neut. sing. to agree with antecedent (**ferrum**)
= abl. of means
Give me that sword with which you killed the king.

8. Eam virtūtem quam cupis habeō.
quam = fem. sing. to agree with antecedent (**virtūtem**)
= acc., d.o. of **cupis**
I have that courage that you desire.

9. Iī quibus cāra est patria bellum inter cīvēs ōdērunt.

quibus = masc. pl. to agree with antecedent (**iī**)

= dat. of reference

They (m.) to whom the country is dear hate war among the citizens.

10. Vir quem vīdistī pater meus est.

quem = masc. sing. to agree with antecedent (**vir**)

= acc., d.o. of **vīdistī**

The man whom you saw is my father.

11. Omnēs amīcōs quibus salūs urbis erat cūrae ad sē vocāvit.

quibus = masc. pl. to agree with antecedent (**amīcōs**)

= dat. of reference

He called to himself all the friends to whom the safety of the city served as a concern.

12. Malum erat illud quod difficulter ferēbāmus.

quod = neut. sing. to agree with antecedent (**illud**)

= acc., d.o. of **ferēbāmus**

Bad was that thing that we were enduring with difficulty.

13. Habēsne nunc ea quibus carēbās?

quibus = neut. pl. to agree with antecedent (**ea**)

= abl. of separation

Do you have now those things that you were lacking?

14. Haec scrīberet poēta cui erat ingenium magnum.

cui = masc. sing. to agree with antecedent (**poēta**)

= dat. of possessor

A poet who had great talent could have written these things.

15. Frātrēs quōrum pater māterque Rōmam abierant rūrī manēbant.

quōrum = masc. pl. to agree with antecedent (**frātrēs**)

= gen. of possession

The brothers whose father and mother had gone away to Rome were remaining in the country.

16. Eī quī bene pugnābit aurum dōnābō.

quī = masc. sing. to agree with antecedent (**eī**)

= nom., subj. of **pugnābit**

I shall give gold to him who will fight well.

17. In illa templa fugiāmus quae dī magnī tenent.

quae = neut. pl. to agree with antecedent (**templa**)

= acc., d.o. of **tenent**

Let us flee into those temples that the great gods inhabit.

18. Hunc virum ōdī, cuius sorōrem amō.
cuius = masc. sing., to agree with antecedent (**virum**)
= gen. of possession
I hate this man, whose sister I love.

19. Ea quae dīxit rēx nōn audīvimus.
quae = neut. pl. to agree with antecedent (**ea**)
= acc., d.o. of **dīxit**
We did not hear those things that the king said.

20. Cīvēs eārum urbium ad quās accēdēbant hostēs arma capiēbant.
quās = fem. pl. to agree with antecedent (**urbium**)
= acc. of place to which with prep. **ad**
The citizens of those cities that the enemies were approaching were taking up arms.

D. 1. I have more concern for the soul, which is immortal, than for the body.
rel. pron. = fem. sing. to agree with antecedent (soul)
= nom., subj. of “is” **quae**

2. A poet whose books are read by all has great influence.
rel. pron. = masc. sing. to agree with antecedent (poet)
= gen. of possession **cuius**

3. I pity those slaves whom the master will not free.
rel. pron. = masc. pl. to agree with antecedent (slaves)
= acc., d.o. of “will . . . free” **quōs**

4. Place the gifts on the altar that is in the temple.
rel. pron. = fem. sing. to agree with antecedent (altar)
= nom., subj. of “is” **quae**

5. Tell me the reason on account of which you are leaving.
rel. pron. = fem. sing. to agree with antecedent (reason)
= acc. with prep. **propter** **quam**

6. Is this the house in which the money was found?
rel. pron. = fem. sing. to agree with antecedent (house)
= abl. with prep. **in** **quā**

7. Citizens whose rights are taken away should protest.
rel. pron. = masc. or fem. pl. to agree with antecedent (citizens)
= gen. of possession **quōrum, quārum**

8. The words that Cicero spoke aroused both hope and fear.
rel. pron. = neut. pl. to agree with antecedent (words)
= acc., d.o. of “spoke” **quae**

9. She loves an old man, who happens to be very rich.
rel. pron. = masc. sing. to agree with antecedent (man)
= nom., subject of "happens" **quī**

10. Mighty are the weapons with which we shall fight.
rel. pron. = neut. pl. to agree with antecedent (weapons)
= abl. of means **quibus**

11. Have you read the book that my brother wrote?
rel. pron. = masc. sing. to agree with antecedent (book)
= acc., d.o. of "wrote" **quem**

12. The girl for whom I have a message cannot be found.
rel. pron. = fem. sing. to agree with antecedent (girl)
= dat. of reference **cui**

13. Catullus, who died at thirty, may have had tuberculosis.
rel. pron. = masc. sing. to agree with antecedent (Catullus)
= nom., subj. of "died" **quī**

14. We ought to choose a king whom we all trust.
rel. pron. = masc. sing. to agree with antecedent (king)
= acc., d.o. of "trust" **quem**

15. The soldiers will defend the city walls, which defend the city.
rel. pron. = neut. pl. to agree with antecedent (walls)
= nom., subj. of "defend" **quae**

16. Why should a man fear the fate that awaits him?
rel. pron. = neut. sing. to agree with antecedent (fate)
= nom., subj. of "awaits" **quod**

17. Those things that you said about me were most unkind.
rel. pron. = neut. pl. to agree with antecedent (things)
= acc., d.o. of "said" **quae**

18. The allies to whom we had sent weapons defeated the enemies in battle.
rel. pron. = masc. pl. to agree with antecedent (allies)
rel. pron. = dat. of i.o. *or* acc. with prep. **ad** **quibus**, **quōs**

19. The man whom the gods hate conducts a hard life.
rel. pron. = masc. sing. to agree with antecedent (man)
= acc., d.o. of "hate" **quem**

20. The island toward which we are sailing seems beautiful.
rel. pron. = fem. sing. to agree with antecedent (island)
= acc. with prep. **ad** **quam**

Chapter VIII: Drill 79 (pages 337-338)

1. He who hates me is my enemy.
2. Do you see the thing that I see? Do you see the things that I (see)?
3. Horace wrote a new and beautiful poem. And after I read this (poem), I praised him a lot.
4. A war among the citizens now you desire and are stirring up. And on account of this thing you are considered a public enemy by all good men.
5. They (m.) who flee fortune make a mistake.
6. He whom war and weapons do not frighten has a reliable mind.
7. A wicked man took the money of the people for himself and killed his own wife. And if these things should be true, he will pay the penalty.
8. From a certain cause I am not able to say the things that I ought (to say).
9. Do the thing that is good.
10. He who has read many books ought to lead the citizens.
11. Why are you asking for those things that you are not able to have?
12. I shall lead into safety those men whom you (have) sent into danger.

Chapter VIII: Drill 80-81 (pages 339-342)

A.

1. Who will lead us? (interrogative pronoun)
2. What city walls were seen? (interrogative adjective)
3. What sword do you desire? (interrogative adjective)
4. By whose fate would she be moved? (interrogative pronoun)
5. To which god did you tell (your) cares? (interrogative adjective)
6. Whom (pl.) would I be able to see in the street? (interrogative pronoun)
7. What are you doing? What of evil are you doing? (interrogative pronouns)
   What evil things did you do? (interrogative adjective)
8. About what mortals did he speak? (interrogative adjective)
9. The poems of what poets are we listening to? (interrogative adjective)
10. Out from which town did/have they come? To what city will they go? What human beings are they? (interrogative adjectives)
11. What things ought I to take in return for what things? (interrogative pronouns)
12. From whom are you seeking aid? (interrogative pronoun)
13. Which slave will the master free from slavery? (interrogative adjective)
14. What (of) new can you tell us? (interrogative pronoun)
15. In which part of the city were you living? (interrogative adjective)
16. To whom would slavery not be a source of hatred? (interrogative pronoun)

B. 1. **quibus**, interrogative pronoun
2. **cuius gladiō**, interrogative pronoun
3. **quis**, interrogative pronoun
4. **quae oppida**, interrogative adjective
5. **quid**, interrogative pronoun
6. **quōs mīlitēs**, interrogative adjective
7. **quōrum**, interrogative pronoun
8. **quō animō**, interrogative adjective
9. **ad quās terrās**, interrogative adjective
10. **quae**, interrogative pronoun
11. **cum quibus amīcīs**, interrogative adjective
12. **quid**, interrogative pronoun
13. **ā quō poētā**, interrogative adjective
14. **quem**, interrogative pronoun

Exercises, Chapter VIII (pages 343-358)

A. 1. That man to whom power was given by the Roman people boldly gives laws to allies and to friends.

2. She who saw nothing with (her) eyes nevertheless perceived many things with (her) mind. For in fact to her a gift not small the immortal gods had given.

3. There are even under the earth hidden laws of nature, which indeed the farmer perceives.

4. Although (our) mother's love for you is huge, brothers, that woman loves me also. "I love," she says, "you all, but not in the same way."

5. What limit to exile will there finally be for me? What limit of/to flight (will there be)?

6. How, O allies, will you not follow through difficult places the same consul who previously presented your province with freedom?

7. The following is the gift of a friend: to remember the things that a man having died desired (you to remember), to accomplish the things that he ordered (you to accomplish).

8. Let this sword that (your) father previously used to bear be borne by you also. With which weapons shall I myself fight?

9. My brother dared to take up arms against the enemies, but he fought unfortunately and soon died. Often after these things I saw the shade of the same man and heard (his) voice.

10. Let us remain in this town that always has been friendly to us and to our men.

11. I shall readily abandon the homeland and suffer lightly the evil things of exile if (my) wife with me is able to experience these things also.

12. We are joyfully going away from this place. Indeed, we are leaving behind (our) personal enemies. What human beings, I ask you, would not do the same thing that we ourselves are doing?

13. "Who is that man who called me?"
"I am uncertain, but certainly he is following us with (his) eyes."
"Let us try to flee."

14. That unfortunate slave of yours, whom you captured by war, has a bold spirit and a bad attitude. Leave him behind on this island unless he confesses all things.

15. Caesar, having often experienced the fortune of war, ordered part of the troops to be led into the province, part to be left behind in this place. And after the enemies learned of these things, they formed plans of war.

16. When that great force of war will have set itself in motion in Italy, even the farmers will dare to fight courageously.

17. Although difficult, my son, is the way of virtue, I nevertheless shall follow this way. You also try to follow. You will surpass even that famous Cicero in virtue if you should try.

18. These words that were said by ancient men will be able to be understood not with difficulty if you remember their great love of virtue.

19. The zeal for/of money moves the minds of many men. You also are moved by the love of gold. Immortal, I say, gods, may that love of yours not be a source of bad to you!

20. The consul was ordering the people to remember that unfortunate battle in which many bold citizens died. "I, at least, shall remember those serious things. You (pl.) also remember (them)."

21. What (of a) gift shall I send to you if you receive well my friends in the country? This thing, I say, is certain: the happy countryside will please them a lot.

22. Now I would try not even to remember that man whom I used to love before as a brother. For what (of) evil against me did he not do, what (of evil) did he not confess?

23. The following thing I shall confess: If I had ever fought bravely with/against an enemy, certainly very gloriously I would have died. I gave myself, however, into flight because of fear.

24. These consuls ought to obey the same laws that the people (obey). And who would not readily admit this thing?

25. He whom human beings love is pleasing to the immortal gods also. And from this cause many joys await that man.

26. How will you plead my case and what will you say? Plead boldly, by Hercules!

27. That wretched man (for I shall confess (it)) died under the eyes of (his) wife and daughter. Who of men would desire to die in that way?

28. The huge joy that I am giving to you you yourself would dare to ask for not even from the gods.

29. Where, I ask you, or under what sky could safety itself be sought? In that, that, I say, place that you (pl.) see. Let us proceed without delay into the temple of Jupiter.

30. What (of) evil have you experienced, my man? What bad thing are you enduring? If you follow me, I shall lead you out from this place into safety.

31. All the fathers/senators, that thing that is before (your) eyes, have gone into the same opinion. For they desire a law about violence to be passed.

32. Many men, I say, both good and serious, would suffer either bitter death or the miserable flight of exile if there should be an obeying to the words of the laws and not to (their) thoughts/opinions. Do you feel this same thing that I (feel)?

33. Concerning the nature of the gods we are erring much. For we are both speaking to them who do not understand and saying those things that we ourselves do not understand.

34. Let us praise those allies to whom much is owed by the citizens and let us reward (them) with gifts.

35. He who had been ordered to fight boldly before the walls did not obey. What penalty, I ask you, will he pay?

36. Hand over that son of yours to the poets, by whose skill he will be led to virtue.

37. Not only he ought to please us who made peace between the Romans and the enemies, but also they (m.) who suffered seriously in that war.

38. Never toward wicked deeds, as I have said before, shall I be blind. And indeed I have a serious concern for my fellow citizens.

39. Fortune is a blind goddess, as the ancients (ancient men) say. Peace is a goddess also, for whom after the serious war we made altars.

40. Do not praise all men, Julia. For there is a limit in all things. Praise him only who does and says well.

41. When Cicero was speaking to the people in the forum, he was praising Antony with the same words with which (he was praising) Caesar. The latter man, however, he was fearing, the former he was hating.

42. Blind are the eyes of that slave of yours and he is able to see nothing. And from this cause let him be called "Caecus."

43. Often the freedom of the homeland has been a source of not small concern to us. Never shall we make peace with the men who hold the city with arms.

44. Out from what land did you depart? What serious dangers did you endure when you were coming to this our country? What was the cause for you of that miserable flight of yours? What were you seeking?

45. The father said to his own (people): “Death is coming to me. For strength and life are going out from my body. Soon certainly I shall be a shade.” His eyes after these things were wandering to the sky. Peace finally was granted to him with death.

46. Into the same opinion finally came those men who had either sharp hatred or serious fear of that contemptible king: we all were desiring to send him to death. And this thing we never accomplished although we often tried.

47. These captured slaves will never experience freedom unless (they do so) through flight. Let the same men dare to flee out from these lands.

48. After the body of a man was placed in the earth, “May the earth be light for you” was said.

49. Even the good ones of the soldiers will be driven into flight and exile by the senators. And this thing even a blind man would be able to see.

50. To whom, I ask you, will that plan of yours about war be pleasing? For the miserable things of war have often been placed before the eyes of all. Never do men desire to fight for the freedom of the allies.

51. How do a father and a master differ between themselves? To the latter there is an obeying because of fear, to the former because of love. My master, however, left to me all these things that I have.

52. The consul said to the people: "Every soldier led by me fought bravely and did not abandon the fierce battle. I myself was trying to give (my) life for the homeland, but I was not able (to do so)." And these things indeed were seeming entirely false to all people.

53. Unless the citizens obey the law about violence, there will be fighting in the streets, and many mortals will die. I have never seen war among the citizens, I desire never to see (it).

54. Although I used to love you and used to be pleasing to you, nevertheless I was blind in (my) mind. I for my part am the same man who I always was. Why, then, do you now hate me? You seem to me a fickle girl and false.

55. The consul himself told the senators the following thing: "I have seen these things with my own eyes. Citizens are fighting with/against citizens. Part of the soldiers have given themselves into flight with Gaius, part are following Antony. How, I ask you, shall we be able to have peace if we do not drive the disloyal men into exile?"

56. The following thing is called joy: when the soul is happy and without cares. He who lives miserably does not experience joy.

57. If, bold man, you had dared to say those contemptible words about the consuls that now you are freely saying about me, you would have paid a serious penalty.

B. 1. Propter fugam sociōrum haec auxilia cōpiās hostium sequī nōn potuērunt ubi ad sua moenia fūgēre.

2. Ipse cōnsulem īnfēlīcem interficere, homō audāx, cōnātus es, atque eum istō ferrō petere ausus es. Fatēre!

3. Utinam idem quod ego dē lēgibus patriae sentīrēs! Omnēs hominēs eīs pāreant!

4. Quae tandem agēs, Lūcī? Quemadmodum cīvibus dē perīculīs gravibus bellī dīcēs?

5. Quī librī tibi placent? Lēgistīne umquam carmina quae ā poētā illō sunt scrīpta quī in exilium propter ingentem īram Caesaris est pulsus?

6. Quis tandem nostrum exilium in terrā inimīcā patī possit? Nē patriam tuam relīqueris! Illī enim quibus es cārus tē īre nōn patientur sī umquam discēdere cōnēris.

7. Lēgem ferre dēbētis, patrēs cōnscrīptī, dē pāce in prōvinciīs. Quō modō sociī tandem ipsa accēperint quae petunt.

8. Illī servī īnfēlīcēs, quōrum patria bellō erat capta, novum dominum experiēbantur. Semper verbīs eius dūrīs pārēbant, sed ubi ille est mortuus, lībertātem eīs nōn trādidit.

9. Quid soror tua passa esset sī in exsilium missus essēs? Si tē sequī cōnāta esset, relīquissēsne Rōmae illam miseram?

10. “Meīs oculīs vīdī,” inquit, “ac saepe expertus sum facta audācia huius fēminae impiae. Dōna auferre etiam est cōnāta quae dīs bonīs in templīs erant posita. Petere tandem ausa est cōnsulem ipsum. Propter quās īnsidiās ille homō gravis morerētur.”

11. Quī amīcum cārum in exilium āctum relinquit nec dīs placet nec hominibus. Quid tandem malōrum hic nōn patiētur?

12. Quis salūtem et pācem ante omnia nōn cupiat? Sī, inquam, illī virī quī prōvinciam regunt eandem dē vī lēgem cui pārent cīvēs Rōmānī ferant, omnis homō quī in illō locō vīvit vītam agat fēlīcem.

Drill 83 (pages 359-360)

A. 1. that a syllable containing a short vowel followed by two consonants, a mute (p, ph, b, t, th, d, c, g) followed by a liquid (l, r), can be either long or short.

2. — |□— |□— |□— |□— |□—□×

3. — |□— |□— |□— |□— |□—□×
— |□— |□— || — |□—□ |□×□

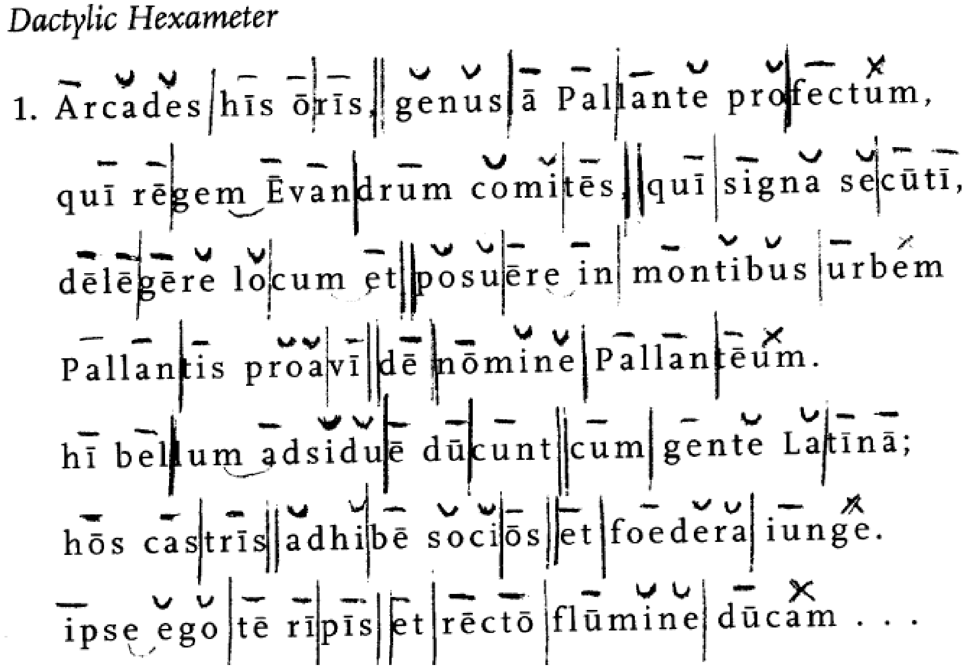
4. the full or partial suppression of a final syllable of a word.

5. when a word ends within a foot.

6. is a natural pause in the line.

7. when the end of a word and the end of a foot coincide.

8. when conditions for elision exist but elision does not occur.



Dactylic Hexameter

1. Arcades hīs ōrīs, genus ā Pallante profectum,
quī rēgem Ēvandrum comitēs, quī signa secūtī,
dēlēgēre locum et posuēre in montibus urbem
Pallantis proavī dē nōmine Pallantēum.
hī bellum adsiduē dūcunt cum gente Latīnā;
hōs castrīs adhibē sociōs et foedera iunge.
ipse ego tē rīpīs et rēctō flūmine dūcam . . .

2. hostis habet mūrōs; ruit altō ā culmine Troia.
sat patriae Priamōque datum: sī Pergama dextrā
dēfendī possent, etiam hāc dēfēnsa fuissent.
sacra suōsque tibī[1] commendat Troia Penātīs;
hōs cape fātōrum comitēs, hīs moenia quaere . . .

3. (heu furiīs incēnsa feror!): nunc augur Apollō,
nunc Lyciae sortēs, nunc et Iove missus ab ipsō
interpres dīvum fert horrida iussa per aurās.
scīlicet is superīs labor est, ea cūra quiētōs
sollicitat. neque tē teneō neque dicta refellō:
ī, sequere Italiam ventīs, pete rēgna per undās.

Elegiac Couplet

4. Raedārum custōs numquam latrāvit ineptē,
nunc silet et cinerēs vindicat umbra suōs.

5. sīc ego nec sine tē nec tēcum vīvere possum,
et videor vōtī nescius esse meī.

6. Cynthia tē vātem fēcit lascīve Propertī;
ingenium Gallī pulchra Lycōris erat;
fāma est argūtī Nemesis formōsa Tibullī;
Lesbia dictāvit, docte Catulle, tibi:

7. nōn haec Calliopē nōn haec mihi cantat Apollō.
ingenium nōbīs ipsa puella facit.

8. tūne audīre potes vēsānī murmura pontī
fortis, et in dūrā nāve iacēre potes?
tū pedibus tenerīs positās fulcīre pruīnās,
tū potes īnsolitās, Cynthia, ferre nivēs?
ō utinam hībernae duplicentur tempora brūmae
et sit iners tardīs nāvita Vergiliīs,
nec tibi Tyrrhēnā solvātur fūnis harēnā,
nēve inimīca meās ēlevet aura precēs!

LANGUAGE

Learn to Read Latin helps students acquire an ability to read and appreciate the great works of Latin literature as quickly as possible. It not only presents basic Latin morphology and syntax with clear explanations and examples but also offers direct access to unabridged passages drawn from a wide variety of Latin texts. As beginning students learn basic forms and grammar, they also gain familiarity with patterns of Latin word order and other features of style.

Learn to Read Latin

- is designed to be comprehensive and requires no supplementary materials;
- explains English grammar points and provides drills especially for today's students;
- offers sections on Latin metrics;
- includes numerous unaltered examples of ancient Latin prose and poetry;
- incorporates selections by authors such as Caesar, Cicero, Sallust, Catullus, Vergil, and Ovid, presented chronologically with introductions to each author and work;
- offers a comprehensive workbook that provides drills and homework assignments.

This enlarged second edition improves upon an already strong foundation by streamlining grammatical explanations, increasing the number of syntax and morphology drills, and offering additional short and longer readings in Latin prose and poetry.

"Offering crystal clear explanations of Latin vocabulary, morphology, and grammar and an unparalleled wealth of exercises and unadapted selected readings, *Learn to Read Latin* has rightly become the first choice of teachers and students across the English-speaking world."—**Jonathan L. Ready,** Indiana University

"*Learn to Read Latin* both smooths and speeds the way to true Latinity. The authors achieve a standard for the whole rest of the field in breadth and depth of outlook, to say nothing of accuracy in and love for the subject."—**Tim Markey,** Worcester Academy

Also available:

Cloth Textbook	ISBN: 978-0-300-19494-4	***Paperback Textbook***	ISBN: 978-0-300-19495-1
Workbook, Part II	ISBN: 978-0-300-19498-2	***Workbook,*** combined	ISBN: 978-0-300-19496-8
Paper Set	ISBN: 978-0-300-19499-9		

Andrew Keller and **Stephanie Russell** teach classics at Collegiate School in New York City.

Cover illustration: The Young Cicero Reading. Vincenzo Foppa, active 1456–1515. By kind permission of the Trustees of the Wallace Collection, London.

yalebooks.com/ltrl

ISBN 978-0-300-19497-5

Yale UNIVERSITY PRESS
New Haven & London **yalebooks.com** **yalebooks.co.uk**